



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ.T 919.21.330

B

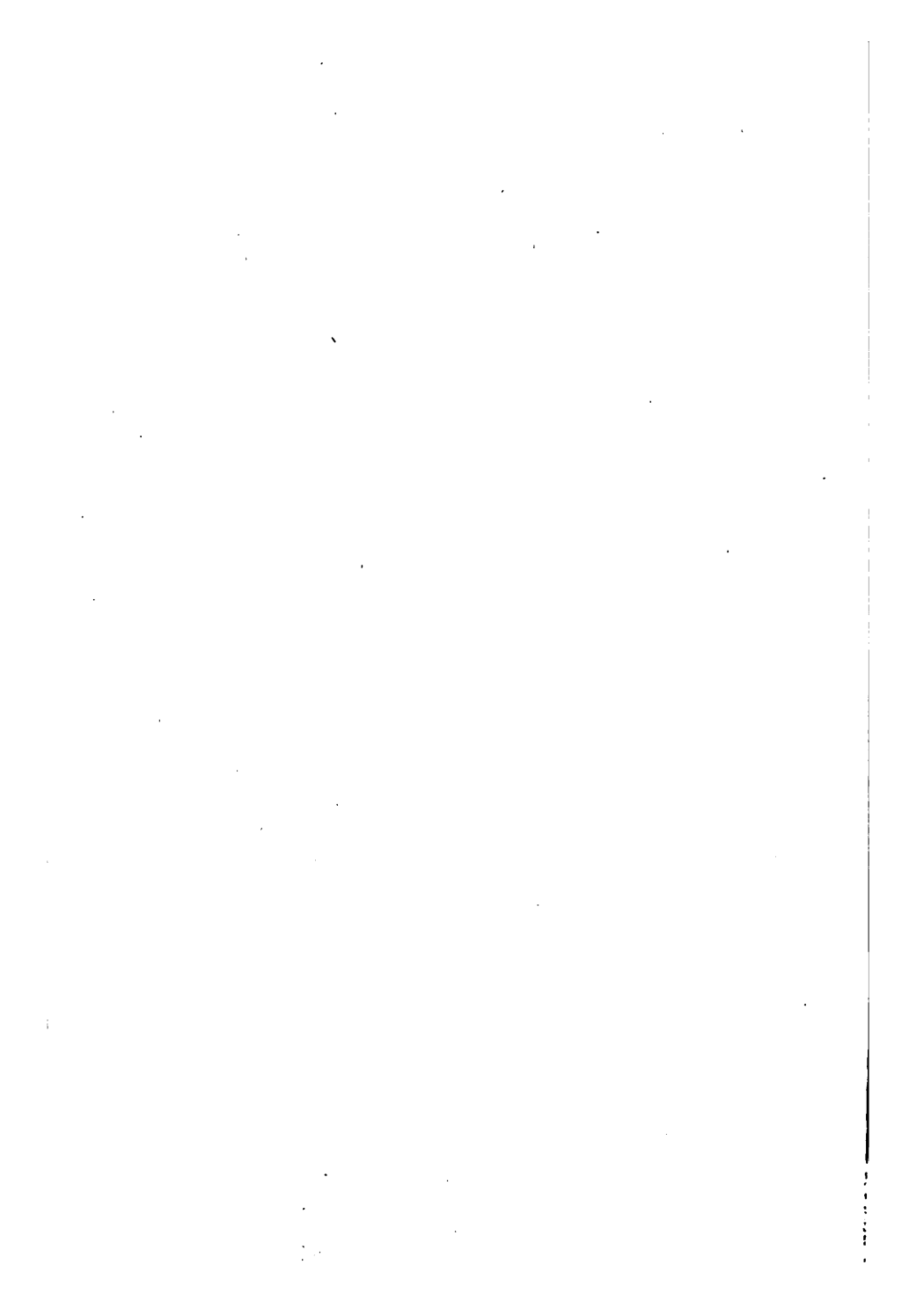


HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 074 314

John Holbrook
Class II





BACULUS IUBET LOCUM MŪRŌ ALTŌ MŪNĪRĪ
(See page 291)

ELEMENTS OF LATIN

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

Nē quid nimis—TERENCE



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

Edw T 919.21.330 B

COPYRIGHT, 1921, BY BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

323.1



Mrs. Thelma H. Hildmark

The Athenaeum Press

GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

AMICIS · SVIS
PVERIS · PVELLISQVE · AMERICAЕ
HOC · OPVSCVLVM · DEDICAT
AVCTOR

PREFACE

The present volume is not a revision of the author's "Latin for Beginners," but is an entirely new book. However, all features of the earlier book that have been highly commended and have proved their value have been retained. Chief among these are the separation of the special vocabularies from the lessons and the insertion of frequent reviews.

The body of the book is divided into two parts: fifty-six lessons for the first half year and fifty-four for the second. While greater in number than in "Latin for Beginners," the lessons are much shorter and simpler, and are designed, in most cases, for a single recitation period. Two optional lessons have been added, covering matter that some teachers prefer to include in the work of the first year. The remainder of the book up to the reviews is supplementary in character, and is intended to diversify and enrich the regular work through the lessons, and to supply reading matter after the lessons are completed. Some classes will be able to use more of this material, some less; but all will be able to draw something interesting from it.

The vocabulary has been limited to about five hundred words, averaging less than five new words per lesson. These words have been carefully selected from standard word lists, and are listed on pages 357-360 for convenience of reference and review. Nearly all the words are Cæsarian, and more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. Still, the vocabulary is of a general rather than of a military character, and most of the words are found also in Cicero and Vergil.

The principles of syntax discussed have been reduced to the bare essentials, the author feeling strongly that the tendency still prevailing in some quarters to include the more difficult constructions in the work of the first year is a very mistaken one. The fundamental principles of English grammar are compared with the Latin, and constructions

are presented from the standpoint of English. The order of presentation is systematic, and related constructions are treated together.

Connected reading in the form of dialogues and stories is introduced as early as possible. The material is abundant and very simple. It includes famous Greek myths and many legends of ancient Rome, and is designed to arouse and hold the interest of the young. The supplementary reading comprises selections for sight translation, a Latin play, and a story which is intended to serve as an introduction to Cæsar. If not used the first year, it will be found very helpful at the beginning of the second.

Great emphasis is laid throughout the book on word formation and derivation. Matters of derivation are discussed in many paragraphs, and some entire lessons are devoted to this important and practical subject. Furthermore, the words in the special vocabularies are accompanied by parallel columns of related words, and these are again called for in the vocabulary reviews.

The book is very fully illustrated. While a few pictures have been inserted for the general purpose of interesting pupils in Rome and the Romans, the great majority of the pictures are illustrative of the stories they accompany and were prepared for that specific purpose. Those illustrating the legends of ancient Rome are reproductions of some famous historical pictures published by Paravia and Company of Rome. The colored plates are from original paintings by Mr. M. McGregor Jamieson of New York. Particular attention is called to the series of pictures in the chapter entitled "Original Stories," pages 263-271. Teachers are urged to make frequent use of this material for original work in substitution for exercises found in the lessons.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the many teachers who have given him freely of their wisdom and experience. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss Anne C. Wilder and to Mr. A. T. Chapin of Kansas City, Missouri, who have read all the proof and offered many valuable suggestions.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

CONTENTS

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION	PAGE
Latin, the Language of the Romans	I
THE ALPHABET AND SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS	5
SYLLABLES; QUANTITY AND ACCENT; PARTS OF SPEECH	8
LESSON	
I. First Principles of Syntax	11
II. Inflection and Cases	13
III. Forms and Position	15
IV. Number; Agreement of Verbs	17
V. The Dative Case; Indirect Object; Predicate Noun . . .	19
VI. The Ablative Case; The First Declension	21
VII. Prepositions	24
VIII. Gender; Declension, Agreement, and Position of Adjectives; Predicate Adjectives. <i>Galba et Lesbia</i>	26
IX-X. Second Declension; Vocative Case; Apposition. Dialogue .	29
XI. Second Declension (Continued); General Rules of Declen- sion; Questions. Dialogue	33
XII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions; Genitive of Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Dialogue	36
XIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (Continued); Adverbs	38
XIV. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (Concluded); The Dative with Adjectives. <i>Insula Mārci Nautae</i> . . .	40
XV. Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns	43
XVI. Conjugation; Present Indicative of <i>sum</i> ; Predicate Genitive of Possessor. <i>Gallia</i>	46
XVII. The Four Regular Conjugations; Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation	50
XVIII. The Ablative Denoting <i>with</i> —Cause, Means, Accompani- ment, Manner	53
XIX. Past and Future Indicative of <i>sum</i> ; The Preposition <i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> . Dialogue	55

LESSON	PAGE
XX. Past Indicative Active of the First Conjugation. Britannia	57
XXI. Future Indicative Active of the First Conjugation . . .	60
XXII. Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation	62
XXIII. Latin Order of Words	65
XXIV. The Demonstrative <i>is, ea, id</i>	67
XXV. The Possessive of the Third Person	69
XXVI. The Present Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Dialogue	71
XXVII. The Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation. <i>Dē Castris Rōmānis</i>	73
XXVIII. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs	75
XXIX. The Past Indicative Active of <i>regō</i> and <i>audiō</i> . <i>Dē Deīs</i> <i>Rōmānis</i>	77
XXX. The Future Indicative Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus</i>	79
XXXI. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation. <i>Thēseus et</i> <i>Mīnōtaurus</i> (Continued)	82
XXXII. The Imperative Mood; Questions and Answers. <i>Thēseus</i> <i>et Mīnōtaurus</i> (Continued)	84
XXXIII. Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. <i>Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus</i> (Concluded)	87
XXXIV. Present Indicative Passive of <i>moneō</i> ; Ablative of the Personal Agent	89
XXXV. The Past and Future Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	91
XXXVI. The Present Indicative Passive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. <i>Dē Bellis Rōmānōrum et Gallōrum</i>	93
XXXVII. The Past and Future Indicative Passive of <i>regō</i> and <i>audiō</i>	95
XXXVIII. The Present, Past, and Future Indicative Passive of <i>capīō</i> . <i>Dē Lūdō Rōmānō</i>	97
XXXIX. The Present Infinitive and the Present Imperative, Active and Passive	99
XL. Synopses in the Four Conjugations. <i>Dē Malō Magis-</i> <i>trō Lūdi</i>	101

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XLI. The Ablative Denoting <i>from</i> — Place From Which, Separation	104
XLII. Principal Parts; Verb Stems; The Perfect Stem; The Endings of the Perfect	106
XLIII. The Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of <i>sum</i> . Dialogue	108
XLIV. Use and Inflection of the Perfect Indicative Active. <i>Dē Curiō Dentātō</i>	110
XLV. Principal Parts of Verbs. <i>Dē Curiō Dentātō</i> (Concluded)	113
XLVI. Past Perfect Indicative; Principal Parts (Continued)	115
XLVII. Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Infinitive Active; Principal Parts (Concluded)	117
XLVIII. Review of the Active Voice	119
XLIX. Word Formation. <i>Gallī Rōmam Oppugnant</i>	121
L. The Past Participle; The Passive Perfects	124
LI. The Perfect Infinitive Passive and the Future Infinitive Active; Prepositions	127
LII. The Conjugation of <i>possum</i> . <i>Dē Mūciō Scaevolā</i>	129
LIII. The Infinitive Used as in English	131
LIV. Word Formation. <i>Dē Mūciō Scaevolā</i> (Concluded)	134
LV. Sentences and Clauses; Relative Pronouns	137
LVI. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives; The Ablative Absolute	140

SECOND HALF YEAR

LVII. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems, Masculines and Feminines	143
LVIII. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems, Neuters. Dialogue	146
LIX. Reading Lesson, <i>Rōmulus et Remus</i>	148
LX. The Third Declension, /-Stems, Masculines and Feminines. <i>Rōmānī et Sabīnī</i>	149
LXI. The Third Declension, /-Stems, Neuters	152
LXII. The Third Declension, Irregular Nouns. <i>Dē Brūtō Primō Cōnsule</i>	154

LESSON	PAGE
LXIII. Reading Lesson, Orpheus et Eurydicē	157
LXIV. Word Formation	158
LXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension, Three Endings .	160
LXVI. Adjectives of the Third Declension, Two Endings .	162
LXVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension, One Ending. Midas, the King of the Golden Touch . .	163
LXVIII. Regular Comparison of Adjectives; The Comparative with <i>quam</i>	165
LXIX. Declension of Comparatives; The Ablative of the Measure of Difference	167
LXX. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives; The Declension of <i>plus</i>	169
LXXI. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	171
LXXII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs (Concluded). Dialogue	173
LXXIII. The Fourth Declension	175
LXXIV. Expressions of Place	177
LXXV. The Fifth Declension; The Ablative of Time . . .	179
LXXVI. Gender in the Third Declension; Word Formation .	181
LXXVII. The Nine Irregular Adjectives	183
LXXVIII. Classes of Pronouns; Personal and Reflexive Pro- nouns	185
LXXIX. The Intensive Pronoun <i>ipse</i> ; The Demonstrative Pronoun <i>idem</i>	188
LXXX. The Demonstrative Pronouns <i>hic, iste, ille</i> . . .	190
LXXXI. Indefinite Pronouns	192
LXXXII. The Cardinal Numerals and their Declension. The Contest of the Horatii and the Curiatii .	194
LXXXIII. Ordinal Numerals; The Genitive of the Whole . .	198
LXXXIV. The Accusative of Duration of Time or Extent of Space. Caesar in Gaul	200
LXXXV. The Ablative of Respect; The Genitive with Ad- jectives	202
LXXXVI. Deponent Verbs; The Genitive or Ablative of De- scription. Caesar and the Helvetians . . .	204

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LXXXVII. Participles	206
LXXXVIII. Word Formation	209
LXXXIX. The Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive of the First and Second Conjugations; The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared	211
XC. The Present Subjunctive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations; The Subjunctive of Purpose	214
XCI. Past Subjunctive of the First and Second Conjugations; Sequence of Tenses	216
XCII. Past Subjunctive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations; Noun Clauses of Purpose	219
XCIII. Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	222
XCIV. Perfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive of <i>vocō</i> , <i>moneō</i> , <i>regō</i> , and <i>audiō</i> . Hērō et Lēander	224
XCV. The Subjunctive of Result. Hērō et Lēander (Concluded)	226
XCVI. The Dative with Compounds	229
XCVII. Word Formation	231
XCVIII. The Irregular Verbs <i>volō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> , <i>mālō</i>	233
XCIX. Vocabulary Review; Constructions with <i>cum</i>	235
C. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>eō</i>	237
CI. Vocabulary Review; Indirect Statements	238
CII. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i>	242
CIII. Vocabulary Review; Indirect Questions	243
CIV. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>fiō</i>	246
CV. Vocabulary Review; Predicate Accusative; Dative of Purpose	247
CVI. Vocabulary Review; The Gerund and Gerundive	249
CVII. Vocabulary Review; Review of Agreement and of the Genitive and Dative	252
CVIII. Vocabulary Review; Review of the Accusative and Ablative	254
CIX. Vocabulary Review; Review of the Gerund and Gerundive, the Infinitive, and the Subjunctive	256
CX. Vocabulary Review; Review of Word Formation	257

OPTIONAL LESSONS

	PAGE
A. The Subjunctive of Characteristic or Description	259
B. The Periphrastic Conjugations and the Dative of Agent	261

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

ORIGINAL STORIES	263
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING	273
LATIN PLAY — PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA	279
STORY — BACULUS THE CENTURION	283
LATIN SONGS	294

REVIEWS, APPENDIXES, VOCABULARIES, ETC.

REVIEWS	299
SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX	321
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX	325
WORD LISTS FOR FIRST AND SECOND HALF YEARS	357
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES	361
DERIVATION NOTEBOOK, SPECIMEN PAGE	382
COMMON ABBREVIATIONS OF LATIN WORDS	383
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	I
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	23
INDEX	37

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
1. <i>Baculus iubet locum mūrō altō mūnīrī</i> (in colors)	Frontispiece
2. Roman Children at Play	6
3. Roman Writing Tablets	7
4. Interior View of a Roman House	10
5. View of Rome from the Dome of St. Peter's Cathedral	12
6. Singing the Wedding Song	16
7. Playing Jackstones	18
8. <i>Agricola</i>	24
9. <i>Lesbia Galbam vocat</i>	28
10. <i>Servus equīs aquam dat</i>	30
11. <i>Lesbia per agrōs properat et aquam ad servōs portat</i>	32
12. <i>Mārcus frūmentum ā terrā ad insulam portat</i>	42
13. On the Sacred Way in the Roman Forum	45
14. The Active Voice and the Passive Voice	46
15. The Island in the Tiber	51
16. A Roman Spoon	54
17. <i>Quō, Quīnte, properās?</i>	56
18. <i>Britannī erant barbarī</i>	59
19. <i>Ōrae Britanniae erant altae</i>	61
20. The Roman Forum as it Now Appears	66
21. The Roman Forum at its Western End	70
22. <i>Castra Rōmāna</i>	74
23. A Cockfight (Pompeian Wall Painting)	76
24. <i>Athēna Dea Sapientiae</i>	78
25. The Tribute to the Minotaur	81
26. Glass Vases from Pompeii	82
27. The Appian Way and the Claudian Aqueduct	86
28. <i>Puerī puellaeque Thēseum amant</i> (Pompeian Wall Painting)	88
29. Roman Swords	93
30. <i>Rōmānī magnum numerum captivōrum capiunt</i>	94
31. <i>Lūdus Rōmānus</i>	98
32. <i>Malus magister lūdī poenam dat</i>	103
33. <i>Curius Dentatus</i> and the Samnite Ambassadors	112
34. The Forum, the Capitoline, and Adjacent Buildings (Restored)	116
35. A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus	120
36. A Roman Market Place	122
37. The Sacred Geese Save the Capitol	123
38. Roman Hairpins, Powder Boxes, and Other Toilet Articles	126

	PAGE
39. The Tiber, Castle of St. Angelo, and St. Peter's	126
40. The Roman Forum, A. D. 400	133
41. Mūcius Scaevola	135
42. The Arch of Titus and the Colosseum	142
43. Mulierēs bellum prohibuērunt	151
44. The Tiber at the Foot of the Aventine	153
45. Brūtus filiōs suōs interficī iubet	155
46. Orpheus and Eurydice	156
47. A Roman Street Scene	159
48. Roman Silver Cups	164
49. The Roman Campagna and the Alban Mount	174
50. Offering a Sacrifice	176
51. Athēnae, urbs Minervae	178
52. So-called Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii	195
53. Pater ipse tribus filiīs arma nova dedit	196
54. Villa of a Wealthy Roman	197
55. A Gate of Pompeii (Restored)	201
56. Ancient Coins	203
57. The Gate of St. Sebastian	210
58. Greek Vases	213
59. Gladiators' Helmets	221
60. Finger Rings with Engraved Settings	223
61. Hero and Leander	227
62. A Roman Stove with Hot-Water Boiler	234
63. Golden Fibula, or Brooch	236
64. A Street in Pompeii	241
65. A Musical Recital	245
66. Roman Lamps	253
67. Steelyards from Pompeii	255
68. The Gauls in Sight of Rome	258
69. Roman Cæstus, or Boxing Glove	260
70. The Romans Storm the Enemy's Stronghold	262
71-79. Nine pictures suggesting original stories	263-271
80. The Return of Persephone	272
81. Arion Saved by a Dolphin	274
82. Cincinnatus Called from the Plow	277
83. Perseus Andromedam servat	282
84. Venīte! Venīte, Rōmānī! (in colors)	292
85. Roman Mosaic	324
86. Sermoneta	384
Map of Gaul and Parts of Germany, Spain, Italy, and Britain	49
Map of Italy (in colors)	72

ELEMENTS OF LATIN

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

LATIN, THE LANGUAGE OF THE ROMANS

Rome was the whole world, and all the world was Rome. — SPENSER

Latium,¹ a small district on the western coast of ancient Italy, was the home of the Latins. The chief city of the Latins was Rome, which, according to tradition, was founded 753 years before Christ. Beginning as a small settlement on the banks of the Tiber and the surrounding hills, and controlling at first a territory of not more than twenty-five square miles, the city remained weak and insignificant for many centuries, and its very existence was frequently threatened by warlike neighbors. But the Romans, inspired by a spirit that never owned defeat, gradually extended their boundaries. Before the middle of the third century before Christ they had conquered all Italy. Then they reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally Rome became the head of a mighty empire, which ruled over the whole ancient world for more than four hundred years.

The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language throughout the

¹ Pronounced *Lă'shĭ-ŭm*.

world. Rome impressed not only her language but also her laws, customs, beliefs, and ideals upon the subject nations; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since.

LATIN AND THE MODERN WORLD

Even after the fall of the Roman Empire Latin lived on, and lives today as Italian, Spanish, French, and other so-called Romance, or Roman, languages. Many millions of people are therefore still speaking a modernized form of Latin which differs from ancient Latin little more than modern English differs from the English of bygone centuries. Latin is not a dead language, but has only changed its name. During the Dark Ages the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that kept burning, and in the succeeding years Latin continued to be the common language of the schools and universities, and is even yet, more nearly than any other tongue, the universal language of the learned. It survives, too, in the services of the Roman Catholic Church and in much sacred poetry and song. The life of today is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, unlike men of today.

LATIN AND ENGLISH

Do you know that more than half the words in the English dictionary are Latin and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How did this come about?

In the first place Latin and English, along with most of the other languages of Europe, are descended from a very ancient mother speech, which has long since disappeared. They are, therefore, sister languages and have many words in common.

Furthermore, in the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans and established a Norman civilization among the Anglo-Saxons. The Normans spoke a kind of French, which, as has been said, is a modern form of Latin, and from this source hundreds of so-called Latin derivatives were added to our vocabulary. Some of these derivatives are pure Latin and others differ only in their endings. Note the following examples :

LATIN WORDS

horror
census
animal
labor
superior
inferior
calamitas
barbarus
virtus

ENGLISH WORDS

horror
census
animal
labor
superior
inferior
calamity
barbarous
virtue

Besides, in later years many Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and many of the technical terms used in the sciences and the professions of law, medicine, engineering, etc., are of Latin derivation, and many new inventions are given Latin names.

WHY STUDY LATIN?

Latin, as we have seen, touches the life of the modern world in many ways and the study of it adds greatly to our intelligence and efficiency. Indeed, few studies are more practical. You may be asked why you are studying Latin. The following summary of reasons will help you to make a forceful and convincing reply :

WHY STUDY LATIN?

1. Latin was the language of the Romans, on whose civilization our own civilization is largely based. In their writings we find the origin and the reason for many of our institutions.

2. In Roman literature we find the models which modern writers have imitated. Our literature is full of allusions and quotations which only the student of Latin can fully understand.

3. A knowledge of French, Spanish, Portuguese, or Italian is best obtained by studying Latin first. The value of these languages to an American is greater today than ever before.

4. Latin grammar makes English grammar easy, and a knowledge of Latin words makes clear the meaning of English words. A mastery of English is gained by the study of Latin, and the ability to use good English promotes success in every calling. Even a year or two of Latin will be a great help in grammar, spelling, and composition.

5. A knowledge of Latin is of great service in the pursuit of the sciences and professions. That is why Latin is required for entrance to schools of medicine, law, engineering, and other higher institutions of learning.

QUESTIONS

What is Latin? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? What river flows through Rome? What date is given for the founding of Rome? How long did the Roman Empire endure? How wide was its power? What was the language of the Roman Empire? What besides their language did the Romans impress upon the world? What is meant by the Romance languages? If you wish to master French or Spanish, what language should you study first? Why? Is Latin a dead language? What great service did Latin render during the Dark Ages? Why do some scholars still write their books in Latin? What proportion of English words is of Latin origin? How did this come about? What five reasons can you give for the study of Latin? Which one of these reasons do you consider the most important?

FIRST HALF YEAR

THE ALPHABET AND SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

Errāre hūmānum est—To err is human¹

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The other letters are consonants.

3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. When standing first with a vowel following it, or between vowels within a word, it has the value of a consonant, and is called *i consonant*.

Thus, in **iam** and **maior**, **i** is a consonant; in **iānitor** the first **i** is a consonant, the second is a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

4. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in sections 5–7 is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

¹ From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

5. Vowels. Vowels are either long or short. In this book long vowels are marked (**ā**), short ones are unmarked (**a**). The vowels have the following sounds :

LONG	SHORT
ā as in <i>artist</i> : hāc, stās	a as in <i>artistic</i> : amat, canās
ē as in <i>fate</i> : tēla, mēta	e as in <i>net</i> : tenet, pedēs
ī as in <i>machine</i> : serti, prāti	i as in <i>bit</i> : sitis, bibi
ō as in <i>bone</i> : Rōma, ōris	o as in <i>obey</i> : modō, bonōs
ū as in <i>rude</i> : ūmor, tūber	u as in <i>full</i> : ut, tūtus

6. Diphthongs. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in a single syllable. The Latin diphthongs and their sounds are as follows :

ae as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> : taedae	eu almost like <i>ew</i> in <i>new</i> : seu
au as <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> : gaudet	oe as <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> : foedus
ei as in <i>eight</i> : hei	ui almost like <i>we</i> : cui, huic



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

7. Consonants. Consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :

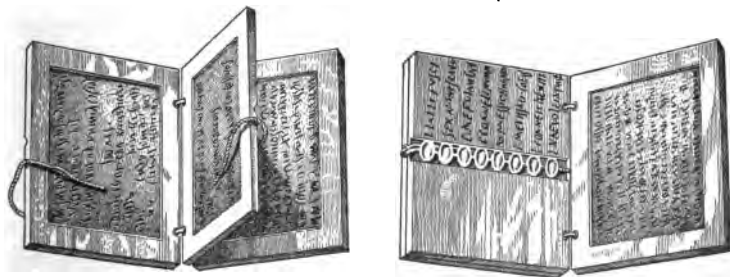
c always has the sound of *k* : *cadō, cibus, cēna*
 g is always like *g* in *get* : *gemō, gignō*
 i, when a consonant, is sounded like *y* in *yes* : *iam, iocus, cuius*
 qu, gu, and sometimes su before a vowel, have the sound of *qw*,
gw, and *sw*, respectively : *inquit, lingua, suādeō*
 s is always like *s* in *sea* : *rosa, is*
 t is always like *t* in *native* (never as in *nation*) : *ratio, natio*
 v has the sound of *w* : *vinum, vir*
 x always has the sound of *ks* : *extrā, exactus*
 bs, bt, are like *ps, pt* : *urbs, obtineō*
 ch, ph, th, are like *c, p, t* : *pulcher, Phoebē, theātrum*

8. Learn the following Latin mottoes :

Ē plūribus ūnum, *one out of many* (motto of the United States).

Ad astra per aspera, *to the stars through difficulties* (motto of Kansas).

Labor omnia vincit, *toil conquers all things* (quotation from the Latin poet Vergil).



ROMAN WRITING TABLETS

SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, AND ACCENT

Fēstīnā lentē — Make haste slowly¹

SYLLABLES

9. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Thus, *li-ber'-tās* has three syllables, *au-di-en'-dae* has four.

10. Words are divided into syllables as follows :

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel : as, *a-mā'-bi-lis*, *a'-best*, *pe-rē'-git* ; also *bl*, *br*, *tr*, and similar combinations with *l* or *r* that can be pronounced in one syllable are pronounced with a following vowel :² as, *pū'-bli-cus*, *ē'-bri-us*, *mā'-tris*, *a'-gri*.

b. In all other combinations of consonants the last of the group is pronounced with the following vowel : as, *mag'-nus*, *e-ges'-tās*, *hos'-pes*, *an'-nus*, *su-bāc'-tus*, *sānc'-tus*, *il'-le*.

c. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'ti-ma* ; the next to the last, the *pe-nult'* ; that before the penult, the *an'te-pe-nult'*.

Thus, *amantur* consists of *a-* (antepenult), *-man-* (penult), *-tur* (ultima).

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

11. The quantity of a syllable is the time occupied in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be given to long (that is, slow) syllables as to short (that is, quick) ones.

12. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : as, *cū'-rō*, *poe'-nae*, *aes-tā'-te* ; or if it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant : as, the first

¹ A favorite saying of Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.

² But prepositional compounds follow rule *b* : as, *ab'-luō*, *ab-rum'pō*, etc.

syllables of **cor'-pus** and **mag'-nus**. All other syllables are short: as, **a'-ni-mal**, **me-mo'-ri-am**, **nu'-me-rus**, **pa'-tri-a**.

NOTE. The *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus, in **ter-ra**, **in-ter**, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like **saxum** the first syllable is long because **x** has the value of two consonants (**cs** or **gs**).

ACCENT

13. Words of two syllables are accented on the first: as, **mēn'-sa**, **Cae'-sar**.

14. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, the antepenult is accented. Thus, **mo-nē'-mus**, **re'-gi-tur**, **a-gri'-co-la**, **a-man'-dus**, **a-man'-tur**.

15. Sing the following translation of the first two stanzas of "America":¹

Tē canō, Patria,
candida, libera;
tē referet
portus et exulum
et tumulus senum;
libera montium
vōx resonet.

Tē canō, Patria,
semper et ātria
ingenuum;
laudō virentia
culmina, flūmina;
sentīō gaudia
caelicolum.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

16. Words, according to their use, are divided into eight classes called parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. The parts of speech in English and in Latin are the same.

¹ Translated by Professor George D. Kellogg, Union College, and published in the *Classical Weekly*, VIII, 7.

17. Nouns. A noun is the name of a person or thing: as, *Caesar, Cæsar; Rōma, Rome; domus, house; virtūs, virtue.*

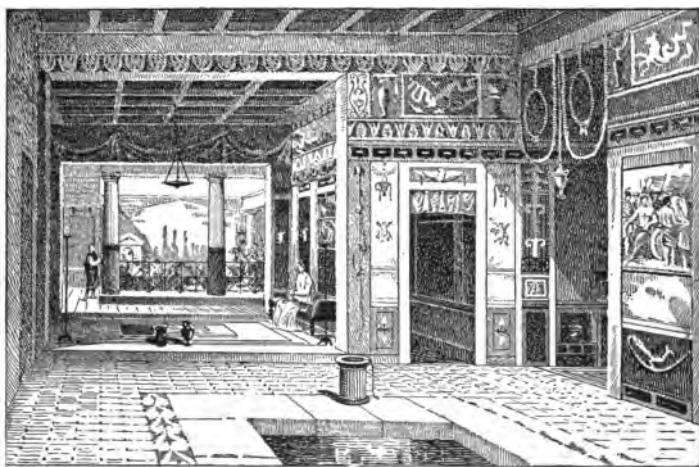
18. Pronouns. A pronoun (*pro*, 'instead of,' and *noun*) is a word used instead of a noun.

Thus, in *I am studying Latin*, *I* is used instead of the speaker's name. Pronouns are often used to avoid repeating the same noun: as, *The soldiers are weary; they have marched many hours.*

a. Nouns and pronouns are called *substantives*.

19. Adjectives. An adjective is a word that describes a noun or pronoun, and is said to belong to the word which it describes: as, *The great forest was full of beautiful flowers.*

20. Verbs. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) about a person or thing: as, *The girl is carrying water. She has a rose in her hair.*



INTERIOR VIEW OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON I

Carpe diem — Make the most of today¹

FIRST PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

21. Subject and Predicate. A sentence is a group of words expressing a thought. A sentence consists of two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*.

22. The *subject* is the person or thing spoken of.

23. The *predicate* says something about the subject.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
Puel'la <i>The girl</i>	rēgī'nam vo'cat <i>calls the queen</i>
Les'bia <i>Lesbia</i>	bo'nam memo'riam ha'bet <i>has a good memory</i>

24. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. Some verbs are followed by nouns or pronouns which receive their action and complete the sense. Such verbs are called *transitive* verbs, and the nouns or pronouns are called the *direct objects*.

Thus, in the sentences above, *vocat* (*calls*) and *habet* (*has*) are transitive verbs, and *rēginam* (*queen*) and *memoriam* (*memory*) are their direct objects.

25. Verbs that have no direct object are called *intransitive* verbs: as,

Puel'la pro'perat, *the girl hastens*
Agri'cola labō'rat, *the farmer toils*

¹ From Horace, a Roman poet. Literally, *Seize the day*.

26. A form of the verb *to be* (*is, are, was, etc.*), connecting the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate, is called the *copula* ('joiner' or 'link'): as,

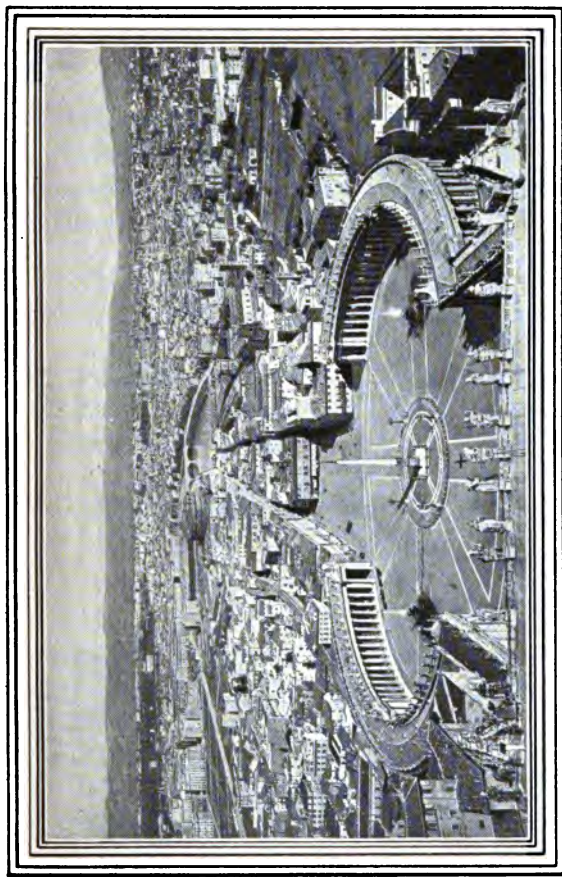
Iū'lia est pul'chra puel'la, Julia is a pretty girl

EXERCISE

27. Pronounce the Latin of the following sentences and name the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, copulas, subjects, objects, and predicates, and state whether the verbs are transitive or intransitive :

1. E'go pa'triam a'mō.
I (my) country love.
2. Puel'lae in mag'nam sil'vam pro'perant.
(The) girls into (the) great forest are-hastening.
3. Les'bia, pul'chra fi'lia agri'colae, nūl'lām
Lesbia, (the) beautiful daughter of (the) farmer, no
pecū'niam ha'bet.
money has.
4. Agri'cola fi'liam ex par'vā ca'sā vo'cat.
(The) farmer (his) daughter from (the) little cottage calls.
5. Is pul'chram puel'lām a'mat.
He (the) pretty girl loves.
6. Lin'gua Lati'na est pul'chra.
The language Latin is beautiful.

NOTE. Latin has no article *the* or *a*; thus *puella* may mean *the girl, a girl*, or simply *girl*. Further, the possessive adjectives *my, your, his, her*, etc. are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them. Note, too, in 6 that in Latin the adjective may follow the noun.



VIEW OF ROME FROM THE DOME OF ST. PETER'S CHURCH

From the dome of St. Peter's, over four hundred feet high, the work of Michelangelo, one obtains a wonderful view of the city. Immediately below is the Piazza of St. Peter's, an imposing ellipse inclosed by huge colonnades. In the middle distance are the Tiber and the circular tomb of Hadrian. The flat expanse beyond the river, now densely peopled, was the Campus Martius of ancient Rome and almost without buildings

LESSON II

Audentēs fortūna iuvat— Fortune favors the brave¹

INFLECTION AND CASES

28. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in their meaning, or their use in a sentence: as, *is, are; know, knew; we, us; woman, woman's, women*. This change is called *inflection*.

29. The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation*; that of a noun, adjective, or pronoun, its *declension*.

30. Declension. To decline a word means to give in order all its different forms: as, *who, whose, whom*. Each one of the forms is called a *case*.

31. Cases in English. Observe the following sentences:

Who is this man?

Whose son is he?

Whom do I see?

We use the form *who* as the subject, *whose* to denote possession, and *whom* as the object. The three forms illustrate the three cases found in English.

The subject case is called the *Nominative* case.

The case of the possessor is called the *Possessive* case.

The object case is called the *Objective* case.

32. Cases in Latin. In Latin the subject case is called the *Nom'inative*; the possessive, or case of the possessor, is called the *Gen'itive*; and the object case is called the *Accu'sative*.

¹ From Vergil, Rome's greatest epic poet.

Gal'ba (NOMINATIVE) est agri'cola, *Galba (SUBJECT) is a farmer*
 Gal'bae (GENITIVE) fi'lia est Les'bia, *Galba's (POSSESSOR) daughter*
is Lesbia
 Gal'bam (ACCUSATIVE) fi'lia a'mat, *(his) daughter loves Galba*
 (OBJECT)

33. Rule for Nominative Subject. *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

34. Rule for Genitive of the Possessor. *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*

35. Rule for Accusative Object. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

36. When the nominative singular ends in -a (as, Galba), the genitive singular ends in -ae and the accusative singular in -am.

EXERCISES

37. In the following sentences add the proper Latin endings :

1. *Lesbia (SUBJECT) loves the farmer (OBJECT),* Lesbi- amat agricol-
2. *The farmer's (POSSESSOR) daughter (SUBJECT) loves Galba (OBJECT),* agricol- fili- amat Galb-
3. *The farmer (SUBJECT) calls Galba's (POSSESSOR) daughter (OBJECT),* agricol- vocat Galba- fili-

38. State what nouns in the following sentences would be nominative, genitive, and accusative if translated into Latin :

1. A lion was terrifying the villagers.
2. A hunter found the lion's den.
3. The hunter shot the lion and captured the lion's cubs.
4. The lion's cubs bit the hunter's hand.

LESSON III

Fiat lūx — Let there be light¹

FORMS AND POSITION

39. English and Latin Compared. Observe the following sentences :

Galba loves his daughter
His daughter loves Galba

The nouns *Galba* and *daughter* have the same form in both these sentences, although the noun that is the subject in the one becomes the object in the other. In other words, the nominative and the objective case are alike in English, and the only way to distinguish them is by the order of the words.

In the Latin of this sentence no doubt can arise, for the subject ends in *-a* and the object in *-am*, and this remains true no matter in what order the words are written.

Gal'ba a'mat fi'liam	} <i>Galba loves his daughter</i>
Fi'liam a'mat Gal'ba	
A'mat Gal'ba fi'liam	
Gal'ba fi'liam a'mat	

As you see, all these arrangements mean the same thing. The *form* of the Latin noun, therefore, and *not its position* in the sentence, shows its use.

40. Position of Subject and Verb. The *subject* of a short, disconnected sentence generally stands *first*; the *verb*, *last*. But *est*, *is*, and other forms of the verb *to be* usually stand, as in English, between the subject and a noun or adjective in the predicate : as,

Gal'ba est agri'cola, *Galba is a farmer*

¹ From the Latin translation of the Bible.

41. Position of Genitive. The genitive may stand either before or after the noun to which it belongs: as, *Gal'bae fi'lia* or *fi'lia Gal'bae*, *Galba's daughter*.

VOCABULARY

42. Learn the following words so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English:

agri'cola, farmer

fi'lia, daughter

puel'la, girl

a'mat, loves, is-loving

pro'perat, hastens, is-hastening

vo'cat, calls, is-calling

rēgi'na, queen

EXERCISES

NOTE. In translating a Latin genitive into English we may use either the preposition *of* and the noun, or its possessive case: as, *filia rēginae*, *the daughter of the queen*, or *the queen's daughter*.

43. 1. *Rēgina puellam amat.* 2. *Puella rēginam amat.*
3. *Filia agricolae properat.* 4. *Puella filiam agricolae vocat.*
5. *Filia agricolae puellam amat.* 6. *Rēgina agricolam vocat,*
agricola properat.

44. 1. The farmer is-calling (his) daughter. 2. The daughter is-calling the farmer. 3. The girl loves the queen's daughter. 4. The queen's daughter calls the girl. 5. The queen is-hastening.



SINGING THE WEDDING SONG

LESSON IV

Omne initium est difficile — Every beginning is hard¹

NUMBER · AGREEMENT OF VERBS

45. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, *singular* and *plural*.

46. Plural of Nouns. In English the plural of nouns is usually formed by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending.

SINGULAR

NOM. (subject)	puell- a , <i>girl</i>
GEN. (possessor)	puell- ae , <i>girl's, of the girl</i>
ACC. (object)	puell- am , <i>girl</i>

PLURAL

NOM. (subject)	puell- ae , <i>girls</i>
GEN. (possessor)	puell- arum , <i>girls', of the girls</i>
ACC. (object)	puell- as , <i>girls</i>

Note that the genitive singular and the nominative plural are alike.

a. Some Latin words ending in *-a* have passed into English without change and form the plural in *-ae*: as, *alumna, alumnae*; *formula, formulae*; *minutia, minutiae*; *nebula, nebulae*; *vertebra, vertebrae*. Consult the dictionary for the meaning of these words.

47. Plural of Verbs. Verbs, as well as nouns, form the plural with different endings. In the singular the third person ends in *-t*, in the plural in *-nt*. Thus,

porta- t , <i>he (she, it) carries</i>	porta- nt , <i>they carry</i>
puella porta t , <i>the girl carries</i>	puellae porta nt , <i>the girls carry</i>

¹ A Latin proverb.

The endings **-t** and **-nt**, which show the person and number of the verb, are called *personal endings*, and take the place of the English personal pronouns.

48. Rule for Agreement of Verbs. *The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

EXERCISES

49. Write and give orally the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin nouns meaning *farmer, daughter, queen, girl*.

50. Write and give orally the third person singular and plural of the Latin verbs meaning *love, call, hasten*.

51. Derivation. Define the following English words : *vocal, vocation, filial, amiable, agriculture*. To what Latin words are they related ?



PLAYING JACKSTONES

LESSON V

Bis dat qui cito dat—He gives twice who gives quickly¹

THE DATIVE CASE · INDIRECT OBJECT · PREDICATE NOUN

52. Dative Case. In English many relationships between words are expressed by *to, for, from, with, in, at*, and the like. These are called prepositions. Latin, too, often makes a similar use of prepositions, but frequently expresses such relationships by means of case forms that English does not possess. One of these cases is called the *Da'tive*.

53. The dative case is used after verbs and adjectives to express the relation conveyed in English by the prepositions *to* or *for* somebody or something.

He gave the money *to John*

They are ready *for war*

She was kind *to him*

He is no match *for you*

NOTE. *To* or *for* in expressions of motion, like *He went to New York*, *He sailed for Europe*, are not denoted by the dative.

54. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

To Captain Smith was given the cross of war, an honor great enough for any man. He was always ready for action and was equal to all demands. To him nothing seemed impossible. No wonder the general said to him, "France gives to you an honor well deserved."

55. Case Endings of Dative. When the nominative singular ends in *-a*, the dative singular ends in *-ae* and the dative plural in *-is*.

NOTE. The genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural have the same ending, *-ae*; but the uses of the three cases are different.

¹ From Andrea Alciati, an Italian author of maxims.

20 INDIRECT OBJECT · PREDICATE NOUN

56. Indirect Object. In English the person to whom something is *given, told, refused*, etc. is called the *indirect object*.

The queen gives money to the girl (or gives the girl money)

57. The indirect object is clearly a dative relation (§ 53) and is expressed in Latin by the dative case.

Rēgina puellae pecūniam dat

58. Rule for Dative of Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

59. The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

60. Predicate Noun. A noun standing in the predicate, describing or defining the subject and connected with it by some form of the verb *to be*, is called a *predicate noun*.

Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer

61. Rule for Predicate Noun. *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

EXERCISES

62. Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the nouns *agricola, rēgina, puella*.

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

63. 1. *Puella est rēgina.* 2. *Puellae sunt rēginae.* 3. *Agricola properat.* 4. *Agricolae properant.* 5. *Filiae agricolārum rēginam vocant.* 6. *Filia agricolae rēginam vocat.* 7. *Rēgina puellis agricolae pecūniam dat.* 8. *Filiae rēginae fābulās puellis agricolārum narrant.*

64. 1. The queen is a farmer's daughter. 2. The girls give the farmers' money to-the-queen. 3. The girl is-telling the queen's daughter a story. 4. The girl loves the queen's daughter. 5. The girls are daughters of-farmers.

LESSON VI

Ars longa, vīta brevis — Art is long, time is fleeting¹

THE ABLATIVE CASE · THE FIRST DECLENSION

65. Ablative Case. Another case lacking in English, but found in Latin, is the *Ab'lative*. This case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from*, *by*, *with*, *at*, *in*, or *on*. Sometimes, as will be shown later (§ 79), Latin uses similar prepositions with the ablative.

66. Ablative Relations. What ablative relations do you discover in the following sentences?

At two o'clock the troops began to march by, the general with his staff leading the van. Many thousands were in line and the ground shook with their martial tread. From sidewalks, windows, and housetops the spectators viewed the wonderful sight. On every side flags were waving in the breeze and everyone was wild with joy. Our boys were back from France.

67. Case Endings of Ablative. When the nominative singular ends in *-a*, the ablative singular ends in *-ā*, and the ablative plural in *-is*.

a. Note that the final *-a* is long in the ablative and short in the nominative: *aqua*, nominative; *aquā*, ablative.

b. Note that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

68. Declensions. Latin has five declensions.

¹ Latin form of a saying attributed to the Greek writer Hippocrates. Literally, *Art long, life short*. The verb *to be* is often omitted when it can readily be supplied.

69. The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular.

70. First Declension. Nouns having the ending *-ae* in the genitive singular belong to the First Declension. They are declined as follows :

NOUN		TRANSLATION	USE OF EACH CASE
SINGULAR			
NOM.	<i>aqua</i>	<i>the water</i>	The subject
GEN.	<i>aquae</i>	<i>of the water, or the water's</i>	The possessor
DAT.	<i>aquae</i>	<i>to or for the water</i>	The indirect object
ACC.	<i>aquam</i>	<i>the water</i>	The direct object
ABL.	<i>aquā</i>	<i>from, by, with, at, in, or on the water</i>	Relation denoted by the prepositions <i>from, by, with, at, in, or on</i>
PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>aquae</i>	<i>the waters</i>	The subject
GEN.	<i>aquā'rum</i>	<i>of the waters, or the waters'</i>	The possessor
DAT.	<i>aquīs</i>	<i>to or for the waters</i>	The indirect object
ACC.	<i>aquās</i>	<i>the waters</i>	The direct object
ABL.	<i>aquīs</i>	<i>from, by, with, at, in, or on the waters</i>	Relation denoted by the prepositions <i>from, by, with, at, in, or on</i>

a. The nouns *filia*, *daughter*, and *dea*, *goddess*, have *filiābus* and *deābus* in the dative and ablative plural.

71. Base. That part of the word which remains unchanged throughout the declension, and to which the terminations are added, is called the *base*. Thus, *aqu-* is the base of *aqua*.

72. How to learn a Declension. First pronounce each form carefully, with due regard for the sounds of the letters and the accent, giving the corresponding English meaning. Repeat again and again until you have the declension memorized. Then close your book and write the Latin forms, marking the quantity of the long vowels in the case endings, and write also the meaning of each form. Then open your book and correct any errors in your work. For further drill make a blank scheme of the declension as shown below, and, pointing rapidly with your pencil to the different spaces, give quickly the Latin forms that would appear there, using a variety of words. Persist in drilling yourself until you can give the ten Latin forms complete in ten seconds.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	-----	-----
GEN.	-----	-----
DAT.	-----	-----
ACC.	-----	-----
ABL.	-----	-----

EXERCISES

73. Write the declension of *puella*, *dea*, and *agricola*, with the meaning of each form.

74. Give orally the declension of *fābula*, *rēgina*, *fīlia*, *pecūnia*.

75. Give the case or the cases, and the meaning or the meanings, of the following: *puellārum*, *filiābus*, *pecūniae*, *fābulā*, *rēginam*, *deās*, *agricolis*.

76. Derivation. The noun *aqua* appears in the English words *aquarium*, *aqueous*, *aquatic*, *aqueduct*. What do they mean? Consult the English dictionary if you do not know.

LESSON VII

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō — A sound mind in a sound body¹

PREPOSITIONS

77. While many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

78. Prepositions with Accusative. The relations *to*, *into*, and *through* in expressions of motion are expressed in Latin by the prepositions *ad*, *in*, and *per*, with the accusative.

Nauta *ad* aquam properat, *the sailor hastens to the water*

Nauta *in* aquam properat, *the sailor hastens into the water*

Nauta *per* aquam properat, *the sailor hastens through the water*

79. Prepositions with Ablative. The relations *from the side of*, *in company with*, and *in* or *on* are expressed in Latin by the prepositions *ā* or *ab*, *cum*, and *in*, with the ablative.

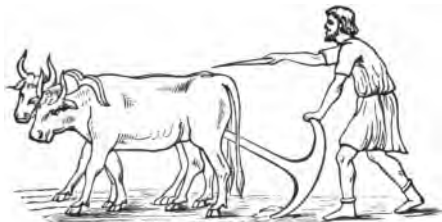
Nauta *ab* aquā properat, *the sailor hastens from the water*

Nauta *cum* Galbā properat, *the sailor hastens with Galba*

Nauta *in* aquā est, *the sailor is in (or on) the water*

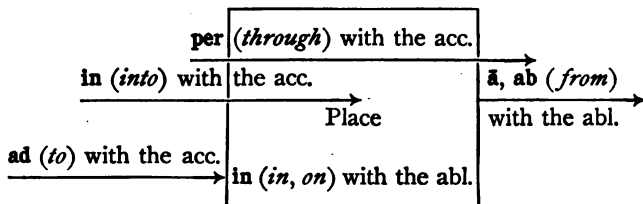
NOTE. The preposition *ā* is used only before words beginning with a consonant, *ab* before either vowels or consonants.

¹ From Juvenal, a Roman poet.



AGRICOLA

80. The meanings of *ā* (or *ab*), *ad*, *in*, and *per* are illustrated by the following diagram, the square representing the place in question :



EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

81. 1. Nautae aquam amant ; agricolae terram amant. 2. Nauta cum filiabus rēginæ ab terrā ad aquam properat. 3. Filiae rēginæ in (*on*) aquā sunt. 4. Nautae per aquās properant. 5. Agricola filiabus rēginæ aquam dat. 6. Puellae agricolārum in terrā sunt.

82. 1. Lesbia hastens from the land to the water. 2. The sailors are in the water. 3. Galba is with the farmers' daughters. 4. The queens' daughters hasten through the land.



First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 732-736

I AM OF THE OPINION THAT THE VALUE OF CLASSICAL STUDIES IS SERIOUSLY UNDERESTIMATED TODAY. WHOLLY OUTSIDE OF THEIR ACKNOWLEDGED LITERARY VALUE, CLASSICAL STUDIES CULTIVATE THE POWER OF EXPRESSION AND A DISCRIMINATING USE OF WORDS ESSENTIAL TO CLEARNESS OF THINKING. — HERBERT C. HOOVER

LESSON VIII

Numquam retrōrsūm — Never turn back ¹

GENDER · DECLENSION, AGREEMENT, AND POSITION OF ADJECTIVES · THE PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

83. Gender. Latin, like English, has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

84. Gender in English is distinction according to sex. Names of males are masculine; of females, feminine; and of things without animal life, neuter. This is called *natural* gender.

85. The rules for natural gender are applied also in Latin to beings having life: words denoting males are masculine, and words denoting females are feminine. But the gender of words denoting things is generally determined by the termination of the nominative singular. This is called *grammatical* gender. Hence nouns which in English would be neuter may in Latin be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Thus, in Latin, *sōl*, *sun*, is masculine; *lūna*, *moon*, feminine; *caelum*, *sky*, neuter.

86. Gender of Nouns of First Declension. Nouns of the first declension are *feminine* unless they denote males.

Thus, *aqua*, *water*, is feminine, but *nauta*, *sailor*, is masculine.

87. Adjectives. Examine the following sentence:

Puella parva bonam rēginam amat, *the little girl likes the good queen*

In this sentence *parva*, *little*, and *bonam*, *good*, are not nouns, but descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives* and are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

¹ A Latin slogan. Literally, *Never backward*.

88. Declension of Adjectives. In English the adjective remains unchanged even when the noun changes its form : as, *the good man, the good man's, the good men*. In other words, in English, adjectives are not declined. In Latin, adjectives have declensions like those of nouns.

89. Feminine adjectives in -a have the same case forms as nouns in -a. Decline nouns and their adjectives together, as follows :

aqua (base aqu-), F., *water*; **bona** (base bon-), F., *good*

	NOUN	ADJECTIVE		TERMINATIONS
NOM.	aqua	bona	<i>good water</i>	-a
GEN.	aquae	bonae	<i>of good water</i>	-ae
DAT.	aquae	bonae	<i>to or for good water</i>	-ae
ACC.	aquam	bonam	<i>good water</i>	-am
ABL.	aquā	bonā	<i>from, with, by, in good water</i>	-ā
NOM.	aquae	bonae	<i>good waters</i>	-ae
GEN.	aquā'rum	bonā'rum	<i>of good waters</i>	-ārum
DAT.	aquīs	bonīs	<i>to or for good waters</i>	-īs
ACC.	aquās	bonās	<i>good waters</i>	-ās
ABL.	aquīs	bonīs	<i>from, with, by, in good waters</i>	-īs

90. Agreement of Adjectives. In the phrase **aqua bona**, we have a feminine noun **aqua** combined with a feminine adjective **bona**. When the phrase is declined, a change in the number or the case of the noun is accompanied by a corresponding change in the adjective. This is called *agreement*.

91. Rule for Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

92. An adjective may either precede or follow its noun.

93. Predicate Adjective. An adjective standing in the predicate, but describing the subject, is called a *predicate adjective*.

Puellae sunt pulchrae, the girls are pretty

NOTE. In English the predicate adjective is often called the attribute complement or subjective complement.

GALBA ET LESBIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

94. Galba est agricola. Lesbia est filia Galbae. Lesbia est pulchra. Galba filiam pulchram amat. Agricola parvae puellae bonās fābulās nārrat. Galba cum Lesbiā in casā parvā habitat. Galba et Lesbia casam parvam amant. Lesbia Galbam vocat et agricola ad parvam casam properat (*see picture*).



95. 1. The little cottage is beautiful. 2. Galba hastens through the land to the pretty cottage. 3. Galba is with the sailor. 4. The girls hasten into the cottage. 5. Farmers live in small cottages.

LESSON IX

Fit via vi—Energy wins the way¹

THE SECOND DECLENSION • THE VOCATIVE CASE

96. Second Declension. Nouns ending in **-i** in the genitive singular belong to the Second Declension.

97. Gender and Declension. Nominatives of the second declension ending in **-us** or **-er** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter.

Thus, **servus**, *slave*, and **ager**, *field*, are masculine; but **oppidum**, *town*, is neuter.

Masculine nouns in **-us** are declined as follows:

servus (base serv-), M., <i>slave</i>			
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
NOM.	servus	-us	servi -i
GEN.	servi	-i	servōrum -ōrum
DAT.	servō	-ō	servis -is
ACC.	servum	-um	servōs -ōs
ABL.	servō	-ō	servis -is

NOTE. In learning all declensions, follow the suggestions given in § 72.

a. Some Latin words ending in **-us** have passed into English without change and form the plural in **-i**: as, *alumnus*, *alumni*; *syllabus*, *syllabi*; *focus*, *foci*; *radius*, *radii*; *stimulus*, *stimuli*; *narcissus*, *narcissi*. Consult the dictionary for the meaning of these words.

98. Vocative Case. A noun used to address or call a person is in the vocative case (from Latin **vocō**, *I call*). The form of the vocative is regularly the same as the nominative, but the vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension ends in **-e**: as, **serve**, *O slave*; **Mārce**, *O Marcus*.

¹ From Vergil, a Roman poet. Literally, *A way is made by force*.

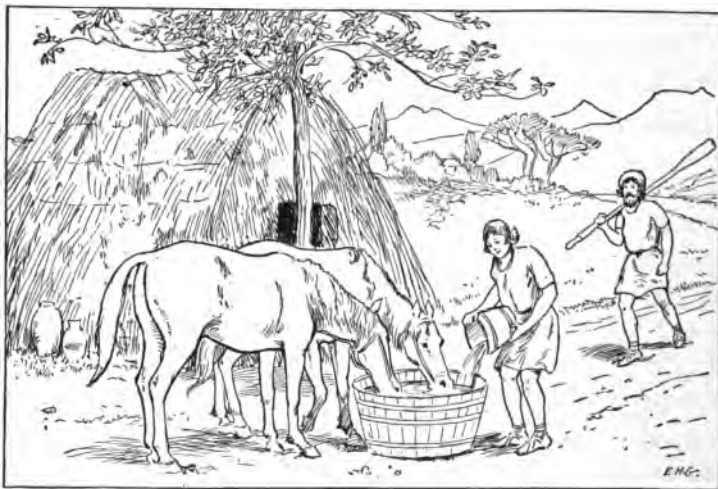
99. In English the name of the person addressed often stands first. The Latin vocative rarely stands first.

Lesbia, the cottage is small, casa, Lesbia, est parva

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

100. 1. Quō nauta properat? 2. Nauta ad parvam casam Galbae properat. 3. Ubi est Galba? 4. Galba cum Lesbiā et cum amicis Lesbiae in casā parvā est. 5. Agricola parvis



puellis bonās fābulās nārrat. 6. Ubi, Mārce, est servus agricolae? 7. Servus agricolae equis aquam dat. 8. Aqua est bona et equi bonam aquam amant.

101. 1. Marcus, Galba is-calling the slaves. 2. Slaves, where are the horses? 3. The horses, Galba, are-hastening to the cottage. 4. The water of-the-cottage is good. 5. The slaves are the friends of-the-horses.

LESSON X

Sic semper tyrannis— Thus ever to tyrants¹

THE SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED) • APPOSITION

102. Declension of Nouns in -er. Masculine nouns in -er of the second declension are declined as follows :

puer (base puer-), M., *boy* ; **ager** (base agr-), M., *field*

	TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS		
NOM.	puer	ager	—	puerī	agrī	-ī
GEN.	puerī	agrī	-ī	puerōrum	agrōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	puerō	agrō	-ō	puerīs	agrīs	-īs
ACC.	puerum	agrum	-um	puerōs	agrōs	-ōs
ABL.	puerō	agrō	-ō	puerīs	agrīs	-īs

a. Nouns in -er are declined just like *servus*, except that they have no termination -us in the nominative singular.

b. In *puer* the *e* appears in each case ; in *ager* it appears only in the nominative singular. Most nouns in -er are declined like *ager*. The genitive singular shows whether the noun follows *puer* or *ager*.

c. The noun *vir*, *man*, is declined like *puer* : *vir*, *virī*, *virō*, etc.

103. Apposition. Observe the following sentences :

Mārcus nauta ad casam properat, Marcus, the sailor, hastens to the cottage

Galba Mārcum nautam amat, Galba loves Marcus, the sailor

In each sentence the word *sailor* is added to *Marcus* to explain who he is. A noun explaining another noun, and signifying the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*, and is said to be *in apposition*. A noun and its appositive agree in case.

104. Rule for Apposition. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

¹ Motto of the state of Virginia.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

DIALOGUE. PUERĪ, SEXTUS ET QUĪNTUS

105. SEXTUS. Ubi, Quinte, servi Galbae agricolae labōrant?
QUINTUS. In agris, Sexte, servi Galbae agricolae labōrant.



LESBIA PER AGRŌS PROPERAT ET AQUAM AD SERVŌS PORTAT

S. Quis per agrōs ad servōs properat?

Q. Lesbia, filia Galbae agricolae, per agrōs ad servōs properat.

S. Quid Lesbia, pulchra filia Galbae agricolae, portat?

Q. Aquam, Sexte, Lesbia portat. Aquam servis Lesbia dat
et servī Lesbiam, bonam filiam Galbae agricolae, amant.

106. 1. Who lives with the friends of Marcus the sailor?
2. What are the boys' horses carrying, Sextus? 3. Who is telling
stories to Lesbia, Galba's little daughter? 4. Whither are the
men carrying water?

LESSON XI

Amicus est alter idem — A friend is a second self¹

THE SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED) • GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION • QUESTIONS

107. Declension of Nouns in -um. Neuter nouns in -um belong to the Second Declension, and are declined as follows :

oppidum (base **oppid-**), N., *town*

	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
NOM.	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
GEN.	oppidi	-i	oppidōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	oppidō	-ō	oppidis	-is
ACC.	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
ABL.	oppidō	-ō	oppidis	-is

a. Some Latin words ending in -um have passed into English without change and form the plural in -a: as, **stratum**, **strata**; **datum**, **data**; **curriculum**, **curricula**; **memorandum**, **memoranda**.

108. General Rules of Declension. Write side by side the declension of **servus**, **aqua**, and **oppidum**. A comparison of the forms gives us the following rules, which apply not only to the first and second declensions but to all five (§ 68):

a. The nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.

b. The accusative of masculines and feminines ends in -m in the singular, and in -s in the plural.

c. The dative and ablative plural are alike.

d. Final -i and -o are long; final -a is short except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

¹ From Cicero, who wrote a famous essay on friendship.

QUESTIONS

109. Questions may be introduced, as in English, by such words as *quis?* *who?* *quid?* *what?* *ubi?* *where?* and *quō?* *whither?* But questions that can be answered by *yes* or *no* have, in Latin, a special question sign *-ne* attached to the emphatic word, which stands first and is usually the verb.

Est'ne puella pulchra? *Is the girl pretty?*

Properant'ne pueri? *Are the boys hastening?*

110. There are no single Latin words meaning simply *yes* and *no*. Questions are usually answered in the affirmative by repeating the verb; in the negative, by repeating the verb with *nōn*, *not*.

Properant'ne pueri? *Properant.* *Are the boys hastening?* *Yes.*

Properant'ne pueri? *Nōn properant.* *Are the boys hastening?* *No.*

EXERCISES

111. **Derivation.** Using the prefixes *ex-* (*out*), *im-* (*in*), *re-* (*back*), *sup-* (*under*), *trāns-* (*across*), with *-port*, from the Latin verb *portō*, *to carry*, make five English words and define them.

112. What English words in the following paragraph do you know to be of Latin derivation? Define the words, using the dictionary if necessary, and give the Latin sources.

Below the terrace was an aquarium fed by an aqueduct, a gift of Mr. B——, concerning whose bounty and fabulous wealth the inhabitants of the town love to tell. But these data are not essential to my narrative, and I will speak only of his love for the sea, aquatic sports, and nautical affairs.

DIALOGUE. PUELLA ET SERVUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

113. PUELLA. Quō, serve, virī properant ?

SERVUS. In oppidum, puella, virī properant.

P. Quis virōs et puerōs con'vocat ?

S. Rēgina bona virōs et puerōs con'vocat.

P. Cūr rēgina bona virōs et puerōs con'vocat ?

S. Ad arma, puella, rēgina populum vocat.

P. Estne puer Sextus cum virīs ?

S. Est, et arma bonae rēginae portat. Sextus bonam rēginam amat.

P. Ubi, serve, est Quīntus, amīcus puerī Sextī ? Estne Quīntus in oppidō ?

S. In oppidō Quīntus nōn est. Quīntus est cum Mārcō nautā.

P. Labōrant'ne Quīntus et Mārcus ?

S. Labō'rant.

114. 1. Are the men of-the-town hastening, Marcus ? No (*Latin*, they are not hastening). 2. What are the farmers' boys carrying ? They-are-carrying arms. 3. Whither are the queens calling the peoples ? 4. The queens are-calling the peoples from the fields into the towns. 5. Why do the good queens call the people together ? 6. Are the slaves toiling in the fields ? Yes (*Latin*, they-are-toiling).

IN NO OTHER COUNTRY IS IT SO NECESSARY AS IN OURS TO PROVIDE FULLY, FOR THOSE WHO HAVE THE CHANCE AND DESIRE TO TAKE IT, BROAD AND HIGH LIBERAL EDUCATION, IN WHICH ONE ESSENTIAL ELEMENT SHALL BE CLASSICAL TRAINING.—THEODORE ROOSEVELT

LESSON XII

Semper fidēlis — Always faithful¹

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS GENITIVE OF NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*

115. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. We have seen that feminine adjectives in *-a*, like *bona*, are declined like *aqua* (§ 89). So masculine adjectives in *-us*, such as *bonus*, are declined like *servus*; and neuter adjectives in *-um*, such as *bonum*, are declined like *oppidum*. For this reason such adjectives are called Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

116. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are declined as follows:

servus bonus (bases *serv- bon-*), *m., the good slave*

	TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS		
NOM.	servus	bonus	-us	servi	boni	-i
GEN.	servi	boni	-i	servorum	bonorum	-orum
DAT.	servo	bono	-o	servis	bonis	-is
ACC.	servum	bonum	-um	servos	bonos	-os
ABL.	servo	bono	-o	servis	bonis	-is

oppidum bonum (bases *oppid- bon-*), *n., the good town*

	TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS		
NOM.	oppidum	bonum	-um	oppida	bona	-a
GEN.	oppidi	boni	-i	oppidorum	bonorum	-orum
DAT.	oppido	bono	-o	oppidis	bonis	-is
ACC.	oppidum	bonum	-um	oppida	bona	-a
ABL.	oppido	bono	-o	oppidis	bonis	-is

¹ Motto of the United States marines.

Decline together *equus parvus*, *the small horse*; *bellum magnum*, *the great war*.

117. Genitive of Nouns in -ius and -ium. Nouns in -ius and -ium end in -i in the genitive, not in -ii, and the accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: nominative *fi'lius* (*son*), genitive *fi'li*, dative *filiō*, etc.; nominative *auxi'lium* (*aid*), genitive *auxi'li*, dative *auxiliō*, etc.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

DIALOGUE. MĀRCUS ET FĪLIUS

118. MĀRCUS. Quid, fili,¹ servi Galbae agricolae in magnum oppidum portant?

FĪLIUS. Frūmentum, Mārce, servi Galbae agricolae in magnum oppidum portant. Rēgina magni oppidi populum ad arma vocat. Rēgina novum et magnum bellum parat.² Arma et frūmentum et pecūniam, auxilia³ belli, parat.²

M. Ubi sunt boni filii pulchrae rēginae?

F. Cum sociis, Mārce, filii rēginae sunt.

M. Dantne socii bonae rēginae auxilium?

F. Dant. Socii arma nova et pecūniam magnam rēginae dant.

M. Estne, fili,¹ terra rēginae pulchra?

F. Pulchra et magna est terra rēginae. Populus oppidi bonam rēginam et pulchram terram amat.

1. *fili* is the vocative of *filius*. 2. Note that *parat* means *prepare for* as well as *prepare*. 3. In apposition with the preceding nouns.

119. 1. The arms of-the-new ally are good. 2. The sons of-the-allies do-give great assistance to-the-people of-the-small towns. 3. The farmers are-toiling in the new fields. 4. Why, (my) son, is the good queen calling the people together? 5. Are the new allies preparing grain? Yes.

LESSON XIII

Parvum parva decent— Small things become the small¹

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONTINUED) · ADVERBS

120. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. The complete declension of **bonus, -a, -um**, is given below :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonō'rum	bonā'rum	bonō'rum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

NOTE. Learn to recite and to write the forms of adjectives *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case. Make a blank scheme (cf. § 72) of the declension above and use it for drill on a variety of adjectives.

a. Decline **magnus, -a, -um** ; **parvus, -a, -um** ; **novus, -a, -um**.

121. The agreement between an adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. Often the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions and hence have different terminations ; for example, **nauta, sailor**, being a masculine noun, requires the masculine form

¹ From Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

of the adjective in agreement. But the masculine adjective **bonus** belongs to the second declension, while **nauta** belongs to the first; hence, *a good sailor* is **nauta bonus**. Learn to decline nouns and adjectives together as follows:

nauta bonus (bases **naut- bon-**), *m., the good sailor*

NOM.	nauta	bonus	nautae	boni
GEN.	nautae	boni	nautarum	bonorum
DAT.	nautae	bono	nautis	bonis
ACC.	nautam	bonum	nautas	bonos
ABL.	nauta	bono	nautis	bonis

122. Adverbs. An adverb is a word which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Most adverbs answer the questions *How? Where? When? To what degree?*

123. Position of Adverbs. Adverbs, unless emphatic, stand directly before the words which they modify: as,

Rēgina Galbae pecūniam saepe dat, *the queen often gives money to Galba*

Interrogative adverbs (*where? when? why?* etc.) regularly stand first, as in English. Other adverbs, when emphatic, stand in some unusual position.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

124. 1. Agricola bonus est in magnō agrō. **2.** Mārcus nauta est amicus agricolae boni. **3.** Mārcus agricolae bonō auxilium saepe dat. **4.** Amat'ne Mārcus agricolam bonum? Amat. **5.** Quō Mārcus cum Galbā, agricolā bonō, properat? In nōtum oppidum. **6.** Agricolae boni multum frūmentum per longās viās portant. **7.** Suntne agri agricolārum bonōrum magni?

Sunt. 8. Viri oppidi nōti agricolis bonis pecūniam saepe dant. 9. Cūr populī oppidōrum nōtōrum agricolās bonōs convocant? Oppida nōta longum bellum parant. 10. Socii nōtae rēginae cum agricolis bonis labōrant.

125. 1. Are the new spears long? No. 2. In the new lands are many famous towns. 3. The reputation of-the-new town is good. 4. The road through the good farmer's fields is new.

LESSON XIV

Nōn scholae, sed vītae discimus — We learn not for school, but for life¹

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONCLUDED) · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

126. **Masculine Adjectives in *-er*.** Not all masculine adjectives of the second declension end in *-us*, like **bonus**, but some end in *-er* and are declined like **ager** or **puer** (§ 102). The feminine and neuter nominatives show which model to follow.

127. Declension of **liber, libera, liberum**, *free*:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberum
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberō
NOM.	liberī	liberae	libera
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
ACC.	liberōs	liberās	libera
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

¹ From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

128. Declension of pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, pretty :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
ABL.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
NOM.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

129. Dative with Adjectives. We learned in § 53 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 57 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. In English this dative would be in the objective case after the preposition *to* or *for*: as, *near to town, fit for service.*

130. Rule for Dative with Adjectives. *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.*

Fābula est grāta Lesbiae, the story is pleasing to Lesbia
Ager est proximus oppidō, the field is nearest to the town

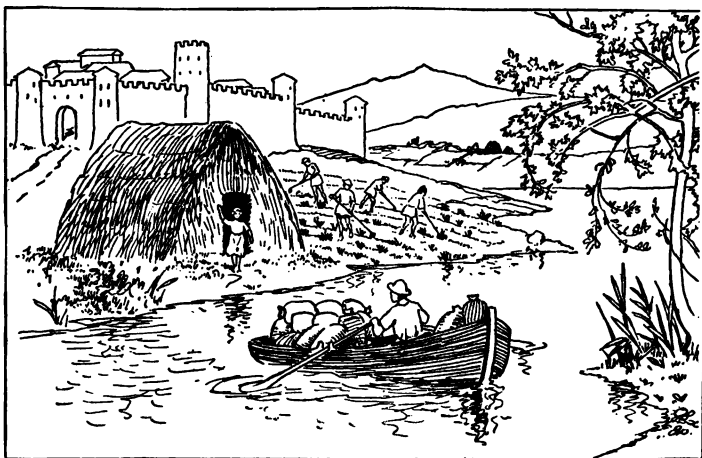
a. Among such adjectives are

amicus, -a, -um, friendly (to)
inimicus, -a, -um, hostile (to)
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing (to)
proximus, -a, -um, nearest (to)

ĪNSULA MĀRCĪ NAUTAE

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

131. Galba agricola in agrīs pulchris habītat, Quintus in oppidō magnō et nōtō habitat; sed Mārcus nauta in insulā parvā habitat. Parva insula est pulchra et grāta Mārcō nautae. Terra est grāta Galbae et Quintō, sed Mārcus altās aquās amat. Insula parva Mārci nautae est proxima 5



MĀRCUS FRŪMENTUM Ā TERRĀ AD ĪNSULAM PORTAT

agris pulchris Galbae agricolae. Mārcus ab insulā parvā ad terram saepe nāvigat et per agrōs pulchrōs ad parvam casam Galbae agricolae properat. Lesbia, filia Galbae, Mārcō nautae frūmentum saepe dat et Mārcus frūmentum ā terrā ad parvam insulam portat. Lesbia est Mārcō nautae amīca 10 sed inimica Quintō. Agrī nōn grāti Quintō sunt. Quintus arma et tēla et bella amat. Estne Mārcus servus? Nōn est. Mārcus est liber.

LESSON XV

Prō bonō publicō — For the public weal¹

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

132. Observe the following sentences :

Marcus is my son

Marcus is mine

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective ; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun. Similarly in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

133. The Latin possessives are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are as follows :

Referring to one	{ meus, mea, meum, <i>my, mine</i> tuus, tua, tuum, <i>your, yours</i> suus, sua, suum, <i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>
Referring to more than one	{ noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i> vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> suus, sua, suum, <i>their (own), theirs</i>

NOTE. The vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**: as, **mī fili**, (*O my son*) ; **mī serve**, (*O my slave*).

134. Rule for Agreement of the Possessive Adjective.
The possessive adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in gender, number, and case.

a. Compare the English and Latin in

Galba is calling his friends, Galba } *suōs amicōs vocat*
Lesbia is calling her friends, Lesbia }

The girls are calling their friends, puellae suōs amicōs vocant

Observe that **suōs** agrees with **amicōs** and is unaffected by the gender, number, and case of **Galba**, **Lesbia**, or **puellae**.

¹ A Latin slogan.

44 POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

135. *Suus*, the Reflexive Possessive. The possessive *suus* is reflexive; that is, it stands in the predicate and refers to the subject, indicating that the subject is the possessor. In English the meaning of the sentence *Galba is calling his daughter* is doubtful, for we cannot tell whether Galba is calling his own daughter or the daughter of someone else. But in Latin *Galba filiam suam vocat* can mean only the former, for *suum* must refer to *Galba*.

136. Omission of Possessives. The Latin possessives are omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them.

137. Position of Possessive Adjectives. Possessive adjectives, when not emphatic, follow their nouns; when emphatic, they precede: as,

Lesbia est filia mea, Lesbia is my daughter

Lesbia est mea filia, Lesbia is my daughter

EXERCISES

138. 1. *Rēgina suis sociis auxilium dat.* 2. *Servi frumentum vestrum portant.* 3. *Socii nostri nova bella parant.* 4. *Tēla sunt mea, arma sunt tua.* 5. *Agri pulchri sunt grāti filiabus meis.* 6. *Populus est inimicus suis sociis.* 7. *Insula nostra est proxima tuae terrae.* 8. *Meae viae nōn sunt tuae viae.*

I AM STRONGLY IN FAVOR OF CONTINUING THE CLASSICS IN AN ACADEMIC EDUCATION. I CONSIDER THAT, IN ADDITION TO THE MENTAL DISCIPLINE WHICH STUDY OF THEM AFFORDS, THEY ARE THE MOST HELPFUL IN THE MATTER OF CORRECT ENGLISH STYLE, IN LAYING SOUND FOUNDATIONS FOR GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION, AND IN FURNISHING A BASIS FOR THE STUDY OF ALL MODERN LANGUAGES.—WILLIAM HOWARD TAFT

139. Answer the following questions in Latin, basing your replies on § 131 :

1. Quis in insulā habitat ?
2. Ubi Galba habitat ?
3. Ubi Quintus habitat ?
4. Quid est grātum Mārcō ?
5. Estne insula nautae proxima terrae ?
6. Suntne servī liberi ?
7. Quō Mārcus saepe nāvigat ?
8. Quid Lesbia Mārcō dat ?
9. Cūr est Lesbia Quintō inimica ?



Second Review, Lessons VIII-XV, §§ 737-742



ON THE SACRED WAY IN THE ROMAN FORUM

This picture of the Roman Forum shows the Sacred Way with its ancient pavement. At the left rise the three remaining columns of the temple of Castor. At the right are the ruins of the temple of Saturn, and in the right background towers the Capitoline Hill

LESSON XVI

Experientia docet stultōs — Experience teaches fools

CONJUGATION · PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · PREDICATE GENITIVE OF POSSESSOR

140. Conjugation. The inflection of the verb is called its *conjugation*. Through its conjugation the verb expresses voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

141. Voice. There are two voices, active and passive. A verb in the active voice represents the subject as *performing* the action : as,



ACTIVE VOICE

The boy → *hit* → the ball

A verb in the passive voice represents the subject as *receiving* the action : as,

The girl ← *was hit* ← by
the ball



PASSIVE VOICE

Note the direction of the
arrows.

142. Mood. In Latin there are three moods : indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.

143. Tense. The tense of a verb indicates its time.

144. In English there are six tenses :

1. Present, referring to present time, *I call*.
2. Past, referring to past time, *I called*.
3. Future, referring to future time, *I shall call*.

4. Present perfect, denoting action completed in present time, *I have called.*

5. Past perfect,¹ denoting action completed in past time, *I had called.*

6. Future perfect, denoting action completed in future time, *I shall have called.*

There are also six tenses in Latin, with practically the same names and meanings.

145. Number. In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, singular and plural.

146. Person. Latin, like English, has three persons. The first person is the person speaking (*I call*); the second person, the person spoken to (*you call*); the third person, the person or thing spoken of (*he calls*). In English, person and number are indicated by personal pronouns. In Latin, on the other hand, person and number are indicated by *personal endings* (§ 47). We have already learned that *-t* and *-nt* are endings of the third person, singular and plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1ST PERSON	<i>-m</i> or <i>-ō</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>-mus</i>	<i>we</i>
2D PERSON	<i>-s</i>	<i>thou</i> or <i>you</i>	<i>-tis</i>	<i>you</i>
3D PERSON	<i>-t</i>	<i>he, she, it</i>	<i>-nt</i>	<i>they</i>

147. Indicative Mood. The indicative mood is used to make a statement or to ask a question concerning a real or assumed fact.

148. Regular and Irregular Verbs. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan, and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*.

¹ Also called the *pluperfect*.

149. Present Indicative of *sum*. The verb *sum*, *I am*, irregular in Latin as in English, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PERSON	<i>sum, I-am</i>	<i>sumus, we-are</i>
2D PERSON	<i>es, you-are</i>	<i>estis, you-are</i>
3D PERSON	<i>est, he-, she-, or it-is</i>	<i>sunt, they-are</i>

a. Est meaning there is, or sunt meaning there are, precedes its subject. In this use there is called an expletive.

Distinguish, therefore, between *insula est magna, the island is large*, and *est insula magna, there is a large island*.

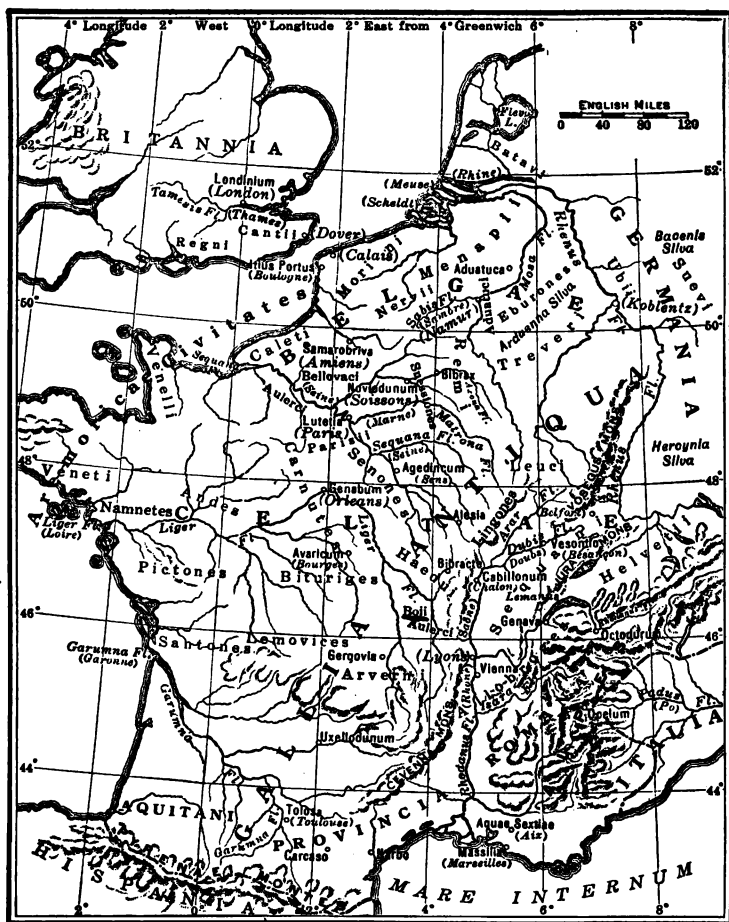
150. Rule for Predicate Genitive of Possessor. *The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, and is connected with its noun by a form of the verb *sum*.*

Pecūnia est servi, the money is the slave's, or, freely, belongs to the slave (literally, is of the slave)

GALLIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

151. *Gallia est terra Gallōrum. Terra Gallōrum est pulchra, et Galli, populus Galliae, patriam (country) suam amant. Sunt in Galliā multa oppida magna. In agris multi agricolae habitant, et equi agricolārum multum frūmentum per viās longās in oppida portant. Bella Gallis grāta nōn sunt. 5 Sed proximī Gallis habitant Germānī. Germānī bellum amant et semper sunt in armis. Saepe Germānī cum sociis suis in Galliam properant et agrōs occupant. Tum Galli populum ad arma vocant et cum Germānīs pugnant. Magna est fāma bellōrum et nōtae sunt victōriae. Sed victōria nōn 10 semper est Gallōrum. Saepe Germānī superant.*



GAUL AND PARTS OF GERMANY, SPAIN, ITALY, AND BRITAIN

152. 1. Are you friendly to my allies? Yes. 2. Your well-known victories, my son, are pleasing to our land. 3. Are the men of your towns free? No. 4. The new spears belong to (are of) my son. 5. Are we very near to the high island? 6. No, the island is not very near.

LESSON XVII

Vōx populī vōx Deī — The voice of the people is the voice of God

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS · PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

153. Four Regular Conjugations. There are four regular conjugations of verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from one another by the *distinguishing*, or *characteristic*, vowel appearing at the end of the present stem.

154. The present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping *-re*, the ending of the present infinitive active, which is given in the vocabularies.

155. Below are given the present indicative and the present infinitive active of a verb of each conjugation, the infinitive showing the present stem with its distinguishing vowel. These are the first two of the principal parts of the verb.

CONJUGA- TION	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PRES. STEM	DISTINGUISH- ING VOWEL
I	vo'cō, <i>call</i>	vocā're	vocā-	ā
II	mo'neō, <i>advise</i>	monē're	monē-	ē
III	re'gō, <i>rule</i>	re'gere	rege-	e
IV	au'diō, <i>hear</i>	audi're	audi-	i

156. From the present stem are formed the *present*, *past* (also called *imperfect*), and *future* tenses.

157. Present Indicative Active of First Conjugation. Verbs having the infinitive termination *-āre*, such as *vocā're*, belong to the First Conjugation.

158. The present indicative is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem. The distinguishing vowel *-ā* disappears in the first person singular, and is shortened before the endings *-t* and *-nt* in the third person singular and plural.

159. The inflection of *vocō*, *vocāre* (pres. stem *vocā-*), *call*, in the present indicative active is as follows :

	PERSONAL ENDINGS		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. <i>vo'cō</i> , <i>I-call</i>	<i>-ō</i>	<i>vocā'mus</i> , <i>we-call</i>	<i>-mus</i>
2. <i>vo'cās</i> , <i>you-call</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>vocā'tis</i> , <i>you-call</i>	<i>-tis</i>
3. <i>vo'cat</i> , <i>he-, she-, or it-calls</i>	<i>-t</i>	<i>vo'cant</i> , <i>they-call</i>	<i>-nt</i>

160. Translation of Present. English has three forms for the present tense : *I call*, *I am calling*, *I do call*. Latin has but one form, *vocō* ; this is used for any one of the three English forms.



THE ISLAND IN THE TIBER

On the right is the Fabrician bridge, which was built 62 B.C., in the days of Cæsar and Cicero

52 PRESENT INDICATIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

EXERCISES

161. Inflect the present indicative of the following verbs, all of which you have had before :

INDICATIVE PRESENT

a'mō, *I love*
 con'vocō, *I call together*
 dō, *I give*
 ha'bitō, *I live, I dwell*
 labō'rō, *I toil*
 nār'rō, *I tell*
 nā'vigō, *I sail*
 oc'cupō, *I seize*
 pa'rō, *I prepare*
 por'tō, *I carry*
 pro'perō, *I hasten*
 pug'nō, *I fight*

INFINITIVE PRESENT

amā're, *to love*
 convocā're, *to call together*
 da're, *to give*
 habitā're, *to live, to dwell*
 labōrā're, *to toil*
 nārrā're, *to tell*
 nāvigā're, *to sail*
 occupā're, *to seize*
 parā're, *to prepare*
 portā're, *to carry*
 properā're, *to hasten*
 pugnā're, *to fight*

NOTE. In dō, dare, the a of the present stem is short. The only indicative form of dō having the stem vowel long is dās, *you give*, second person singular of the present.

162. Translate each of the following forms and give its voice, mood, tense, person, and number. When translating a verb, note first the personal ending.

1. Occupā'mus, properā'tis, con'vocant. 2. Datis, labō'rās, pugnā'tis. 3. Parās, portat, amā'mus. 4. Nārrat, dant, pro'perat. 5. Occupā'tis, nā'vigās, portant. 6. Habitā'tis, labō'rant, dās.

163. 1. We-dwell, we-are-dwelling, we-do-dwell. 2. You-seize (*singular*), you-are-seizing, you-do-seize. 3. We-do-carry, they-are-laboring, we-hasten. 4. He-is-giving, he-calls-together, you-are-sailing. 5. They-do-fight, he-carries, we-are-living.

LESSON XVIII

Labōrāre est ōrāre — To labor is to pray¹

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

164. One of the relations denoted by the Latin ablative is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (§ 65). But *with* varies in meaning, and cannot always be translated by the Latin preposition *cum*. This becomes clear from the following sentences :

1. The fields are thick *with* grain
2. Marcus fights *with* his spear
3. Julia is living *with* Lesbia
4. Galba toils *with* great industry

With denotes *cause* in 1, *with grain* meaning *because of grain*.

With denotes *means* in 2, *with his spear* meaning *by means of his spear*.

With denotes *accompaniment* in 3, the meaning being that Julia is not living alone but *in company with* Lesbia.

With denotes *manner* in 4, *with great industry* telling how Galba works.

These four meanings of *with* are expressed in Latin by four different constructions of the ablative, known as the Ablative of Cause, the Ablative of Means, the Ablative of Accompaniment, and the Ablative of Manner.

165. Rule for Ablative of Cause. *Cause is denoted by the ablative, usually without a preposition, and answers the question Because of what?*

Agri sunt crēbri frūmentō, the fields are thick with grain

¹ Motto of the monks of the order of Saint Benedict.

166. Rule for Ablative of Means. *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This ablative answers the question By means of what? With what?*

Mārcus tēlō pugnat, Marcus fights with his spear

167. Rule for Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This ablative answers the question In company with whom?*

Iūlia cum Lesbiā habitat, Julia is living with Lesbia

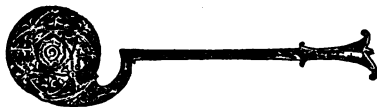
168. Rule for Ablative of Manner. *Manner is denoted by the ablative with cum. Cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. This ablative answers the question How? In what manner?*

Galba (cum) magnā diligentīā labōrat, Galba works with great industry

EXERCISE

169. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage and what question does each answer?

The day after the battle we retreated with all our forces. The roads were deep with mud and the men were weary with fighting. To make matters worse, aviators attacked our crowded ranks with bombs. The machines flew low, but with such speed that we could not hit them. At last with a sigh of relief we entered a forest so thick with trees that we were well protected by the branches. Many wretched refugees with their wives and children sought shelter there.



A ROMAN SPOON

LESSON XIX

Multum in parvō — Much in little

PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM* • THE PREPOSITION *Ē* OR *EX*

170. Past and Future Indicative of *sum*. The past¹ and the future indicative of the irregular verb *sum* are conjugated as follows :

PAST INDICATIVE

1. e'ram, <i>I-was</i>	erā'mus, <i>we-were</i>
2. e'rās, <i>you-were</i>	erā'tis, <i>you-were</i>
3. e'rat, <i>he-, she-, or it-was</i>	e'rant, <i>they-were</i>

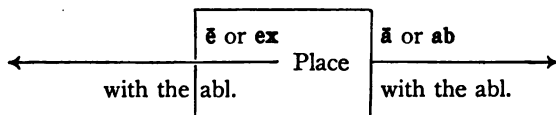
FUTURE INDICATIVE

1. e'rō, <i>I-shall-be</i>	e'rimus, <i>we-shall-be</i>
2. e'ris, <i>you-will-be</i>	e'ritis, <i>you-will-be</i>
3. e'rit, <i>he-, she-, or it-will-be</i>	e'runt, <i>they-will-be</i>

171. Preposition *ē* or *ex*. Latin has two prepositions meaning *from*, with the ablative : *ā* or *ab* and *ē* or *ex*.

Vir ab castris properat } *the man hastens from the camp*
Vir ex castris properat }

But *ā* or *ab* means *from the outside of*, and *ē* or *ex* *from the inside of*. Note the diagram :



NOTE. Write *ē* before consonants only, *ex* before either vowels or consonants.

¹ Also called the *imperfect*.

PUERĪ SEXTUS ET QUĪNTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

172. SEXTUS. Quō, Quīnte, properās? Cūr arma nova et tēlum longum portās?

QUĪNTUS. Ad castra proxima properō, Sexte, cum virīs et puerīs oppidi nostrī. Cūr in armīs nōn es? Cūr terrae nostrae tuum auxilium nōn dās?



QUŌ, QUĪNTE, PROPERĀS?

S. Rōmānus sum. Populō Rōmānō bellum semper grātum est. Sed in nostrō oppidō nōn erat fāma bellī. Quis, Quīnte, bellum parat? Eritne novum bellum cum Gallis?

Q. Nōn cum Gallis. Germānī, semper inimīci Rōmānīs, bellum magnā diligentīā parant. Ex silvīs Germāniae cōpiās suās convocat. Mox viae, Sexte, erunt crēbrae equīs et virīs, et agrī Rōmānī proximī Germāniae in periculō erunt. Sed nostra victōria erit.

173. 1. The Germans fight with long spears. 2. We-are-hastening from (the inside of) the Roman camp. 3. Shall-you-be with Sextus? We-shall-be, soon. 4. The perils of-our forces were many.

174. Derivation. Give the meaning of the following English words and tell to what Latin words they are related:

insulate	conservation	longevity	agriculture	elaborate
sinicure	navigable	servile	virile	depopulate

LESSON XX

Nil dēspērāndum — There's no such word as fail¹

PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

175. Formation of Tenses. Instead of using auxiliary verbs, like *was*, *shall*, *will*, etc., to express differences in tense, Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

176. The tense sign of the past is **-bā-**, which is added to the present stem. The past consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
vocā-	ba-	m
<i>calling-</i>	<i>was-</i>	<i>I</i>

a. Note that the Latin verb is translated from right to left, so that English *I was calling* is in Latin **vocā'bam**, *calling-was-I*.

177. Inflection of Past Indicative Active. The personal endings of the past are the same as those of the present, except that **-m** is used instead of **-ō** in the first person singular.

SINGULAR

1. vocā'bam, *I-was-calling* or *I-called*
2. vocā'bās, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. vocā'bat, *he-, she-, it-was-calling* or *he-, she-, it-called*

PLURAL

1. vocābā'mus, *we-were-calling* or *we-called*
2. vocābā'tis, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. vocā'bant, *they-were-calling* or *they-called*

¹ From Horace, a Roman poet. Literally, *In nothing must it be despaired.*

58 PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

a. Note that the inflection above is somewhat like that of **eram** (§ 170), the past tense of **sum**, and that the long **ā** of the tense sign **-bā-** is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**. A long vowel is regularly shortened before **nt** and final **-m** or **-t**. Learn this rule now.

178. Meaning of Past Tense. The Latin past tense has two uses.

a. It may represent an action as going on in past time and not yet completed, and is then translated by the English past progressive: as, **vocābam**, *I was calling*. For this reason this tense is often called the *imperfect*.

b. It usually describes a past situation, and is then translated by the English past: as, **vocābam**, *I called*. For this reason this tense is often called the *past descriptive*.

EXERCISES

179. Inflect in the past indicative active the verbs given in § 161.

180. 1. **Nārrās**, **nārrābās**, **parāmus**, **parābāmus**. 2. **Pugnātis**, **portābat**, **occupant**, **dabam**. 3. **Occupābātis**, **nāvigātis**, **labōrābās**, **habitant**. 4. **Datis**, **pugnābam**, **properātis**, **occupābāmus**.

BRITANNIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364, and locate on the map, page 49, the countries mentioned in the story.

181. **Britannia**, **terra Britannōrum**, **est insula magna**. **Britannī erant barbarī et in silvis magnis et oppidis parvis habitābant**. **Britannia est proxima Galliae et Britannī erant amici Gallōrum**. **In longis bellis Gallōrum et Rōmānōrum Britannī sociis suis auxilium saepe dabant**. **Iam nōta populō Rōmānō erat Britannia**. **Sed amicitia Britannōrum et Gallōrum populō Rōmānō grāta nōn erat**. **Itaque Rōmānī cōpiās convocābant et arma sua et magnam cōpiam frūmenti**

parābant. Magnā cum diligentīā labōrābant. Tum cum multis viris ad insulam Britanniam nāvigābant. Īnsula erat crēbra 10 silvis et viae nōn bonae erant. Itaque Rōmānī in periculō saepe erant. Britannī ex castris suis properābant et cum Rōmānis pugnābant. Sed victōria Rōmānōrum erat, et Rōmānī cōpiis suis multa oppida Britannōrum occupābant.



BRITANNĪ ERANT BARBARĪ

182. 1. The Romans were-fighting in the forest with the savage Britons. 2. The Britons carried grain to the camp with-their horses. 3. Your friendship will-be known to-the-Romans. 4. Because-of-the-danger¹ of-war the Britons were already calling-together their forces. 5. The Romans sailed through the deep waters with great danger.

1. Ablative of cause, § 165.

LESSON XXI

Montāni semper liberī — Mountaineers are always free¹

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

183. Formation of Future Indicative Active. The tense sign of the future in the first conjugation is **-bi-**. This is added to the present stem and followed by the personal endings.

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
vocā- <i>call-</i>	bi- <i>will-</i>	t <i>he</i>

184. Inflection of Future Indicative Active. The first person singular ends in **-bō**, the **i** of the tense sign disappearing. In the third person plural **-bi-** becomes **-bu-**.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. vocā'bō, <i>I-shall-call</i> | vocā'bimus, <i>we-shall-call</i> |
| 2. vocā'bis, <i>you-will-call</i> | vocā'bitis, <i>you-will-call</i> |
| 3. vocā'bit, <i>he-, she-, it-will-call</i> | vocā'bunt, <i>they-will-call</i> |

a. Note that the inflection is somewhat like that of **erō** (§ 170), the future of **sum**.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

185. 1. Quis fābulam insulae¹ Britanniae nārrābit? 2. Cūr, mī fili, Britannī erant miserī? 3. Bellis crēbris Britannī erant miserī. 4. Erantne ōrae insulae¹ altae²? Altae erant. 5. Britannī Gallis, sociis suis, auxilium saepe dant. 6. Itaque Rōmānī magnis cum cōpiis ad ōrās altās insulae nāvigābunt.

¹ Motto of the state of West Virginia. The verb *to be* is omitted in this motto, as in many others.

7. *Iam Rōmānī barbarōs multīs proeliis*³ *superābunt.* 8. *Magna erunt praemia victōriae.* 9. *Tum insula erit Rōmānōrum.*

1. Genitive. 2. Predicate adjective, nominative plural. 3. Ablative of means.

186. 1. The shore of-the-island, nearest to-Gaul, is high.
2. We-shall-fight with the hostile savages¹ in the great forests.
3. Our friends will-be wretched because-of-the-dangers² of-the-battle. 4. You-will-conquer the Britons, O Romans, with-your long spears.³ 5. Soon (*iam*) the Romans will give great rewards to their allies.

1. Ablative of accompaniment. 2. Ablative of cause. 3. Ablative of means.

187. Inflect in the future indicative active the verbs given in § 161.



ŌRAE BRITANNIAE ERANT ALTAE

LESSON XXII

Virtūs praemium est optimum — Virtue is the best prize¹

PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

188. Formation of Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active. Verbs having the infinitive termination **-ēre**, such as **monē're**, belong to the Second Conjugation.

189. The present, past, and future of the second conjugation, as of the first, are formed on the present stem.

190. The present stem of the second conjugation ends in **-ē** (§ 155). This characteristic vowel appears in every form of the present, past, and future.

191. The same personal endings and the same tense signs are used as in the first conjugation.

192. Inflection of Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active. The inflection below shows the present, past, and future indicative active of **vo'cō** (*I call*) of the first conjugation and of **mo'neō** (*I advise* or *warn*) of the second. Review the forms of **vo'cō** and learn the corresponding tenses of **mo'neō**.

vo'cō, vocā're (pres. stem **vocā-**), *call*

PRESENT

1. vo'cō, <i>I-call</i>	vocā'mus, <i>we-call</i>
2. vo'cās, <i>you-call</i>	vocā'tis, <i>you-call</i>
3. vo'cat, <i>he-, she-, it-calls</i>	vo'cant, <i>they-call</i>

¹ From Plautus, a writer of Latin plays.

PAST (IMPERFECT)

1. vocā'bam, *I-was-calling* or *I-called*
2. vocā'bās, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. vocā'bat, *he-, she-, it-was-calling* or *he-, she-, it-called*
1. vocābā'mus, *we-were-calling* or *we-called*
2. vocābā'tis, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. vocā'bant, *they-were-calling* or *they-called*

FUTURE

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. vocā'bō, <i>I-shall-call</i> | vocā'bimus, <i>we-shall-call</i> |
| 2. vocā'bis, <i>you-will-call</i> | vocā'bitis, <i>you-will-call</i> |
| 3. vocā'bit, <i>he-, she-, it-will-call</i> | vocā'bunt, <i>they-will-call</i> |

mo'neō, monē're (pres. stem monē-), *advise*

PRESENT

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. mo'neō, <i>I-advise</i> | monē'mus, <i>we-advise</i> |
| 2. mo'nēs, <i>you-advise</i> | monē'tis, <i>you-advise</i> |
| 3. mo'net, <i>he-, she-, it-advise</i> | mo'nent, <i>they-advise</i> |

PAST (IMPERFECT)

1. monē'bam, *I-was-advising* or *I-advise*
2. monē'bās, *you-were-advising* or *you-advise*
3. monē'bat, *he-, she-, it-was-advising* or *he-, she-, it-advise*
1. monēbā'mus, *we-were-advising* or *we-advise*
2. monēbā'tis, *you-were-advising* or *you-advise*
3. monē'bant, *they-were-advising* or *they-advise*

FUTURE

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. monē'bō, <i>I-shall-advise</i> | monē'bimus, <i>we-shall-advise</i> |
| 2. monē'bis, <i>you-will-advise</i> | monē'bitis, <i>you-will-advise</i> |
| 3. monē'bit, <i>he-will-advise</i> | monē'bunt, <i>they-will-advise</i> |

193. Nearly all regular verbs ending in *-eō* belong to the Second Conjugation.

194. **Shortening of Vowels.** Attention has been called to the shortening of long vowels in certain forms. The following rules are of general application :

1. A long vowel is shortened before another vowel.

Thus, *monē-ō* becomes *monē-ō*.

2. A long vowel is shortened before *nt* and *nd*, before final *-m* or *-t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *-l* or *-r*.

Thus, *vocānt*, *vocāndus*, *vocābām*, *vocābāt*, *monēt*.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

195. Like *monēō*, inflect the present, past, and future indicative of

habēō, *habē're*, *have*

teneō, *tenē're*, *hold*, *keep*

timeō, *timē're*, *fear*

videō, *vidē're*, *see*

DERIVATIVES

habit

tenacious

timid

vision, *evident*

196. 1. *Tenētis*, *vocābitis*, *habēbant*. 2. *Vidēbunt*, *monēbāmus*, *nārrābat*. 3. *Habēbō*, *timēs*, *vocātis*. 4. *Vidēsne altās ōrās insulae?* 5. *Numquam*, *Rōmānī*, *sine auxiliō sociōrum nostrōrum praemia victōriae tenēbimus*.

MY FIRST REMEMBRANCE OF GRAMMAR IS MY STUDY OF THE LATIN GRAMMAR, WHICH GAVE ME, AS FAR AS I NOW CAN SEE, WHATEVER KNOWLEDGE I POSSESS OF THE STRUCTURE OF LANGUAGE.—LYMAN ABBOTT

LESSON XXIII

Lupus in fābulā — The wolf in the story¹

LATIN ORDER OF WORDS

197. Order of Words in English and Latin Compared. In English, words are arranged in a fairly fixed order, and this order cannot be changed, as a rule, without changing or destroying the meaning of the sentence.

198. In Latin the office of the words in a sentence is shown by their forms (§ 39), and their position is much more free. Still there are general rules of order, which should be carefully observed. The rules already given in the preceding lessons are here summarized for review.

a. The subject generally stands first, the verb last. But, to avoid obscurity, *est*, *is*, and other forms of the verb *to be* usually stand, as in English, between the subject and a noun or adjective in the predicate.

NOTE. In connected narrative each succeeding sentence begins with the word or words that link it most closely to the sentence preceding. For example, in "The Rhine was the frontier of Germany. Cæsar built a bridge across this river," the order of words in Latin would be "The Rhine was the frontier of Germany. *Across this river* Cæsar a bridge built." Observe that the first words of the second sentence, "Across this river," link it to the sentence preceding and are therefore placed before the subject, "Cæsar."

b. The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

c. The vocative case rarely stands first.

d. An adjective may either precede or follow its noun (cf. § 199).

e. The possessive adjective regularly follows its noun.

f. Adverbs normally stand directly before the words they modify.

¹ From Terence, a writer of Latin comedies. The expression applies to an unexpected and unwelcome appearance; cf. "Speak of the devil."

199. Words are made emphatic by placing them in unusual positions. Thus we have seen that possessive adjectives, which regularly follow their nouns, are made emphatic by placing them before their nouns (§ 137); and any adjective or other modifier is made emphatic by separating it from the word to which it belongs. Observe the following sentences:

Caesar agrōs pulchrōs Gallōrum occupat

Caesar *pulchrōs* Gallōrum agrōs occupat

In the first sentence **pulchrōs** is not emphatic. In the second it has been made so by separating it from its noun **agrōs**. The order of words, therefore, in a Latin sentence tells the eyes of the reader as much about the emphasis as his ears tell him when he hears a man speak. If you do not note the order, you will often fail to get the sense.

EXERCISES

200. Derivation. What Latin derivatives can you find in the following paragraph? Give the meaning of each derivative and the Latin word from which it is derived.

Britain, because of its insular character, was not occupied by the Romans for many years. Its inhabitants were a great multitude, barbarous in their habits of life, very belligerent, and not slow to fight for their liberties. Then, too, the visible and the invisible perils of navigation in the open sea, though not insuperable, made the Romans timid.



Third Review, Lessons XVI-XXIII, §§ 743-748



THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT NOW APPEARS

No spot has greater historic interest than the Roman Forum, the center of the political and commercial life of the Roman Empire. Its magnificent buildings were restored for the last time in the sixth century. Then for more than a thousand years they were systematically destroyed and buried in rubbish, so that now the ancient pavement is at places forty feet below the present level of the ground. At the left of the picture is the Palatine Hill, and at the farther end of the Forum is the Capitoline



LESSON XXIV

Quandōque bonus dormitat Homērus — Even good Homer
sometimes nods¹

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

201. Definition of a Demonstrative. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object, as, *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns: as, *Do you hear these?* Sometimes they are adjectives: as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called *demonstrative pronouns*, in the latter *demonstrative adjectives*.

202. Agreement of Latin Demonstratives. Demonstrative pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer, but their case is determined by the way they are used.

Demonstrative adjectives, like other adjectives, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

203. Demonstrative *is, ea, id*. The demonstrative most used is *is* (masculine), *ea* (feminine), *id* (neuter), meaning *this* or *that* in the singular and *these* or *those* in the plural. It is declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī (ī)	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (īs)	eīs (īs)	eīs (īs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (īs)	eīs (īs)	eīs (īs)

¹ From Horace. The meaning is that even the best make mistakes. Of similar sentiment are his words "Vitiis nēmō sine nāscitur," *no one is born without faults*.

The genitive singular *eius* is pronounced *eh'yus*. The plural forms with two *i*'s are pronounced as one syllable. Hence, pronounce *ii* as *i* and *iis* as *is*.

204. Position of Demonstrative Adjectives. Demonstrative adjectives, being emphatic, normally precede their nouns: as,

Ad eam insulam nāvigat, he is sailing to this (or that) island

205. Demonstratives used as Personal Pronouns. Latin demonstratives are frequently used for the personal pronouns of the third person, *he, she, it*, or (plural) *they*. *Is*, as a personal pronoun, has the following meanings:

NOM.	<i>is, he; ea, she; id, it</i>
GEN.	<i>eius, of him, his; eius, of her, her, hers; eius, of it, its</i>
DAT.	<i>eī, to or for him; eī, to or for her; eī, to or for it</i>
ACC.	<i>eum, him; eam, her; id, it</i>
ABL.	<i>eō, with, from, etc., him; eā, with, from, etc., her; eō, with, from, etc., it</i>
NOM.	<i>eī or iī, eae, ea, they</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them, their</i>
DAT.	<i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, to or for them</i>
ACC.	<i>eōs, eās, ea, them</i>
ABL.	<i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, with, from, etc., them</i>

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

206. 1. *Quis ea cōsilia Rōmānōrum iam nūntiābat? Bonus amicus Britannōrum.* 2. *Quō eī Rōmānī nāvigābunt? Ad insulam eī Rōmānī nāvigābunt.* 3. *Quid in eam insulam portābunt? Multōs virōs et equōs et magnam cōpiam frūmenti in eam insulam portābunt.* 4. *Pugnābuntne Britanni cum Rōmānīs? Mox pugnābunt, sed eōs nōn superābunt.* 5. *Amantne*

Britannī insulam suam? Amant. 6. Habentne Britannī sociōs? Nunc Gallī sunt socii eōrum, sed auxilium Gallōrum eōs numquam servābit. 7. Iam (*soon*) magnam victōriam Rōmānī nūntiābunt. 8. Iniūriæ Britannōrum erunt magnæ et vita¹ eōrum erit semper misera.

1. Observe that **vita** is translated *lives*. The plural of **vita** is not used except in the sense of biographies, as, **vitæ magnōrum virōrum**, *lives of great men*.

207. 1. He-sees him, her, it, them. 2. This plan, that life, these boys. 3. For-those rewards, with that friend, the rumor of-that battle. 4. The story of-those wrongs, for-that life, those girls.

LESSON XXV

Aurea mediocritās—The golden mean¹

THE POSSESSIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON

208. We learned in § 135 that the possessive of the third person, **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, is reflexive and is used when the subject is the possessor: as,

Britannī insulam suam amant, *the Britons love their island*

209. When *his*, *her*, *its*, *their* do not refer to the subject, but to other persons or things, we translate *his*, *her*, *its* by **eius** (*of him*, *of her*, *of it*), and *their* by **eōrum** (*of them*) for masculine or neuter possessors and **eārum** for feminine possessors.

Galba sees his (own) danger, **Galba periculum suum videt**

Galba sees his danger (not his own), **Galba periculum eius videt**

The men see their (own) danger, **virī periculum suum vident**

The men see their danger (not their own), **virī periculum eōrum (eārum) vident**

¹ From Horace, the noted lyric poet.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

210. 1. Rēgina amicōs suōs servābat. 2. Rēgina amicōs eius¹ servābat. 3. Rōmānī finitimōs suōs servābunt. 4. Rōmānī finitimōs eōrum servābunt. 5. Ei barbari cōpiis suis mūrōs altōs et lātōs eōrum tenēbant. 6. Is Gallus Rōmānōs nōn timēbat, sed eis iniūriās suās nārrābat. 7. Amātisne patriam vestram? Clāra oppida et lātōs agrōs eius amāmus. 8. Germānī victōriās eōrum nūntiābunt. 9. Nōn sine praemiō auxilium rēginae dabis.

1. Do not forget that **eius**, being masculine, feminine, or neuter, may mean *his*, *her*, or *its*. Usually the context will show which meaning to use.

211. 1. That slave will-save his (*his own*) life. 2. That slave will-save his (*not his own*) life. 3. Those girls were-holding their (*their own*) prizes. 4. Those savages will-fear their (*their own*) neighbors. 5. They love their queen and see her danger.



THE ROMAN FORUM AT ITS WESTERN END

On the left are three columns of the temple of Vespasian and the arch of Septimius Severus. On the right are the ruins of the temple of Saturn. The canvas near the foot of the arch covers an excavation where were found the alleged tomb of Romulus and the oldest Latin inscription

LESSON XXVI

Fōrmōsa faciēs mūta cōmmendātiō est—A pleasing countenance is
a silent recommendation¹

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

212. Verbs having the infinitive termination *-ēre* belong to the Third Conjugation: as, **regō**, **re'gēre** (*rule*), present stem **regē-** (cf. § 155).

213. The present indicative active of **regō** is inflected as follows:

	PERSONAL ENDINGS		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. re'gō , <i>I-rule</i>	-ō	re'gimus , <i>we-rule</i>	-mus
2. re'gis , <i>you-rule</i>	-s	re'gitis , <i>you-rule</i>	-tis
3. re'git , <i>he-, she-, it-rules</i>	-t	re'gunt , <i>they-rule</i>	-nt

a. Note that the final *-e* of the present stem disappears in the first person singular, becomes *-u-* in the third person plural and *-i-* elsewhere. The inflection is much like that of **erō**, the future of **sum**.

EXERCISES

214. Like **regō**, **re'gēre**, inflect the present indicative active of **dicō**, **di'cere**, *speak, say*; and **dūcō**, **dū'cere**, *lead*.

215 Derivation. From the verb **dūcō** many English words are derived. Define the following:

ductile	induce	produce	adduce
duke	introduce	reduce	deduce

¹ From Publilius Syrus, a writer whose short and witty sayings were memorized in the Roman schools.

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULĪ¹

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

216. MAGISTER. Saepe, discipuli mei, dē Rōmā dicimus, sed ubi est Rōma?

DISCIPULĪ. Rōma, magister, est in Italiā, clārā patriā Rōmānōrum.

M. Habētisne tabulam (*a map*) Italiae?

D. Tabulam bonam Italiae in libris nostris habēmus.

M. Estne Italia lāta?

D. Lāta Italia nōn est. Longa est.

M. Quid librī vestrī de viis Rōmānis narrant?

D. Rōmānī multās et longās viās habēbant. Eae viae per Italiam, Galliam, Germāniam patēbant. Nōta erat Appia via.² Dē eā librī saepe dicunt.

M. Eratne Rōma semper magna?

D. Nōn semper. Per multōs annōs Rōma erat parva et finitimī eius erant inimicī. Sed populus Rōmānus eōs multis proeliis superābat. Tum in (*against*) barbarōs Rōmānī cōpiās suās dūcunt et dēnique multās terrās regunt.

M. Optimē (*well done*), discipulī. Aliquandō (*some day*) ā patriā nostrā ad Italiam nāvigābitis et ōrās pulchrās et insulās eius et mūrōs altōs Rōmae vidēbitis.

1. *Teacher and Pupils.* 2. See page 86.

WE SHOULD HAVE SCANT CAPITAL TO TRADE ON WERE WE TO THROW AWAY THE WISDOM WE HAVE INHERITED AND SEEK OUR FORTUNE WITH THE SLENDER STOCK WE OURSELVES HAVE ACCUMULATED. THIS, IT SEEMS TO ME, IS THE REAL, THE PREVALENT ARGUMENT FOR HOLDING EVERY MAN WE CAN TO THE INTIMATE STUDY OF THE ANCIENT CLASSICS. — WOODROW WILSON



LESSON XXVII.

Cum grānō salis — With a grain of salt¹

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

217. Verbs having the infinitive termination *-ire* belong to the Fourth Conjugation : as, *audiō, audi're (hear)*, present stem *audi-* (cf. § 155).

218. The present indicative active of *audiō, audi're*, is inflected as follows :

	PERSONAL ENDINGS		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. <i>au'diō, I-hear</i>	-ō	<i>audi'mus, we-hear</i>	-mus
2. <i>au'dis, you-hear</i>	-s	<i>audi'tis, you-hear</i>	-tis
3. <i>au'dit, he-, she-, it-hears</i>	-t	<i>au'diunt, they-hear</i>	-nt

a. Note that **i**, the characteristic vowel, is always long except where long vowels are regularly shortened (cf. § 194). In the third person plural **u** is inserted between the stem and the personal ending : as, *audi-u-nt*.

EXERCISES

219. Like *audiō, audire*, inflect the present indicative active of *veniō, venire, come*, and *muniō, munire, fortify*.

220. 1. *Nūntiābunt, venītis, habēbat, mūnīs.* 2. *Vidēbātis, audimus, timēbit, veniunt.* 3. *Dabit, tenēbunt, mūnītis, nāvīgābās.* 4. *Audit, timēbātis, nārrant, habēbimus.* 5. *Properābunt, venimus, parābās, mūniunt.*

¹ From Pliny. An expression used to indicate that the real facts have been exaggerated : as, " That story must be taken *cum grānō salis*."

DĒ CASTRĪS RŌMĀNĪS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

221. Vidētisne castra Rōmāna? Castra sunt magna, et quattuor (*four*) portās (*gates*) habent. Per eās portās Rōmāni in castra veniunt et ex eis portis cōpiās suās dūcunt. In castris multōs virōs et equōs vidēmus. Vidēmus virōs quī in armīs sunt et virōs quī magnā diligentīā labōrant. Ei 5



CASTRĀ RŌMĀNA

quī labōrant castra mūniunt. Rōmānī castra sua altō vāllō et altā fossā semper mūniunt. Vidētisne eōs quī terram ex fossā portant? Barbarī castra sua nōn mūniunt, itaque vita¹ eōrum multis periculis patet. Sed Rōmānī sine periculō castra sua tenent nec (*nor*) barbarōs timent. In mediīs castris 10 est praetōrium (*general's tent*). Idne² vidētis? Is quī cōpiās Rōmānās dūcit est clārus vir. Saepe suōs³ convocat. Nunc eis⁴ dīcit (*is talking*) et ei eum audiunt.

1. Translate, *lives*. 2. Made up of *id* and *-ne*, the question sign. 3. *His men*. The possessives are often pronouns (cf. § 132). 4. Indirect object.

LESSON XXVIII

Palma nōn sine pulvere — No prize without a struggle¹

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

222. Intransitive verbs do not admit of a direct object (§ 25). Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern a dative as indirect object (§ 58). This dative, in Latin, represents the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed; but it appears in English as a direct object.

223. Learn the following list of common verbs whose meanings call for a dative as indirect object:

	DERIVATIVES
crē'dō, crē'dere, believe (give belief to), <i>trust</i>	creed, credit, creditor
fa'veō, favē're, favor (show favor to)	favorite, favorable
no'ceō, nocē're, injure (do harm to)	noxious, innocent
pā'reō, pārē're, obey (give obedience to)	
persuā'deō, persuādē're, persuade (make a thing agreeable to)	dissuade, suasion
resis'tō, resis'tere, resist (offer resistance to)	persist, insist, desist
stu'deō, studē're, be eager (give attention to)	study, student, studious

a. The verbs **crēdō** and **persuādeō** are transitive in some senses and take an accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect object): as, *Rōmānis sua crēdunt, they intrust their possessions to the Romans.*

224. Rule for Dative with Intransitive Verbs. *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pārēō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.*

¹ Literally, *No palm without dust*, referring to the palm branch, the prize of the victor in the chariot race, and the dust raised by the struggle. Compare Mrs. Browning's "No cross, no crown."

EXERCISES

225. Inflect the present indicative active of *servō*, *faveō*, *crēdō*, and *mūniō*.

226. Derivation. The verb *resistō*, *resist*, is composed of the verb *sistō*, *stand*, and the prefix *re-*, *back* or *again*, so that *resist* means to *stand back* in the line or *stand again* after running away.

Look up the words *consist*, *desist*, *exist*, *insist*, and *persist*, and note the force of each of the prefixes.

227. 1. *Crēdisne sociis eōrum?* *Eis nōn crēdō.* 2. *Mei finitimi cōsiliis novis tuis nōn favent.* 3. *Servi bellō student.* 4. *Bonae puellae libris suis numquam nocent.* 5. *Equi Galbae Mārcō nautae nōn pārent.*

228. 1. We-persuade our friends. 2. We-resist our neighbors. 3. That boy does not obey Lesbia. 4. You-believe them, my friends, because-of-your friendship.¹

1. Ablative of cause, § 165.



A COCKFIGHT

A wall painting from a house in Pompeii

LESSON XXIX

DIRIGŌ — I point the way¹

THE PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

229. Formation and Inflection. The tense sign is *-bā-*, as in the first two conjugations. The past indicative of *regŏ* is formed and inflected just like that of *moneŏ*. The past indicative of *audiŏ* has *iē* before the tense sign: as, *audiē'bam*.

THIRD CONJUGATION

1. *regē'bam*, *I-was-ruling* or *I-ruled*
2. *regē'bās*, *you-were-ruling* or *you-ruled*
3. *regē'bat*, *he-was-ruling* or *he-ruled*
1. *regēbā'mus*, *we-were-ruling* or *we-ruled*
2. *regēbā'tis*, *you-were-ruling* or *you-ruled*
3. *regē'bant*, *they-were-ruling* or *they-ruled*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

1. *audiē'bam*, *I-was-hearing* or *I-heard*
2. *audiē'bās*, *you-were-hearing* or *you-heard*
3. *audiē'bat*, *he-was-hearing* or *he-heard*
1. *audiēbā'mus*, *we-were-hearing* or *we-heard*
2. *audiēbā'tis*, *you-were-hearing* or *you-heard*
3. *audiē'bant*, *they-were-hearing* or *they-heard*

230. The Conjunction *-que*. The conjunction *and* is often expressed in Latin by *-que* added to the second of two associated words: as,

senātus populus'que Rŏmānus, *the senate and the Roman people*

¹ Motto of the state of Maine.

a. Words which do not stand alone, but are attached to other words, are called *enclit'ics*. We have already had *-ne*, the question sign.

EXERCISES

231. Inflect the present and past indicative of *nūntiō*, *studeō*, *crēdō*, and *veniō*.

232. 1. Dicēbant, audiēbātis, superābit, dūcunt. 2. Tenēbis, regitis, mūniēbāmus, habēbunt. 3. Dicimus, timēbātis, patent, veniēbat. 4. Dūcēbam, mūniunt, vidēbitis, patēbis. 5. Servābō, audiēbās, tenēs, dicēbāmus.

DĒ DEĪS RŌMĀNĪS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365. The names of the gods mentioned below, being the same in English and Latin, are not included.

233. 1. Rōmānī multōs deōs et multās deās habēbant. 2. Poētae Rōmānī multās fābulās dē deis et deābus¹ nārrābant.



ATHĒNA DEA SAPIENTIAE

3. Eis fābulis nōn crēdimus. 4. Populus Rōmānus deōs deāsque timēbat et eis pārēbat. 5. In numerō deōrum erant Iuppiter et Neptūnus et Mārs. 6. Iuppiter deōs deāsque regēbat, Neptūnus in aquis altis habitābat. 7. Mārs erat deus belli, et proeliis semper studēbat. 8. In numerō deārum erant Iūnō et Minerva et Diāna. 9. Iūnō erat rēgina deārum. 10. Minerva erat dea sapientiae. 11. Diāna erat rēgina silvārum.

1. *dea* is declined like *filia* (§ 70. a), having *deābus* in the dative and ablative plural.

234. 1. Good men obey the gods. 2. Evil men resist the gods. 3. The gods never do-harm to-good boys and girls. 4. Minerva favors men who (*qui*) are-eager for wisdom.

LESSON XXX

In hōc signō vincēs — In this sign thou shalt conquer¹

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

235. Tense Sign and Inflection. The tense sign of the future in the third and fourth conjugations is not **-bi-**, as in the first and second conjugations, but **-a-** in the first person singular and **-ē-** in the rest of the tense. This tense sign takes the place of the final vowel of the present stem in verbs conjugated like **regō**, and is preceded by the stem vowel **-i** in verbs conjugated like **audiō**. The usual shortening of long vowels takes place (cf. § 194).

236. The inflection of the future indicative active of **regō** (third conjugation) and **audiō** (fourth conjugation) is as follows:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. re'gam, <i>I-shall-rule</i> | au'diam, <i>I-shall-hear</i> |
| 2. re'gēs, <i>you-will-rule</i> | au'diēs, <i>you-will-hear</i> |
| 3. re'get, <i>he-will-rule</i> | au'diet, <i>he-will-hear</i> |
| 1. regē'mus, <i>we-shall-rule</i> | audiē'mus, <i>we-shall-hear</i> |
| 2. regē'tis, <i>you-will-rule</i> | audiē'tis, <i>you-will-hear</i> |
| 3. re'gent, <i>they-will-rule</i> | au'dient, <i>they-will-hear</i> |

a. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, except in the first person singular.

EXERCISES

237. Inflect the present, past, and future indicative active of **con'vocō**, **te'neō**, **dicō**, and **mū'niō**.

¹ Translation of the Greek motto which Constantine, the first Christian emperor, is said to have seen on a flaming cross in the sky. This vision, we are told, led to his conversion, and his banners afterwards bore a cross with its motto. It is now the motto of the order of Knights Templar.

80 FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

238. Derivation. Latin prepositions are often used as prefixes and added to simple verbs to make compound verbs. These same prefixes appear in English and generally have the same meanings as in Latin.

Form English derivatives from each of the following Latin compounds, and note the force of the prefix :

ab, from + **dūcō**, lead = **abdūcō**, lead away

ad, to + **dūcō**, lead = **addūcō**, lead to

dē, down or from + **dūcō**, lead = **dēdūcō**, lead down or from

ē, out of + **dūcō**, lead = **ēdūcō**, lead out of

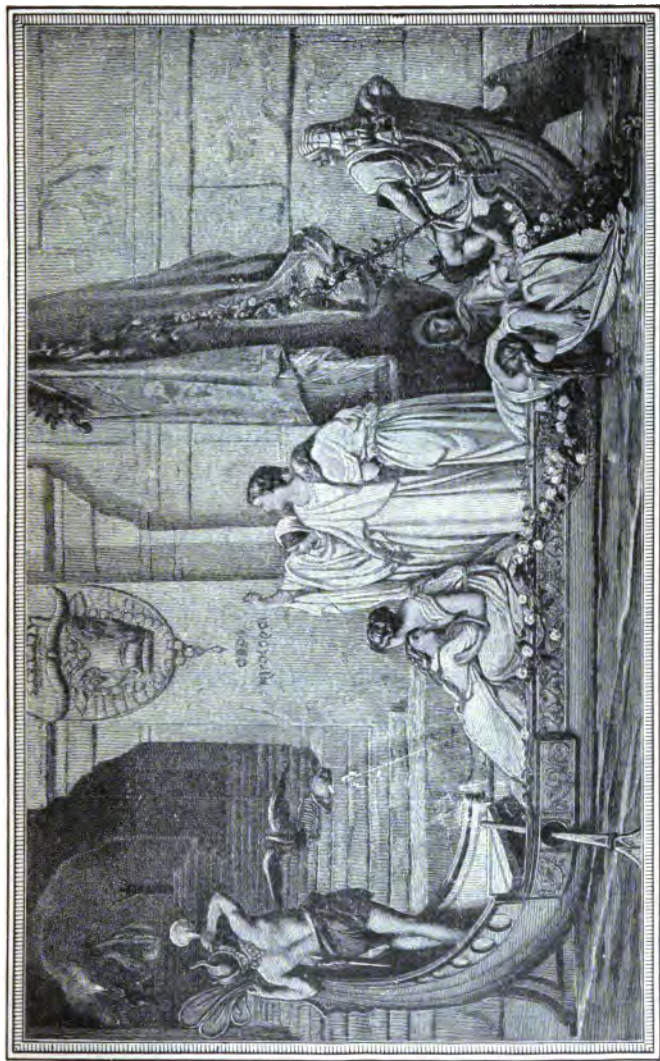
in, into + **dūcō**, lead = **indūcō**, lead into

THĒ'SEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS¹

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366. Consult the general vocabulary for new words or words you have forgotten.

239. Ōlim (*once upon a time*) Mīnōs, quī insulam Crētā regēbat, bellum cum Graecis gerēbat. Graecī magnō animō pugnant, sed Mīnōs eōs crēbris proeliis superat. Tum Mīnōs dicit : " Nunc, Graecī, victōria est mea et servī mei estis. Nunc iniūriis² vestrīs poenam dabitis magnam. 5 Quotannis (*every year*) ad patriam meam septem (*seven*) puerōs et septem puellās mittētis. Cum eis ad ōrās altae Crētae nāvigābitis. Eōs in labyrinthum¹ indūcēmus. Tum barbarus Mīnōtaurus veniet. Eum vidēbunt et audient et timēbunt. Amicōs suōs vocābunt, sed quis ad eōs auxilia 10 portābit? Sine cōsiliō,³ sine armīs vitam suam Mīnōtaurō barbarō dabunt. Ea, Graecī, erit poena vestra. Quid dicitis?"

1. *Theseus* (thē'sūs) and the *Min'o-taur*. The Minotaur was a fabulous monster, which lived on the island of Crete in the labyrinth, a structure containing so many rooms and winding passages that nobody could get out of it. The Minotaur fed on human flesh.
2. Ablative of cause. The Greeks had caused the death of a son of Minos, and this led to the war.
3. *Resource*.



THE TRIBUTE TO THE MINOTAUR

240. 1. The wretched men will-suffer punishment. 2. Whither will Minos lead the boys and girls? 3. He-will-lead them¹ to his island. 4. The forces will-wage war with great spirit.

1. Use the masculine form.



GLASS VASES FROM POMPEII

LESSON XXXI

Nōn est ad astra mollis ē terrīs via — Not easy is the way
from the earth to the stars¹

VERBS IN *-IŌ* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

241. Some verbs of the third conjugation do not end in *-ō* like *regō*, but in *-iō*, like *audiō* of the fourth conjugation. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation and not to the fourth is shown by the ending of the infinitive (§ 155). Compare

audiō, *audi're* (*hear*), fourth conjugation

capiō, *ca'pere* (*take*), third conjugation

242. Observe that *capiō* is inflected like *audiō* throughout the past and future; but that in the present only the forms *capiō* and *capiunt* are like *audiō* and *audiunt*, all the other forms being like corresponding forms of *regō* (cf. *capis*, *regis*; *capit*, *regit*; etc.).

¹ From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

capiō, capere (pres. stem **cape-**), *take*

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
1. ca'piō	capiē'bam	ca'pīam
2. ca'pis	capiē'bās	ca'piēs
3. ca'pit	capiē'bat	ca'piet
1. ca'pīmus	capiēbā'mus	capiē'mus
2. ca'pitis	capiēbā'tis	capiē'tis
3. ca'piunt	capiē'bant	ca'pient

EXERCISES

243. Like **capiō**, inflect the present, past, and future of **faciō**, *facere, make, do*.

THESEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS (CONTINUED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

244. Miserī Graeci timent et pārent. Itaque quotannis (*yearly*) ad Crētam septem pulchrōs puerōs et septem pulchrās puellās mittunt. Numquam posteā filiōs filiāsque vident.

Tum Thēseus, clārus hērōs (*hero*) Graecōrum, in patriā nōn erat. Sed mox fāmam miseram audit et in patriam celeriter properat. Populum convocat et dicit: "Semper, O Graeci, erimus servī? Semper filiōs filiāsque ad Crētam mittēmus? Bonum cōsiliū capiam. Minerva, dea sapientiae, auxilium dabit. Mīnōtaurum malum nōn timeō. Cum eō pugnābō et eum vincam."

10

245. 1. We-were-making, they-will-wage, you-are-sending.
2. We-shall-conquer, you-will-take, they-will-make. 3. He-was-waging, we-shall-come, you-hear. 4. They-will-say, he-will-announce, we-shall-make.

LESSON XXXII

Nē cēde malīs — Do not yield to misfortunes¹

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD · QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

246. The imperative mood expresses a command: as, *come!*
go! speak!

247. The Latin imperative has two tenses, the present and future. The present is used more than the future, which is not included in this book.

248. The present imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. In the active voice the singular is the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding *-te* to the singular.

249.

FIRST CONJUGATION

2. vocā, *call-thou*

vocā'te, *call-ye*

SECOND CONJUGATION

2. monē, *advise-thou*

monē'te, *advise-ye*

THIRD CONJUGATION

2. rege, *rule-thou*

re'gite,² *rule-ye*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

2. audi, *hear-thou*

audi'te, *hear-ye*

250. The irregular verb *sum* has *es*, *be thou*, and *este*, *be ye*, as present imperatives.

¹ From Vergil, author of the *Ænē'id*, the greatest Latin epic poem.

² Note that in the third conjugation *e* of the stem becomes *i* before *-te*.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

251. We learned in § 109 that questions might be introduced, as in English, by interrogative pronouns or adverbs: as, **quis?** *who?* **ubi?** *where?* **quō?** *whither?* **cūr?** *why?* and that questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* were often introduced by **-ne**, the question sign, combined with the first word.

But questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* may take one of three forms:

1. **Venitne?** *Is he coming?* (Asking for information.)
2. **Nōne venit?** *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.)
3. **Num venit?** *He isn't coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

252. We learned in § 110 that *yes-or-no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, **ita**, **vērō**, **certē**, etc. (*so*, *truly*, *certainly*, etc.) may be used for *yes*; and **nōn**, **minimē**, etc. for *no* if the denial is an emphatic *by no means*, *not at all*, or the like.

Num via longa est? Minimē. *The road isn't long, is it? Not at all.*

EXERCISES

253. Give the present imperative of the following verbs: **capiō**, **veniō**, **gerō**, **pateō**, **servō**.

THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS (CONTINUED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

254. Tum Thēseus nāvigium celeriter parat et ad insulam Crētā nāvigat. Cum¹ ad ōram altā venit, ex nāvigio properat et terram petit. Eum Ariadnē,² filia rēginae, videt. Tum eum vocat et dicit: "Quis es, bone vir³? Quid in patriā meā petis? Nōne Graecus es? Crēta est inimica 5 Graecis et vita tua est in periculō." Thēseus respondet:

"Thēseus sum, Graecōrum hērōs (*hero*), nōtus fāmā⁴ meā per multās terrās. Minōtaurum petō. Cum¹ eō pugnābō. Eum vincam. Nōne Thēseō auxilium dabis?" Tum Ariadnē, clārā fāmā et magnō animō Thēsei commōta (*moved*),¹⁰ eum amat et respondet: "Num barbara sum? Vitam tuam servābō. Cape arma et venī."

1. The conjunction *cum*, *when*, and the preposition *cum*, *with*, though alike, are easily distinguished, as *cum*, *with*, is followed by the ablative case.
2. Pronounce in English *A-ri-ad'ne*. 3. *Good sir*. 4. Ablative of cause.

255. 1. Nūntiā, mūnite, mitte. 2. Pete, venī, nāvigāte.
3. Servāte, mūnī, tenē. 4. Vidēte, portā, mittite.

~~~~~

**Fourth Review, Lessons XXIV-XXXII, §§ 749-754**



THE APPIAN WAY AND THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT

The Romans excelled as engineers and builders. A system of splendid roads connected the capital with the different parts of the Empire. "All roads lead to Rome" was literally true. The Appian Way extended southeast to Brundisium, the great commercial port for the East. Equally famous were the aqueducts, bringing the city an abundant water supply

## LESSON XXXIII

Accipere quam facere iniūriam praestat—It is better to suffer a wrong than to do one<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**256. Passive Voice.** The passive voice (§ 141) uses a different set of personal endings from those of the active. The present indicative passive of **vocō** is inflected as follows :

**vo'cō, vocā're** (pres. stem **vocā-**), *call*

#### PERSONAL ENDINGS

|                                             |             |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. vo'cor, <i>I-am-called</i>               | -r or -or   |
| 2. vocā'ris or -re, <i>you-are-called</i>   | -ris or -re |
| 3. vocā'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-is-called</i> | -tur        |
| 1. vocā'mur, <i>we-are-called</i>           | -mur        |
| 2. vocā'mini, <i>you-are-called</i>         | -mini       |
| 3. voca'ntur, <i>they-are-called</i>        | -ntur       |

**a.** The letter **r**, which appears in all but one of the personal endings, is sometimes called the passive sign.

**b.** A long vowel is shortened before final **-r** or **-ntur**.

**c.** The forms **vocor** etc. may be translated either *I am called* etc. or *I am being called* etc.

### EXERCISES

**257.** Like **vocor**, inflect **amor**, **servor**, **nūntior**, **portor**, **superor**.

**258. Derivation.** The prefix **con-** (**com-**, **co-**), identical with the preposition **cum** (*with*), added to simple verbs makes many compounds both in Latin and English. This prefix sometimes

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, Rome's greatest orator and man of letters.

means *with* or *together*, and sometimes strengthens the simple verb with the meaning *completely, forcibly*. What is the force of this prefix in the following words?

|                                                   |                                  |                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>contain</i> ( <i>teneō</i> )                   | <i>compete</i> ( <i>petō</i> )   | <i>conserve</i> ( <i>servō</i> ) |
| <i>convoke</i> ( <i>convocō</i> )                 | <i>convince</i> ( <i>vincō</i> ) | <i>conduct</i> ( <i>dūcō</i> )   |
| <i>collaborate</i> <sup>1</sup> ( <i>labōrō</i> ) | <i>convene</i> ( <i>veniō</i> )  | <i>commit</i> ( <i>mittō</i> )   |

1. The final letter of the prefix is often assimilated (*made like*) to the first letter of the simple verb.

### THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366. Read the story as a whole

**259.** Tum Ariadnē Thēseum in nōtum labyrinthum indūcīt et eī longum filum (*string*) dat et dicit: "Tenē id filum.



Filum vēstīgia (*steps*) tua reget<sup>1</sup> et ex labyrinthō tē (*you*) ēdūcet. Nunc pro- 5 perā. Mīnōtaurum audiō. Num timēs? Eī fortiter resiste et clāra erit victōria tua. Vince et servā vitam puerōrum puellārumque 10 Graeciae." Mox Thēseus Mīnōtaurum videt et petit.<sup>2</sup> Diū pugnātur<sup>3</sup> nec sine magnō periculō. Dēnique Mīnōtaurus su- 15 perātur, et postea pueri puellaeque servantur.

#### PUERĪ PUELLAEQUE THĒSEUM AMANT

From a Pompeian wall painting

translate freely, *the battle is fought* or *the contest rages*. The verb **pugnō** in Latin is intransitive, and so has no personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject is called impersonal, as in English *it rains*.

1. *Guide*. 2. *Attack*. 3. The form **pugnātur** means *it is fought*;

## LESSON XXXIV

Terrās irradiant — Let them illumine the earth<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *MONEŌ* · ABLATIVE OF THE PERSONAL AGENT

260. The present indicative passive of the second conjugation is inflected as follows :

*mo'neō, monē're* (pres. stem *monē-*), *advise*

#### PERSONAL ENDINGS

|                                                   |             |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>mo'neor, I-am-advised</i>                   | -r OR -or   |
| 2. <i>monē'ris</i> or <i>-re, you-are-advised</i> | -ris OR -re |
| 3. <i>monē'tur, he-, she-, it-is-advised</i>      | -tur        |
| 1. <i>monē'mur, we-are-advised</i>                | -mur        |
| 2. <i>monē'mini, you-are-advised</i>              | -mini       |
| 3. <i>monen'tur, they-are-advised</i>             | -ntur       |

**261. Rule for Ablative of Personal Agent.** *The ablative with the preposition a or ab is used with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the act is performed.*

*Pueri ā Rōmānis servantur, the boys are saved by the Romans*

NOTE. The literal meaning of *ā Rōmānis* is *from the Romans*, but in our idiom *by the Romans* is a better translation.

**262. Ablative of Means and Ablative of Agent Compared.**  
Compare the two sentences :

*Pueri ā Rōmānis servantur, the boys are saved by the Romans*

*Pueri nāvigiō servantur, the boys are saved by (or with) a boat*

In the first sentence *ā Rōmānis* is the ablative of personal agent; in the second *nāvigiō* is the ablative of means. To

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Amherst College.

aid in distinguishing these two constructions, which are often confused, observe the following facts :

- a.* The agent is a *person* ; the means is a *thing*.
- b.* The ablative of personal agent has the preposition *ā* or *ab* ; the ablative of means has no preposition.
- c.* The ablative of personal agent is used only with a passive verb ; with the ablative of means the verb may be either active or passive.

### EXERCISES

**263.** Like *moneor*, inflect *habeor*, *teneor*, *timeor*, *videor*.

**264.** 1. *Superāris, habēmur, videntur.* 2. *Tenētur, occupāminī, timēmur.* 3. *Vidēris, parantur, tenēminī.* 4. *Servātur, habētur, tenēmur.* 5. *Portāminī, habēris, teneor.*

**265.** 1. *Galli crēbra proelia faciunt et fortiter pugnant, sed ā finitimis superantur.* 2. *Minōtaurus ā filiabus eōrum timētur.* 3. *Num Thēseus Minōtaurum barbarum timet? Nōn timet.* 4. *Capite arma, Rōmānī ; ā barbaris inimicis vidēminī.* 5. *Nec frūmentum nec aquam in castris habēmus. Quid faciēmus?* 6. *Tenē castra, Mārce, bonis tēlis. Iam (soon) socii nostri auxilium mittent.*

**266.** 1. The Gauls are quickly conquered by-the-arms of-the-Romans. 2. Are not pleasing stories told by many poets? Yes. 3. Theseus is-advised by Minerva, the goddess of-wisdom. 4. By-the-wisdom of-Minerva we-are-saved. 5. Give that money to-the-good queen, my son. 6. The camp of-the-savages has neither wall nor ditch. 7. When we-are-seen by your men, we-shall-suffer punishment.



## LESSON XXXV

Salvē! — Hail<sup>1</sup>

### THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

267. The tense signs of the past and future passive are the same as in the active. The inflection of *vocō* and *moneō* in these two tenses is as follows:

*vo'cō, vocā're* (pres. stem *vocā-*), *call*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN *-bā-*)

PERSONAL ENDINGS

- |                                                     |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>vocā'bar, I-was-called</i> <sup>2</sup>       | -r          |
| 2. <i>vocābā'ris</i> or <i>-re, you-were-called</i> | -ris or -re |
| 3. <i>vocābā'tur, he-, she-, it-was-called</i>      | -tur        |
|                                                     |             |
| 1. <i>vocābā'mur, we-were-called</i>                | -mur        |
| 2. <i>vocābā'mini, you-were-called</i>              | -mini       |
| 3. <i>vocāban'tur, they-were-called</i>             | -ntur       |

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN *-bi-*)

- |                                                        |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>vocā'bor, I-shall-be-called</i>                  | -r          |
| 2. <i>vocā'beris</i> or <i>-re, you-will-be-called</i> | -ris or -re |
| 3. <i>vocā'bitur, he-, she-, it-will-be-called</i>     | -tur        |
|                                                        |             |
| 1. <i>vocā'bimur, we-shall-be-called</i>               | -mur        |
| 2. <i>vocā'bi'mini, you-will-be-called</i>             | -mini       |
| 3. <i>vocābun'tur, they-will-be-called</i>             | -ntur       |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Idaho.

<sup>2</sup> Or *I-was-being-called*, etc. Thus for all verbs in the past indicative passive.

## PAST AND FUTURE PASSIVE

**mo'neð, monē're** (pres. stem **monē-**), *advise*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN **-bā-**)

## PERSONAL ENDINGS

- |                                                 |             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. monē'bar, <i>I-was-advised</i>               | -r          |
| 2. monēbā'ris or -re, <i>you-were-advised</i>   | -ris or -re |
| 3. monēbā'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-was-advised</i> | -tur        |
|                                                 |             |
| 1. monēbā'mur, <i>we-were-advised</i>           | -mur        |
| 2. monēbā'minī, <i>you-were-advised</i>         | -minī       |
| 3. monēban'tur, <i>they-were-advised</i>        | -ntur       |

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN **-bi-**)

- |                                                     |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. monē'bor, <i>I-shall-be-advised</i>              | -r          |
| 2. monē'beris or -re, <i>you-will-be-advised</i>    | -ris or -re |
| 3. monē'bitur, <i>he-, she-, it-will-be-advised</i> | -tur        |
|                                                     |             |
| 1. monē'bimur, <i>we-shall-be-advised</i>           | -mur        |
| 2. monēbi'minī, <i>you-will-be-advised</i>          | -minī       |
| 3. monēbun'tur, <i>they-will-be-advised</i>         | -ntur       |

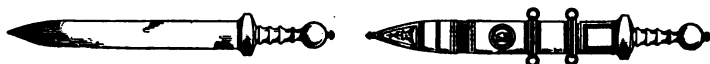
**a.** In the future passive the tense sign **-bi-** appears as **-bo-** in the first and as **-be-** in the second person singular, and as **-bu-** in the third person plural.

## EXERCISES

**268.** Inflect the following verbs in the present, past, and future, active and passive: **amð, nūntið, portð, teneð, videð, timeð.**

**269.** 1. Amābās, amābāris, timēbis, timēberis. 2. Servat, servātur, dabit, dabitur. 3. Portāmus, portābāmus, portābimus. 4. Dabiminī, vidēbuntur, tenēmur. 5. Amantur, dabātur, timentur. 6. Vidēris, nūntiāmus, timēbat. 7. Tenent, timēbunt, monēris. 8. Vidēbant, amābiminī, portāmur. 9. Venīte, timē.

270. 1. They-will-be-feared, I-am-loved, we-were-seen. 2. We-are-carried, you-will-be-advised (*plur.*), they-have. 3. He-will-hasten, you-were-announcing (*sing.*), he-persuades. 4. I-shall-injure, you-favor (*sing.*), you-will-be-overcome (*plur.*). 5. We-shall-be-carried, I-was-eager-for, you-will-favor (*sing.*). 6. He-will-obey, we-are-held, they-were-seen.



ROMAN SWORDS

## LESSON XXXVI

In mediās rēs — Into the midst of things<sup>1</sup>

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND  
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

271. The present indicative passive of *re'gō* (third conjugation) and *au'diō* (fourth conjugation) are inflected as follows :

*re'gō, re'gere* (pres. stem *rege-*), *rule*

- |                                            |                                  |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>re'gor, I-am-ruled</i>               | <i>re'gimur, we-are-ruled</i>    |
| 2. <i>re'geris or -re, you-are-ruled</i>   | <i>regi'mini, you-are-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>re'gitur, he-, she-, it-is-ruled</i> | <i>regun'tur, they-are-ruled</i> |

*au'diō, audi're* (pres. stem *audi-*), *hear*

- |                                            |                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>au'dior, I-am-heard</i>              | <i>audi'mur, we-are-heard</i>     |
| 2. <i>audi'ris or -re, you-are-heard</i>   | <i>audi'mini, you-are-heard</i>   |
| 3. <i>audi'tur, he-, she-, it-is-heard</i> | <i>audiun'tur, they-are-heard</i> |

*a.* Observe the changes of the final stem vowel *-e* in the third conjugation. It appears unchanged only in the second person singular: as, *re'ge-ris* or *re'ge-re*.

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

## EXERCISES

272. Like *regŏ*, inflect the present active and passive of *dūcŏ*, *vincŏ*, and *gerŏ*.

273. Like *audiŏ*, inflect the present active and passive of *mūniŏ*.

274. 1. Teneberis, dicitur, habēbāmini. 2. Superābitur, mūniuntur, geritur. 3. Mūnitur, parābit, vincite.



RŌMĀNĪ MAGNUM NUMERUM CAPTĪVŌRŪM CAPIUNT

DĒ BELLĪS RŌMĀNŌRUM ET GALLŌRUM

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

275. Cum bella in Galliā ā Rŏmānīs geruntur, castra eŏrum lātis fossis vāllisque altis celeriter mūniuntur. Tum cōpia ex portis (*gates*) castrŏrum ēdūcuntur, sed castra firmŏ praesidiŏ tenentur. Saepe Rŏmānī proelia in mediīs silvis

faciunt, saepe diū pugnātur<sup>1</sup>; sed dēnique barbari bonis armis Rōmānōrum vincuntur. Rōmānī magnum numerum captivōrum capiunt. In numerō captivōrum multi pueri puellaeque videntur. Captivi ā Rōmānis in Italiam indūcuntur. Ibi erunt servī miserī nec postea patriam vidēbunt.

1. See § 259, note 3.

I AM A FIRM BELIEVER IN THE VALUE OF STUDYING GREEK AND LATIN. ALTHOUGH IN AFTER LIFE ONE MAY FORGET MUCH THAT HE HAS LEARNED, HE CAN NEVER LOSE THE INFLUENCE UPON HIS CHARACTER.—ELIHU ROOT, FORMER SECRETARY OF STATE

## LESSON XXXVII

Repetitiō est māter studiōrum — Repetition is the mother of learning

### THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

**276.** The past and future indicative passive of *regō* (third conjugation) and *audiō* (fourth conjugation) are inflected as follows:

**re'gō, re'gere** (pres. stem *rege-*), **rule**

#### PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN -bā-)

- |                                               |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>regē'bar, I-was-ruled</i>               | <i>regēbā'mur, we-were-ruled</i>    |
| 2. <i>regēbā'ris or -re, you-were-ruled</i>   | <i>regēbā'mini, you-were-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>regēbā'tur, he-, she-, it-was-ruled</i> | <i>regēban'tur, they-were-ruled</i> |

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGNS -a- and -ē-)

- |                                                 |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>re'gar, I-shall-be-ruled</i>              | <i>regē'mur, we-shall-be-ruled</i>   |
| 2. <i>regē'ris or -re, you-will-be-ruled</i>    | <i>regē'mini, you-will-be-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>regē'tur, he-, she-, it-will-be-ruled</i> | <i>regen'tur, they-will-be-ruled</i> |

*au'diō, audi're* (pres. stem *audi-*), *hear*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN -*bā-*)

1. *audiē'bar, I-was-heard*
2. *audiēbā'ris* or *-re, you-were-heard*
3. *audiēbā'tur, he-, she-, it-was-heard*

1. *audiēbā'mur, we-were-heard*
2. *audiēbā'minī, you-were-heard*
3. *audiēban'tur, they-were-heard*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGNS -*a-* and -*ē-*)

1. *au'diar, I-shall-be-heard*
2. *audiē'ris* or *-re, you-will-be-heard*
3. *audiē'tur, he-, she-, it-will-be-heard*

1. *audiē'mur, we-shall-be-heard*
2. *audiē'minī, you-will-be-heard*
3. *audien'tur, they-will-be-heard*

EXERCISES

277. Like *regō*, inflect the present, past, and future, active and passive, of *dūcō*, *vincō*, and *gerō*.<sup>1</sup>

278. Like *audiō*, inflect the present, past, and future, active and passive, of *mūniō*.

279. 1. *Dūcēbās, dūcēbāris, mūniēs, mūniēris.* 2. *Vincit, vincet, veniet, mūniētur.* 3. *Gerēbāmus, gerēbāmur, gerimus, gerēmus.* 4. *Dūcēminī, regiminī, audiēbantur.* 5. *Amābunt, nocēbunt, venient, mūnientur.* 6. *Timēris, mūnīmus, veniēmus,*

<sup>1</sup> Extend the blank scheme (§748) of verb inflection to include the first three tenses of the passive voice, and use it for self-drill with a variety of verbs. *You cannot know verbs too well.*

capiunt. 7. Persuādent, tenēbunt, vidēberis, audientur. 8. Geruntur, gerēbātur, geritur. 9. Pārēmus, parāmur, nocēbunt, mūniēmini.

280. 1. They-are-sent, they-will-be-conquered, I-am-heard, we-were-led. 2. We-are-sent, you-will-be-fortified (*sing.*), they-come. 3. He-will-resist, you-seek (*sing.*), you-will-be-conquered (*plur.*). 4. You-were-believing (*sing.*), he-carried-on, I-shall-come. 5. We-shall-be-heard, I-was-leading, you-will-see (*plur.*). 6. He-will-carry-on, we-are-fortified, they-were-carried-on.

## LESSON XXXVIII

Deō, amīcīs, patriae — For God, for friends, for country

THE PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *CAPIŌ*

281. The present indicative passive of *capiō* (cf. § 242) is inflected like *regor*, except the two forms *capior* and *capiuntur*, which are like *audior* and *audiuntur*. The past and future throughout are inflected like *audiēbar* and *audiar*.

| PRESENT PASSIVE    | PAST PASSIVE       | FUTURE PASSIVE   |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. ca'pior         | capiē'bar          | ca'piar          |
| 2. ca'peris or -re | capiēbā'ris or -re | capiē'ris or -re |
| 3. ca'pitur        | capiēbā'tur        | capiē'tur        |
| 1. ca'pimur        | capiēbā'mur        | capiē'mur        |
| 2. capi'mini       | capiēbā'mini       | capiē'mini       |
| 3. capiun'tur      | capiēban'tur       | capien'tur       |

## EXERCISES

282. Like *capiō*, inflect *rapīō*, *seize*, in the present, past, and future, active and passive.

DĒ LŪDŌ<sup>1</sup> RŌMĀNŌ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**283.** Spectāte, amīcī mei, pictūram (*picture*) lūdi Rōmānī. Vidētisne discipulōs (*pupils*)? Sunt ūnus,<sup>2</sup> duo, trēs, quattuor, quinque, sex discipuli. Duo puerī stant (*are standing*) et quattuor sedent. Quid puerī faciunt? Labōrant magnā diligentīā. Duo tenent tabellās.<sup>3</sup> Trēs tenent librōs. Libri 5



Rōmānōrum erant volūmina (*rolls*). In subselliō (*bench*) sunt duo librī et trēs tabellae<sup>3</sup> et ātrāmentum (*ink*). Spectāte magistrum (*teacher*). Quid facit? Magister discipulis fābulam nārrat. Magister multās et grātās fābulās in memoriā habet. Cum puerī sunt tardī, tum poenam dant. Sed bonis puerīs prae- 10 mia pulchra ā magistrō dantur. Amātisne praeamia? Certē.

1. Latin has two words for school, *lūdus*, an elementary school, and *schola*, an advanced school or college for adults. 2. *One*. The next five numerals follow. Learn to count six in Latin. 3. *Writing tablets*. These were thin boards smeared with wax (cf. picture, p. 7). The writing was done with a *stilus*, a pointed instrument, like a pencil, made of bone or metal.



## LESSON XXXIX

Dum spīrō, spērō — While I breathe, I hope<sup>1</sup>

### THE PRESENT INFINITIVE AND THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

**284. Infinitive Defined.** The infinitive is a verbal noun, giving the general meaning of the verb without person or number: as, *amāre, to love.*

**285. Present Infinitive.** The present infinitive active is formed by adding *-re* to the present stem (§ 154). The present infinitive passive may be formed from the active by changing final *-e* to *-i*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-i*.

| CONJ. | PRES. STEM   | PRES. INF. ACTIVE         | PRES. INF. PASSIVE            |
|-------|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I     | <b>vocā-</b> | vocā're, <i>to-call</i>   | vocā'ri, <i>to-be-called</i>  |
| II    | <b>monē-</b> | monē're, <i>to-advise</i> | monē'ri, <i>to-be-advised</i> |
| III   | <b>rege-</b> | re'gere, <i>to-rule</i>   | re'gi, <i>to-be-ruled</i>     |
| IV    | <b>audi-</b> | audi're, <i>to-hear</i>   | audi'ri, <i>to-be-heard</i>   |

*a.* The present infinitive of *sum* is *esse*. There is no passive.

**286. Present Imperative.** The active forms of the present imperative, already given in § 249, are repeated below for comparison with the passive forms. The present imperative passive ends in *-re* in the singular and in *-mini* in the plural. Thus the singular of the passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and the plural is like the second person plural of the present indicative passive.

<sup>1</sup> Closing words of the motto of the state of South Carolina. Free translation, "While there's life, there's hope."

## ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

|         |                           |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| CONJ. I | vo'cā, <i>call-thou</i>   | vocā'te, <i>call-ye</i>   |
| II      | mo'nē, <i>advise-thou</i> | monē'te, <i>advise-ye</i> |
| III     | re'ge, <i>rule-thou</i>   | re'gite, <i>rule-ye</i>   |
| IV      | au'di, <i>hear-thou</i>   | audi'te, <i>hear-ye</i>   |

## PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

|         |                                 |                                 |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| CONJ. I | vocā're, <i>be-thou-called</i>  | vocā'mini, <i>be-ye-called</i>  |
| II      | monē're, <i>be-thou-advised</i> | monē'mini, <i>be-ye-advised</i> |
| III     | re'gere, <i>be-thou-ruled</i>   | regi'mini, <i>be-ye-ruled</i>   |
| IV      | audi're, <i>be-thou-heard</i>   | audi'mini, <i>be-ye-heard</i>   |

## EXERCISES

287. Give the active and passive present infinitives of *nārrō*, *raplō*, *mūniō*, *respondeō*, *parō*, *gerō*, *videō*, *spectō*, *dūcō*, *vincō*.

288. Give the imperative active of *dicō*,<sup>1</sup> *dūcō*, *faciō*, *nūntiō*, *veniō*, *crēdō*, *noceō*, *faveō*, *resistō*, *sedeō*.

289. Give the imperative passive of *nārrō*, *raplō*, *portō*, *petō*, *occupō*, *vincō*, *servō*, *timeō*, *mūniō*, *videō*.

290. 1. Hasten-thou, to-be-prepared, be-ye-sent, lead-thou. 2. To-lead, to-be-led, be-ye-seized, come-thou. 3. To-be-sent, to-save, lead-ye, speak-thou. 4. To-be-sought, be-ye-led, to-seize, to-be-held. 5. Fear-thou, come-ye, be-ye-prepared, to-be-fortified.

<sup>1</sup> The verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* have *dic*, *dūc*, and *fac* in the singular of the present imperative active. The plural is formed regularly: *dicite*, etc.

## LESSON XL

Melius esse quam vidēri — Better to be than to seem<sup>1</sup>

### SYNOPSSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

291. Learn to give rapidly the synopses of the verbs you have had, in any person or number, following the model given below:

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

##### INDICATIVE

|       | ACTIVE   | PASSIVE  | ACTIVE   | PASSIVE  |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | vo'cō    | vo'cor   | mo'neō   | mo'neor  |
| PAST  | vocā'bam | vocā'bar | monē'bam | monē'bar |
| FUT.  | vocā'bō  | vocā'bor | monē'bō  | monē'bor |

##### IMPERATIVE

|       |       |         |       |         |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| PRES. | vo'cā | vocā're | mo'nē | monē're |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|---------|

##### INFINITIVE

|       |         |         |         |         |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| PRES. | vocā're | vocā'rī | monē're | monē'rī |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

#### THIRD CONJUGATION (-iō ver

##### INDICATIVE

|       | ACTIVE   | PASSIVE  | ACTIVE    | PASSIVE   |
|-------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES. | re'gō    | re'gor   | ca'piō    | ca'pior   |
| PAST  | regē'bam | regē'bar | capiē'bam | capiē'bar |
| FUT.  | re'gam   | re'gar   | ca'piam   | ca'piar   |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of North Carolina, adapted from

## IMPERATIVE

|       |       |         |       |         |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| PRES. | re'ge | re'gere | ca'pe | ca'pere |
|-------|-------|---------|-------|---------|

## INFINITIVE

|       |         |       |         |       |
|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|
| PRES. | re'gere | re'gi | ca'pere | ca'pi |
|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

|       | ACTIVE    | PASSIVE   |
|-------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES. | au'diō    | au'dior   |
| PAST  | audiē'bam | audiē'bar |
| FUT.  | au'diam   | au'diar   |

## IMPERATIVE

|       |       |         |
|-------|-------|---------|
| PRES. | au'di | audi're |
|-------|-------|---------|

## INFINITIVE

|       |         |         |
|-------|---------|---------|
| PRES. | audi're | audi'ri |
|-------|---------|---------|

## DĒ MALŌ MAGISTRŌ LŪDĪ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**292.** Ōlim (*once upon a time*) Rōmānī cum finitimō oppidō bellum gerēbant. Camillus, vir clārus, cōpiās Rōmānās dūcēbat. In eō oppidō erat quidam magister lūdi.<sup>1</sup> Eum pueri amābant et viri oppidi ei<sup>2</sup> crēdēbant. Saepe magister puerōs ex oppidō per agrōs proximōs ēdūcēbat, nec pueri in 5 periculō erant, nam oppidum ā Rōmānīs nōndum (*not yet*) oppugnābātur. Sed dēnique magister puerōs in media castra Rōmāna inducit et dicit: "Spectā, Camille, eōs puerōs. Ei erunt captivī tui." Sed Camillus dicit: "Malum animum,

magister, habēs. Nōn cum puerīs Rōmānī bellum gerunt.”<sup>10</sup>  
 Tum suis<sup>8</sup> dicit, “Rapite et ligāte (*bind*) eum.” Tum  
 puerīs virgās (*rods*) dat et dicit, “Iam agite, puerī mei, eis



MALUS MAGISTER LŪDĪ POENAM DAT

virgīs eum malum magistrum in oppidum vestrum.” Id  
 factum erat grātum virīs eius oppidi et mox amicitiam  
 Rōmae petunt.

15

1. *quidam magister lūdi, a school teacher.* 2. *ei, dative with crēdebant*  
 (§ 224). 3. *To his men.*

**293. Derivation.** What is the meaning of the following English words and to what Latin words are they related?

|          |         |          |          |         |
|----------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| dictate  | clarify | capacity | repeat   | retard  |
| regulate | regent  | factory  | sediment | rapture |

## LESSON XLI

Equō nē crēdite — Do not trust the horse<sup>1</sup>

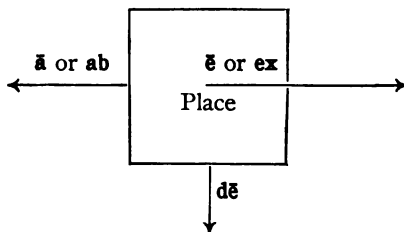
### THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM

**294.** One of the relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from* (cf. § 65). This relation is represented in Latin by a number of special constructions. One of these, the *ablative of personal agent*, has been already discussed (§ 261). Two others of importance are the *ablative of the place from*, many instances of which have occurred in the preceding exercises, and the *ablative of separation*.

**295. Rule for Ablative of Place From.** *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

*Agricolae ex agris veniunt, the farmers come from the fields*

*a. Ā or ab denotes from near a place; ē or ex, out from it; and dē, down from it. This may be represented graphically as follows:*



<sup>1</sup> This is taken from Vergil's *Æneid*, and refers to the famous wooden horse by means of which the Greeks took Troy after they had besieged it in vain for ten years. Used in a general way, the expression is a warning against the tricks of an enemy.

**296. Rule for Ablative of Separation.** *Words expressing separation or taking away are followed by the ablative, often with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

1. *Thēseus patriam ā Minōtaurō liberat, Theseus frees his country from the Minotaur*
2. *Thēseus patriam periculō liberat, Theseus frees his country from peril*

a. When there is actual separation of one material thing from another, as in 1, the preposition is usually present. When the separation is figurative, as in 2, the preposition is usually omitted.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**297.** 1. Galli crēbris proeliis Germānōs ab agris suis prohibēbunt. 2. Factō<sup>1</sup> Camilli pueri ex castris Rōmānis celeriter dimittentur. 3. Ibi ab amicis suis longē aberant. 4. Memoria eius facti animis nostris numquam longē aberit. 5. Cūr vir malus puerōs ā mūris oppidi abdūcit? 6. Vir malus amicitiam Camilli petēbat. 7. Liberā filiōs nostrōs periculō, Camille. 8. Certē eōs liberābō et vir malus poenam dabit. 9. Factō<sup>1</sup> malō eum ex castris meis agam.

1. Ablative of cause.

**298.** 1. The Roman camp was far distant from that place. 2. We shall be freed from the memory of those wrongs. 3. Depart from this place, my friends, and attack their towns. 4. My men will lead them away from the walls. 5. Keep<sup>1</sup> the savages out of your towns, Romans. 6. Seize that man, my son, and send him away. 7. The boys are not dull, are they<sup>2</sup>?

1. Imperative of *prohibeō*. 2. Review § 251.

## LESSON XLII

Nōn omne quod nitet aurum est — All is not gold that glitters

### PRINCIPAL PARTS · VERB STEMS · THE PERFECT STEM THE ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT

**299. Principal Parts.** Certain forms of the verb are important because we cannot inflect the verb without knowing them. These are called the *principal parts*.

In English, the principal parts are the present indicative, the past indicative, and the past participle: as, *go, went, gone*.

In Latin, the principal parts are the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular of the perfect indicative, and the past participle: as,

vo'cō

vocā're

vocā'vī

vocā'tus

**300. Verb Stems.** From the principal parts we get three verb stems, from which we construct the entire conjugation. These are the *present stem*, formed from the present infinitive (§ 154), the *perfect stem*, and the *participial stem*.

**301.** The *perfect stem* is found by dropping final -ī from the first person singular of the perfect: as, **vocāv-** from **vocā'vī**, perfect of **vocō**.

**302.** The *participial stem* is found by dropping final -us from the past participle: as, **vocāt-** from **vocā'tus**, past participle of **vocō**.

**303. From the perfect stem are formed**

The Perfect Indicative Active

The Past Perfect Indicative Active

The Future Perfect Indicative Active



**304. Endings of the Perfect.** The perfect is inflected by adding the following endings to the perfect stem :

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. -i, <i>I</i>            | -imus, <i>we</i>            |
| 2. -isti, <i>you</i>       | -istis, <i>you</i>          |
| 3. -it, <i>he, she, it</i> | -ērunt or -ēre, <i>they</i> |

The endings of the perfect are different from those found in any other tense. They are the same in all conjugations.

**305.** Practically all the verbs of the first conjugation have regular principal parts : as,

|       |         |         |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| vo'cō | vocā're | vocā'vi | vocā'tus |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|

Following the model, give the principal parts of amō, nārrō, portō, parō, occupō, pugnō, superō, spectō, liberō.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**306. 1.** Barbari magnam cōpiam frūmenti comparābunt et ex agris suis discēdent. **2.** Multa oppida finitimōrum oppugnābunt. **3.** Ea oppida mūris altis et fossis lātis mūniuntur et fortiter dēfenduntur. **4.** Quam longē ab Italiā absunt ea oppida? Nōn longē absunt. **5.** Nōne Rōmāni auxilium ad ea oppida mittent? Certē, nam populi eōrum oppidōrum sunt socii Rōmānōrum. **6.** Amplae cōpiae Rōmānōrum animōs timidōs sociōrum cōfirmābunt. **7.** Rōmāni firma praesidia in eis oppidis locābunt. **8.** Itaque barbari iniūriis prohibēbuntur et cōpiās suās dimittent.

**307. 1.** The cowardly allies will be defended by the Romans. **2.** How far distant were those places<sup>1</sup> from their<sup>2</sup> camp? **3.** Prepare an abundant supply<sup>3</sup> of grain, Marcus, and place it in our town. **4.** Because of the memory<sup>4</sup> of your deeds,

we shall be neither slow nor cowardly. 5. Their<sup>2</sup> hearts were encouraged, and so they seized their arms and bravely assaulted the lofty walls. 6. Why are you sitting there? Depart and quickly free those captives.

1. What is there irregular about the plural of *locus*? 2. Not *suus* (cf. §§ 135, 209). 3. *cōpia*. 4. Ablative of cause.

## LESSON XLIII

*Dimidium facti est coepisse* — Well begun is half done<sup>1</sup>

### THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

**308.** The irregular verb *sum* is inflected in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative as follows:

PRIN. PARTS: *sum, esse, fui* (perf. stem *fu-*)

#### PERFECT

|                                         |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>fu'i, I have been, I was</i>         | <i>fu'imus, we have been, we were</i>               |
| <i>fuis'ti, you have been, you were</i> | <i>fuis'tis, you have been, you were</i>            |
| <i>fu'it, he has been, he was</i>       | <i>fuērunt or fuē're, they have been, they were</i> |

#### PAST PERFECT (TENSE SIGN *-erā-*)

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>fu'eram, I had been</i>   | <i>fuerā'mus, we had been</i>  |
| <i>fu'erās, you had been</i> | <i>fuerā'tis, you had been</i> |
| <i>fu'erat, he had been</i>  | <i>fu'erant, they had been</i> |

#### FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN *-eri-*)

|                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>fu'erō, I shall have been</i>   | <i>fue'rimus, we shall have been</i> |
| <i>fu'eris, you will have been</i> | <i>fue'ritis, you will have been</i> |
| <i>fu'erit, he will have been</i>  | <i>fu'erint, they will have been</i> |

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the greatest Roman lyric poet and still the most widely read. The literal translation of the Latin is *Half of an achievement is to have begun it.*

**a.** The past perfect may be formed by adding **eram**, the past of **sum**, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is **-erā-**.

**b.** The future perfect may be formed by adding **erō**, the future of **sum**, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in **-erint**, not **-erunt**. The tense sign is **-eri-**.

**c.** The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of all active verbs are formed on the perfect stem. They are all inflected like **sum**.

SEXTUS, QUINTUS, MĀRCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**309. MĀRCUS.** Ubi fuistis, Sexte et Quinte?

SEXTUS. Ego (*I*) in nostrā villā fui, et Quintus in suā villā fuit. Diū in agris nostris fuimus. Officia agricolārum sunt multa. Habēsne bonōs servōs?

M. Habeō. Diū exempla ēgregiae diligentiae fuērunt. Eis ampla praemia mox dabō et eōs liberābō.

S. Sine sapientiā fueris. Tenē bonōs servōs et liberā eōs numquam. Sed quid spectās, Quinte?

QUINTUS. Spectō eum pulchrum librum. Estne tuus?

M. Meus est. Semper bonis libris<sup>1</sup> studēbam. Is liber erat Galbae<sup>2</sup> et iam diū in casā eius erat. Liber est nōtus et de bellis Rōmānōrum Gallōrumque nārrat. Dēnique Galli pācantur, sed iam per septem<sup>3</sup> annōs Rōmānī in Galliā fuerant.

1. Dative. See § 224. 2. Genitive of the possessor, § 150. 3. Can you count seven in Latin?

**310. 1.** Where had the farmers been? They had been on their farms. **2.** Have you not been examples of remarkable industry, O slaves? Yes. **3.** Soon, Romans, we shall have been in Gaul for<sup>1</sup> seven years. **4.** How long<sup>2</sup> have we been absent from our duties? **5.** Finally the Gauls will be subdued, but they will have been neither stupid nor cowardly. **6.** Encourage the loyal hearts of their<sup>3</sup> allies with an abundant supply of money.

1. **per.** 2. Distinguish between **quam diū**, *how long*, and **quam longē**, *how far*. 3. Not **suus** (cf. §§ 135, 209).

## LESSON XLIV

Nōn ministrārī, sed ministrāre — Not to be ministered unto,  
but to minister<sup>1</sup>

### USE AND INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

**311. Use of the Perfect.** The perfect indicative has two distinct meanings; according to its translation, it is called the *present perfect* or the *past absolute*.

**312.** As *present perfect*, the perfect is translated by the English present perfect with *have*, and denotes the action as completed at the time of speaking: as, *I have now finished my work*.

**313.** As *past absolute*, the perfect is translated by the English past tense, and denotes that the action took place sometime in the past: as, *I finished my work*.

**314. Translation of the English Past.** The English past is expressed sometimes by the Latin perfect and sometimes by the Latin past. In telling a story the perfect is used to mark its successive forward steps, and the past to describe past situations and past circumstances that attended those steps.

What tenses would be used in a Latin translation of the following passage?

I sailed the seas for many years. Once a school of whales surrounded our ship. The whales were swimming slowly along and were not terrified by our presence. Spouts of water arose on every side and some of the passengers were greatly alarmed. Then the monsters suddenly vanished.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Wellesley College.

**315. Inflection of the Perfect.** The perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected like *ful* (cf. § 308), and is as follows :

**FIRST CONJUGATION**

**vocā'vī** (perf. stem **vocāv-**),  
*I have called, I called*

1. vocā'vī      vocā'vimus
2. vocāvis'tī    vocāvis'tis
3. vocā'vit      vocāvē'runt or -ē're

**SECOND CONJUGATION**

**mo'nui** (perf. stem **monu-**),  
*I have advised, I advised*

- mo'nui      monu'imus
- monuis'tī    monuis'tis
- mo'nuit      monuē'runt or -ē're

**THIRD CONJUGATION**

**rē'xī** (perf. stem **rēx-**),  
*I have ruled, I ruled*

1. rē'xī      rē'ximus
2. rēxis'tī      rēxis'tis
3. rē'xit      rēxē'runt or -ē're

**FOURTH CONJUGATION**

**audī'vī** (perf. stem **audiv-**),  
*I have heard, I heard*

- audī'vī      audī'vimus
- audivis'tī    audivis'tis
- audī'vit      audivē'runt or -ē're

*a.* In vocabularies the first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. Principal parts must be learned thoroughly. With principal parts and the rules for tense formation well in mind, the conjugation of verbs becomes easy.

**EXERCISES**

**316.** Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding **-vī** to the present stem. Like **vocā'vī**, inflect **amā'vī**, **nārrā'vī**, **pācā'vī**.

**317.** Like **monui**, inflect **habui**, **tenui**, **patui**.

**318.** Like **rēxī**, inflect **dixī** (perfect of **dīcō**), **dūxī** (perfect of **dūcō**), **misī** (perfect of **mittō**), and **cēpi** (perfect of **capiō**).

**319.** Like **audīvī**, inflect **mūnivī**.



CURIUS DENTATUS AND THE SAMNITE AMBASSADORS

## DĒ CURIŌ DENTĀTŌ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368. See if you can explain the use of the past and perfect tenses in this story.

**320.** In numerō clārōrum Rōmānōrum erat Curius Dentātus. Saepe magna proelia faciēbat, saepe inimica castra oppidaque capiēbat. Sed in mediis victōriis vita eius erat vērā et integra. Nec in villā amplā, sed in casā parvā habitābat, et cum officia pūblica nōn prohibēbant, magnā diligentīā in parvō agrō labōrābat. Ōlim Samnitēs,<sup>1</sup> finitimī Rōmānōrum, quī amicitiam Dentāti petēbant, ad eum lēgātōs misērunt. Lēgāti multa praemia pulchra et cōpiam auri (*gold*) portābant et ad agrum Dentāti properāvērunt.

1. *The Samnites*, living east and south of Latium, conquered by the Romans after a great struggle, in which Dentatus played a prominent part.

## LESSON XLV

Ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita metēs — As you sow, so shall you reap<sup>1</sup>

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

**321.** The following verbs include the three irregular verbs and all verbs of the second conjugation previously used. Review the meanings and drill on the inflection of the perfect.

**322. Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs.** Learn the principal parts of the following irregular verbs :

| PRES. INDIC. | PRES. INF. | PERFECT | PAST PART. |                |
|--------------|------------|---------|------------|----------------|
| sum          | esse       | fui     | —          | <i>be</i>      |
| ab'sum       | abes'se    | ā'fui   | —          | <i>be away</i> |
| dō           | dare       | dedi    | datus      | <i>give</i>    |

**a.** Sum and absum have the future participles *futūrus* and *āfutūrus*.

**323. Principal Parts of Second Conjugation.** Learn the principal parts of the following verbs of the second conjugation :

|            |             |           |             |                 |
|------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| fa'veō     | favē're     | fāvi      | fautū'rus   | <i>favor</i>    |
| ha'beō     | habē're     | ha'bui    | ha'bitus    | <i>have</i>     |
| mo'neō     | monē're     | mo'nui    | mo'nitus    | <i>advise</i>   |
| no'ceō     | nocē're     | no'cui    | nocitū'rus  | <i>injure</i>   |
| pā'reō     | pārē're     | pā'ruī    | —           | <i>obey</i>     |
| pa'teō     | patē're     | pa'tui    | —           | <i>extend</i>   |
| persuā'deō | persuādē're | persuā'si | persuā'sus  | <i>persuade</i> |
| prohi'beō  | prohibē're  | prohi'bui | prohi'bitus | <i>prevent</i>  |
| respon'deō | respondē're | respon'di | respōn'sus  | <i>reply</i>    |
| se'deō     | sedē're     | sēdi      | sessus      | <i>sit</i>      |
| stu'deō    | studē're    | stu'dui   | —           | <i>be eager</i> |

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, Rome's greatest orator and generally considered her first man of letters.

|        |         |        |       |             |
|--------|---------|--------|-------|-------------|
| te'neō | tenē're | te'nui | —     | <i>hold</i> |
| ti'meō | timē're | ti'mui | —     | <i>fear</i> |
| vi'deō | vidē're | vidi   | visus | <i>see</i>  |

a. Note that all these verbs have the infinitive ending *-ēre*. This marks them as belonging to the second conjugation. Further, observe that the formation of the perfect varies in different verbs and that the past participle is sometimes lacking. Occasionally a verb that has no past participle will have a future participle ending in *-ūrus*, and this is then given in the principal parts. There are two examples of this in the above list. Do you see them? In dealing with verbs make it a rule to look at the infinitive first of all to determine the conjugation, and do not be surprised to find irregularities in the formation of the perfect and the participle.

#### DĒ CURIŌ DENTĀTŌ (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

**324.** Nōn in agrō sed in casā lēgāti Dentātum invēnērunt. Vir clārus ante mēnsam<sup>1</sup> sedēbat. Ibi cēnam<sup>2</sup> rāpulōrum<sup>3</sup> edēbat.<sup>4</sup> Tum lēgāti casam intrāvērunt<sup>5</sup> et dixērunt: "Factis tuis ēgregiis et officiis pūblicis, Dentāte, Samnitēs amicitiam tuam petunt. Ea praemia et id aurum (*gold*) sunt tua." <sup>5</sup> Tum Dentātus respondit: "Minimē, Samnitēs, nātūram meam tenētis.<sup>6</sup> Vērūs Rōmānus nōn studet aurō sed imperiō in (*over*) eōs quī aurum habent. Iam discēdite."

1. mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*. 2. cēna, -ae, F., *dinner*. 3. rāpulum, -ī, N., *young turnip*. 4. edō, -ere, *eat*. 5. intrō, -āre, *enter*. 6. *Understand*.

THAT CLASSICAL STUDIES HAVE BEEN OF VERY GREAT VALUE TO MANY PERSONS IS SIMPLY A MATTER OF FACT, AND NOT OF OPINION. THEIR VALUE MOREOVER HAS NOT BEEN PURELY CULTURAL BUT INTENSELY PRACTICAL. — MARION LEROY BURTON, PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



## LESSON XLVI

Amicus certus in rē incertā cernitur — A friend in need is  
a friend indeed<sup>1</sup>

### PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE • PRINCIPAL PARTS (CONTINUED)

**325. Past Perfect Indicative.** The tense sign of the past perfect indicative active is **-erā-**. This is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are the same as in the past indicative, and the inflection is like that of **fueram** (§ 308).

**326.** The past perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected as follows:

| FIRST CONJUGATION                                                     |                     | SECOND CONJUGATION                                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>vocā'veram</b> (perf. stem <b>vocāv-</b> ),<br><i>I had called</i> |                     | <b>monu'eram</b> (perf. stem <b>monu-</b> ),<br><i>I had advised</i> |                     |
| 1. <b>vocā'veram</b>                                                  | <b>vocāverā'mus</b> | <b>monu'eram</b>                                                     | <b>monuerā'mus</b>  |
| 2. <b>vocā'verās</b>                                                  | <b>vocāverā'tis</b> | <b>monu'erās</b>                                                     | <b>monuerā'tis</b>  |
| 3. <b>vocā'verat</b>                                                  | <b>vocā'verant</b>  | <b>monu'erat</b>                                                     | <b>monu'erant</b>   |
| THIRD CONJUGATION                                                     |                     | FOURTH CONJUGATION                                                   |                     |
| <b>rē'xeram</b> (perf. stem <b>rēx-</b> ),<br><i>I had ruled</i>      |                     | <b>audi'veram</b> (perf. stem <b>audiṽ-</b> ),<br><i>I had heard</i> |                     |
| 1. <b>rē'xeram</b>                                                    | <b>rēxerā'mus</b>   | <b>audi'veram</b>                                                    | <b>audiverā'mus</b> |
| 2. <b>rē'xerās</b>                                                    | <b>rēxerā'tis</b>   | <b>audi'verās</b>                                                    | <b>audiverā'tis</b> |
| 3. <b>rē'xerat</b>                                                    | <b>rē'xerant</b>    | <b>audi'verat</b>                                                    | <b>audi'verant</b>  |

**327. Principal Parts of Third Conjugation.** Learn the principal parts of the following verbs of the third conjugation. The list includes all previously used. Review the meanings and drill on the inflection of the perfect and the past perfect.

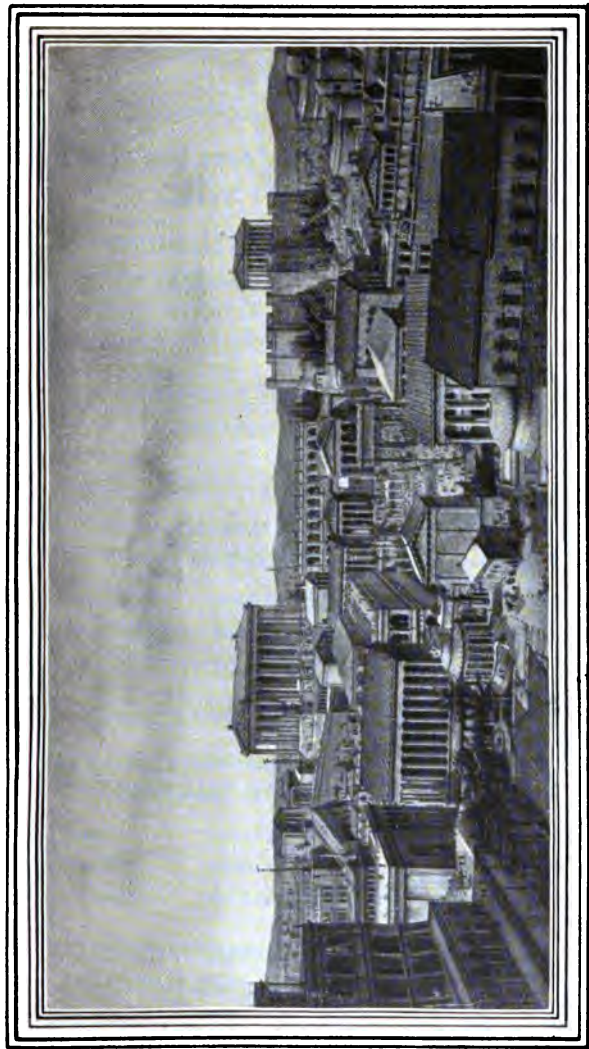
<sup>1</sup> From Ennius, the most famous of the early Latin poets. More literally, *The faithful friend is revealed when all is unfaithful*. Note the play on words.

| PRES. INDIC. | PRES. INF. | PERFECT              | PAST PART. |                       |
|--------------|------------|----------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| abdu'cō      | abdu'cere  | abdu'xi              | abduc'tus  | <i>lead away</i>      |
| agō          | a'gere     | ēgi                  | actus      | <i>drive</i>          |
| ca'piō       | ca'pere    | cēpi                 | captus     | <i>take</i>           |
| crēdō        | crē'dere   | crē'didi             | crē'ditus  | <i>believe</i>        |
| dēfen'dō     | dēfen'dere | dēfen'di             | dēfen'sus  | <i>defend</i>         |
| dīcō         | dī'cere    | dixi                 | dictus     | <i>say</i>            |
| dīmit'tō     | dīmit'tere | dīmī'si              | dīmīs'sus  | <i>send away</i>      |
| discē'dō     | discē'dere | disces'si            | disces'sus | <i>go away</i>        |
| dūcō         | dū'cere    | dūxi                 | ductus     | <i>lead</i>           |
| ēdu'cō       | ēdu'cere   | ēdu'xi               | educ'tus   | <i>lead out</i>       |
| fa'ciō       | fa'cere    | fēci                 | factus     | <i>make</i>           |
| gerō         | ge'rere    | gessi                | gestus     | <i>carry on, wage</i> |
| indū'cō      | indū'cere  | indū'xi              | induc'tus  | <i>lead in</i>        |
| mittō        | mit'tere   | misī                 | missus     | <i>send</i>           |
| petō         | pe'tere    | peti'vi or<br>pe'tiī | peti'tus   | <i>seek</i>           |
| ra'piō       | ra'pere    | ra'pui               | raptus     | <i>seize</i>          |
| regō         | re'gere    | rēxi                 | rēctus     | <i>rule</i>           |
| resis'tō     | resis'tere | re'stiti             | —          | <i>resist</i>         |
| vincō        | vin'cere   | vici                 | victus     | <i>conquer</i>        |

## EXERCISES

328. 1. Ēgerāmus, misisti, vicit. 2. Capiet, gessērunt, restiterat. 3. Rēxit, indūxerant, faciēmus. 4. Vocāverās, monuit, petiērunt. 5. Habēbit, rapuistis; ēdūxerātis. 6. Crēdideram, ēgistī, pārui. 7. Fēcit, dēfenderat, persuāsimus. 8. Mittit, mittet, misit. 9. Dūxērunt, dimiserāmus, nocēbit. 10. Dixisti, discesserant, ēdūxistis.

329. 1. We have conquered, he will favor, he had made. 2. You (*sing.*) have waged, they will extend, lead thou. 3. He has seized, they had departed, you (*plur.*) had taken. 4. He has said, we were defending, we shall reply.



**THE FORUM, THE CAPITOLINE, AND ADJACENT BUILDINGS (RESTORED)**

The left corner shows a small part of the Palatine and the palaces of the Cæsars. The right side is filled with the Fora of the emperors. The Roman Forum lies in the middle, and is bounded at the end by the Capitoline Hill, with the Arx, or Citadel, on its right summit and the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus on its left. The long building between is the Tabularium, or Record Building. Compare this picture with the one facing page 66



## LESSON XLVII

Vēnī, vidī, vici—I came, I saw, I conquered<sup>1</sup>

### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE AND PERFECT INFINITIVE ACTIVE · PRINCIPAL PARTS (CONCLUDED)

**330. Future Perfect Indicative Active.** The tense sign of the future perfect indicative active is **-eri-**. This is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are the same as in the future, and the inflection is like that of **fuerō** (§ 308).

**331.** The future perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected as follows:

| FIRST CONJUGATION                                                           |                     | SECOND CONJUGATION                                                        |                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>vocā'verō</b> (perf. stem <b>vocāv-</b> ),<br><i>I shall have called</i> |                     | <b>monu'erō</b> (perf. stem <b>monu-</b> )<br><i>I shall have advised</i> |                     |
| 1. <b>vocā'verō</b>                                                         | <b>vocāve'rimus</b> | <b>monu'erō</b>                                                           | <b>monue'rimus</b>  |
| 2. <b>vocā'veris</b>                                                        | <b>vocāve'ritis</b> | <b>monu'eris</b>                                                          | <b>monue'ritis</b>  |
| 3. <b>vocā'verit</b>                                                        | <b>vocā'verint</b>  | <b>monu'erit</b>                                                          | <b>monu'erint</b>   |
| THIRD CONJUGATION                                                           |                     | FOURTH CONJUGATION                                                        |                     |
| <b>rē'xerō</b> (perf. stem <b>rēx-</b> ),<br><i>I shall have ruled</i>      |                     | <b>audi'verō</b> (perf. stem <b>audi-</b> ),<br><i>I shall have heard</i> |                     |
| 1. <b>rē'xerō</b>                                                           | <b>rēxe'rimus</b>   | <b>audi'verō</b>                                                          | <b>audive'rimus</b> |
| 2. <b>rē'xeris</b>                                                          | <b>rēxe'ritis</b>   | <b>audi'veris</b>                                                         | <b>audive'ritis</b> |
| 3. <b>rē'xerit</b>                                                          | <b>rē'xerint</b>    | <b>audi'verit</b>                                                         | <b>audi'verint</b>  |

**332. Perfect Infinitive Active.** The perfect infinitive active is also part of the perfect system and is easily learned in this connection. It is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.

<sup>1</sup> A famous dispatch of Cæsar at the conclusion of a short and brilliant campaign. He was a man of quick decision and tireless energy.

| CONJ. | PERFECT STEM | PERFECT INFINITIVE         |
|-------|--------------|----------------------------|
| I     | vocāv-       | vocāvis'se, to have called |
| II    | monu-        | monuis'se, to have advised |
| III   | rēx-         | rēxis'se, to have ruled    |
| IV    | audīv-       | audivis'se, to have heard  |
| sum   | fu-          | fuis'se, to have been      |

**333. Principal Parts of Fourth Conjugation.** The following list comprises the verbs of the fourth conjugation thus far used. Learn the principal parts, review the meanings, and drill on the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative and the perfect infinitive.

| PRES. INDIC. | PRES. INF. | PERFECT | PAST PART. |                |
|--------------|------------|---------|------------|----------------|
| au'diō       | audi're    | audi'vi | audi'tus   | <i>hear</i>    |
| inve'niō     | inveni're  | invē'ni | inven'tus  | <i>find</i>    |
| mū'niō       | mūni're    | mūni'vi | mūni'tus   | <i>fortify</i> |
| ve'niō       | veni're    | vēni    | ventus     | <i>come</i>    |

### EXERCISES

**334.** Give the present and perfect infinitives of **dō, mūniō, faciō, crēdō, dicō, mittō, teneō, videō, persuādeō, portō, absum, pācō.**

**335.** Inflect the following verbs in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect: **nārrō, timeō, veniō, agō, locō, mittō, pugnō, mūniō, sum.**

**336.** 1. You (*sing.*) have had, they have believed, they had sent. 2. He has seen, you (*sing.*) will have said, to have led. 3. You (*plur.*) have sent, they have obeyed, we had departed. 4. He has attacked, I had given, I shall have sent. 5. We shall have feared, he has extended, to have been. 6. You (*sing.*) had given, you (*plur.*) will have made, to have sent. 7. You (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) had given, he will have carried.

## LESSON XLVIII

Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvābit — Perhaps some day you will take pleasure in remembering even this<sup>1</sup>

### REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

**337. Formation of Tenses of Indicative.** A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

|            |                                                                                |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT    | First of the principal parts                                                   |
| PAST       | Present stem + <b>-ba-m</b>                                                    |
| FUTURE     | Present stem + { <b>-bō</b> , Conj. I and II<br><b>-a-m</b> , Conj. III and IV |
| PERFECT    | Third of the principal parts                                                   |
| PAST PERF. | Perfect stem + <b>-era-m</b>                                                   |
| FUT. PERF. | Perfect stem + <b>-erō</b>                                                     |

**338. Synopsis of *vocō*.** The synopsis of the active voice of *vocō*, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **vocō, vocā're, vocā'vi, vocā'tus**

(pres. stem **vocā-**, perf. stem **vocāv-**)

|                 |         |                 |                 |            |                   |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------|
| INDIC-<br>ATIVE | PRESENT | <b>vocō</b>     | INDIC-<br>ATIVE | PERFECT    | <b>vocā'vi</b>    |
|                 | PAST    | <b>vocā'bam</b> |                 | PAST PERF. | <b>vocā'veram</b> |
|                 | FUTURE  | <b>vocā'bō</b>  |                 | FUT. PERF. | <b>vocā'verō</b>  |

PRES. IMPER. **vocā**

PRES. INFIN. **vocā're**

PERF. INFIN. **vocāvis'se**

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil, author of the *Ænē'id*, the greatest Latin epic. The sentiment is appropriate when a person is beset by difficulties and dangers. Of similar import are his words, "Revocāte animōs, maestumque timōrem mittite," *Recall your courage and banish gloomy fear.*

**EXERCISES**

**339.** Following § 338 as a model, learn to write and to recite rapidly the principal parts and the synopsis of the following verbs in any person or number: **parō, dō, habeo, video, dicō, dūcō, capiō, mūniō, veniō**, and other verbs selected from the lists in §§ 161, 323, 327, 333.

**340.** Read again the story about Curius Dentatus and answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quō Samnitēs lēgātōs miserant?
2. Cūr Samnitēs lēgātōs ad eum miserant?
3. Quid lēgāti comparāverant et ad Dentātum portāverant?
4. Num Dentātus amplam villam habuit?
5. Nōne vita Dentāti vērā et integrā fuerat?
6. Labōrāveratne Dentātus in agrō?
7. Ubi lēgāti Dentātum invēnērunt?
8. Cēpitne Dentātus praeemia pulchra lēgātōrum?
9. Quid dixit?

~~~~~

Sixth Review, Lessons XLI-XLVIII, §§ 762-767



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

The Circus Maximus was among the most magnificent structures of the Roman world, and held nearly 400,000 people

LESSON XLIX

Tempus fugit — Time flies

WORD FORMATION

341. Something has been said in §§ 238 and 258 concerning Latin and English prefixes. Those mentioned before are here reviewed and three new ones are added.

ā, ab, from, as in **abdūcō, lead away**; English, *abduct*

ad, to, as in **addūcō, lead to**; English, *adduce*

con- (com-, co-), together, as in **condūcō, lead together**; English, *conduct*. Often with intensive force, as in **convincō, conquer completely**; English, *convince*

dē, down from, as in **dēdūcō, lead down**; English, *deduce*

ē, ex, out from, as in **ēdūcō, lead out**; English, *educē*

in, in, into, as in **indūcō, lead in**; English, *induce*

prō, forth, forward, as in **prōdūcō, lead forward**; English, *produce*

re- (red-), back or again, as in **redūcō, lead back**; English, *reduce*

trāns (trā-), across, as in **trādūcō, lead across**; English, *traduce*

All these prefixes, excepting **con-** and **re-**, are also used alone as prepositions.

NOTE. An English derivative from a Latin compound often loses the literal meaning of the Latin and is used only in a figurative sense. This is well illustrated by the derivatives given above. For example, *traduce* never means to *lead across*, but is used only in the figurative sense of to *make a parade of, dishonor, slander*. The Latin student has the advantage of being able to trace the figurative meaning back to its literal source.

342. Derivation. Write a list of English derivatives from the verbs **servō, locō, vocō, videō, mittō, dicō, spectō**, selecting the proper prefixes from § 341, and adding such English suffixes as you may know. Use the English dictionary.

NOTE. Students should keep derivation notebooks. See page 382.

GALLĪ RŌMAM OPPUGNANT

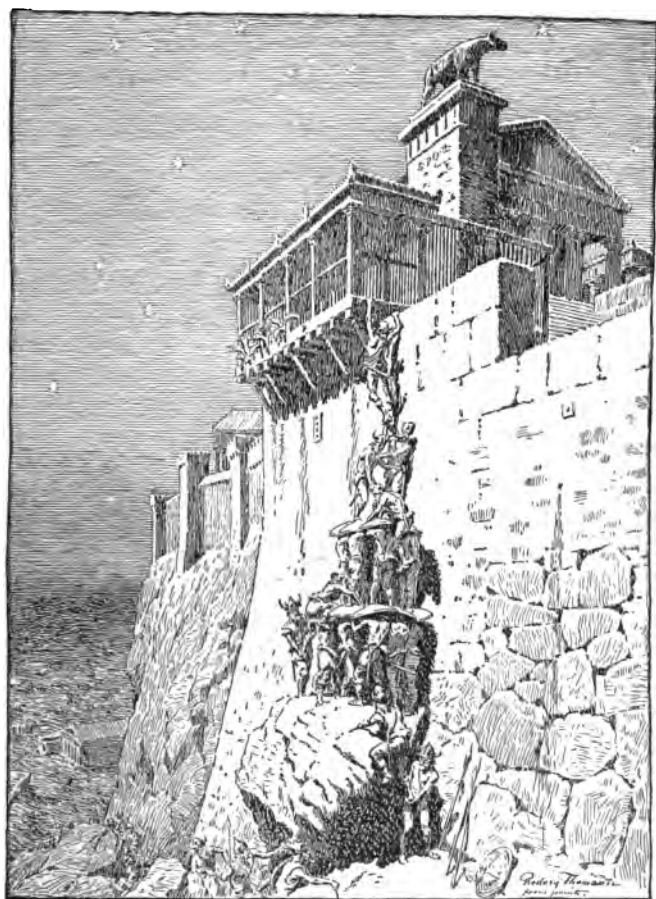
First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

343. Ōlim Gallī Italian vāstābant. Iam agricolās miserōs ex agris lātis ēgerant et equōs pulchrōs eōrum rapuerant. Iam multa oppida expugnāverant. Iam Rōmam petēbant. Tum Rōmānī magnopere perterrēbantur et in Capitōlium¹ fūgērunt. Mānlius, vir ēgregius belli, Capitōlium firmō⁵ praesidiō tenuit nec Gallōs timuit. Capitōlium erat in locō altō et magnis mūris mūniēbātur. Diū populus nātūrā loci et praesidiō dēfendēbātur et Gallī frūstrā (*in vain*) labōrābant. Victōria longē aberat. Sed dēnique barbarī novum cōnsilium cēpērunt.² Noctē³ magnō silentiō⁴ saxa⁵ alta¹⁰ ascendērunt. Nec audiēbantur nec prohibēbantur. Iam mūrōs Capitōli tenēbant. Sed erant in Capitōliō sacri ānserēs.⁶ Ei ānserēs Gallōs audivērunt et Capitōlium servāvērunt. Nam clāmōre⁷ suō Mānlium ex somnō⁸ excitāvērunt.⁹ Mānlius arma rapuit, suōs vocāvit, Gallōs dē saxīs¹⁵ altis iēcit.

1. The Capitulum was the citadel of Rome. It was located on the Capitoline Hill, which was steep and rocky. 2. cōnsilium capere, to form a plan. 3. By night. 4. silentium, silentī, N., silence. 5. saxum, -ī, N., rock. 6. Geese. These were sacred to Juno, whose temple was on the Capitoline. 7. clāmōre suō, by their cackling. 8. somnus, -ī, M., sleep. 9. excitō, -āre, arouse.



A ROMAN MARKET PLACE



THE SACRED GEESE SAVE THE CAPITOL

LESSON L

Vincit quī sē vincit—He conquers who conquers himself¹

THE PAST PARTICIPLE • THE PASSIVE PERFECTS

344. Participles Defined. A participle is a verbal adjective, and takes its name from the fact that it participates in the uses of both verb and adjective. As a verb, it has tense and voice, and may be either transitive or intransitive. As an adjective, it is declined, and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. Thus, in "He, seeing the enemy, fled," *seeing* is a participle, present, active, and transitive, with *enemy* as its direct object. This is its verbal side. As an adjective, it agrees with *he* in gender, number, and case.

345. Participles in English. In English the chief classes of participles are *present* and *past*. The present participle ends in *-ing*. It usually describes an action as taking place at the same time with some other action: as, "*Reaching* for the boat I lost my balance." The past participle expresses completed action. In the passive it has the same form as the past tense: as, "The floors are *swept*," "The chairs are *mended*." The active past participle is formed by putting *having* before the passive past participle: as, "*Having swept* the floors, I rested," "*Having mended* the chairs, I sold them." Sometimes *having* is used also in passive participial expressions: as, "The floors *having been swept*, I rested." Participles with *having* are often called perfect participles.

346. Past Participles in English and Latin. English has both an active and a passive past participle: as, *having called*

¹ From Publilius Syrus. Born a slave and educated by his master, he was granted his freedom and became a noted writer.

(active), (*having been*) *called* (passive). Latin has only a passive past participle, and this participle is of special importance because, as we have seen (§ 299), it is the fourth and last of the principal parts. .

347. Participial Stem. The participial stem is found, as will be recalled, by dropping -us from the past participle. From this stem are formed the future active infinitive and all passive perfects.

348. Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect Indicative Passive. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle: as, *I have been called, I had been called, I shall have been called.*

Very similarly in Latin the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect passive use the present, past, and future of *sum* as an auxiliary verb with the past participle: as,

Perfect passive, *vocā'tus sum, I have been called or was called*

Past perfect passive, *vocā'tus eram, I had been called*

Future perfect passive, *vocā'tus erō, I shall have been called*

349. The past participle is declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*. When making part of a verb form, it agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb, as shown below:

EXAMPLES IN THE SINGULAR

Vir vocātus est, the man was called or has been called

Puella vocāta est, the girl was called or has been called

Praesidium vocātum est, the garrison was called or has been called

EXAMPLES IN THE PLURAL

Viri vocāti sunt, the men were called or have been called

Puellae vocātae sunt, the girls were called or have been called

Praesidia vocāta sunt, the garrisons were called or have been called

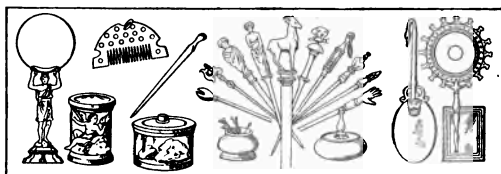
350. In all the conjugations the *perfect*, *past perfect*, and *future perfect* indicative passive are formed and inflected in the same way. Study these inflections, §§ 832-835.

EXERCISES

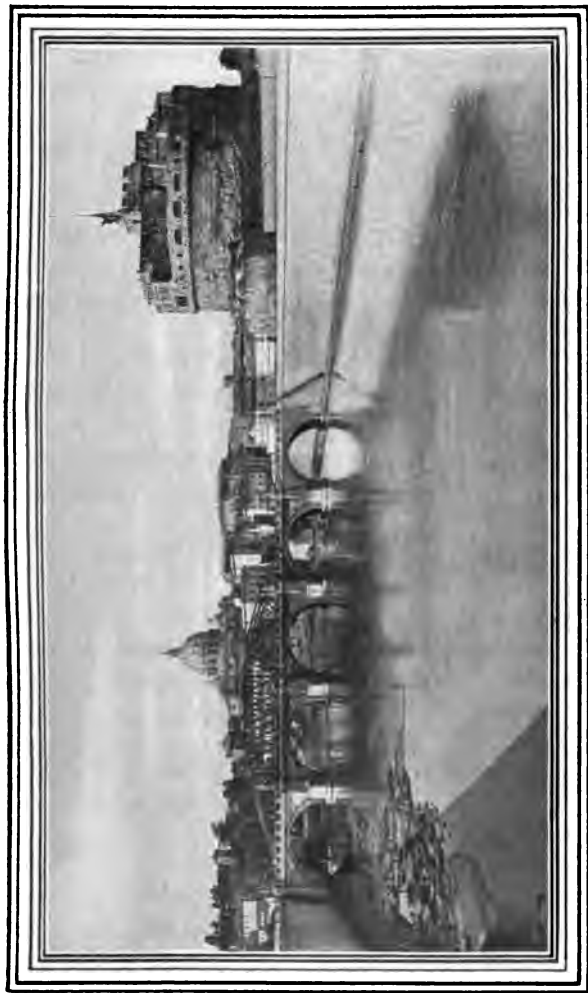
351. Inflect the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of *vocō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō*.

352. 1. Agricolae frumentum in oppidum sacrum portāvērunt. 2. Frumentum ab agricolis in oppidum sacrum portātum est. 3. Rēgina Lesbiae pecūniam dederat. 4. Pecūnia ā rēginā Lesbiae data erat. 5. Mānlius dē mūrō sacro Gallōs iēcērit. 6. Galli ā Mānliō dē mūrō sacro iacti erunt. 7. Dentātus lēgātōs dimiserat. Lēgātī ā Dentātō dimissi erant. 8. Puellae exemplum ēgregium vērae amicitiae viderant. 9. Exemplum ēgregium vērae amicitiae ā puellis visum erat. 10. Animī timidi eōrum factis vestris cōfirmāti sunt. 11. Galli ab agris nostris armīs Rōmānis prohibiti erant.

353. 1. Greece had been freed from danger. 2. Fresh troops had been put before the sacred town by the Romans. 3. The girls had been greatly terrified and had fled. 4. The fields had been laid waste, but, because of the nature of the place, the camp had not been taken by storm. 5. Did the Gauls climb your walls? Not at all, but they laid waste the fields.



ROMAN HAIRPINS, POWDER BOXES, AND OTHER TOILET ARTICLES



THE TIBER, CASTLE OF ST. ANGELO, AND ST. PETER'S

Navigation on the Tiber, now of little account, was of great importance to ancient Rome. There are ruins of great docks in the city and of still greater ones at Ostia, at the river's mouth, sixteen miles downstream. The Castle of St. Angelo is the tomb of the Emperor Hadrian. Concerning St. Peter's, compare the note and picture facing page 12

LESSON LI

Dā dextram miserō — Lend a hand¹.

THE PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE AND THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE • PREPOSITIONS

354. As the perfect infinitive passive and the future infinitive active are also formed from the participial stem, they are most easily learned at this point.

355. Perfect Infinitive Passive. The perfect infinitive passive is formed by adding *esse* to the past participle: as, *vocātus esse*, *to have been called*. Similarly in the other conjugations we have *monitus esse*, *to have been advised*; *rēctus esse*, *to have been ruled*; *auditus esse*, *to have been heard*.

356. Future Infinitive Active. The future infinitive active of *vocō* is *vocātū'rus esse*, *to be about to call*. This is formed by adding *-ūrus esse* to the participial stem. Similarly in the other conjugations we have *monitū'rus esse*, *to be about to advise*; *rēctū'rus esse*, *to be about to rule*; *audītū'rus esse*, *to be about to hear*.

357. We have now completed the infinitive, active and passive. The synopsis of the infinitives of *vocō* is as follows:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PRES.	<i>vocā're</i> , <i>to call</i>	<i>vocā'ri</i> , <i>to be called</i>
PERF.	<i>vocāvis'se</i> , <i>to have called</i>	<i>vocā'tus esse</i> , <i>to have been called</i>
FUT.	<i>vocātū'rus esse</i> , <i>to be about to call</i>	(Rare and hence omitted)

¹ From Vergil. Literally, *Give your right (hand) to an unfortunate (man)*.

a. The infinitives of the other conjugations are similarly formed; but do not forget the peculiar formation of the present infinitive passive in the third conjugation (§ 285).

358. Prepositions. We learned in § 77 that only the accusative and ablative are used with prepositions. Those prepositions which we have had before are here summarized and three more added.

a. Prepositions expressing ablative relations (*from, with, in, etc.*) govern the ablative case. Learn the following list:

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , <i>from, by</i>	<i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> , <i>out from, out of</i>
<i>cum</i> , <i>with</i>	<i>in</i> , <i>in or on</i>
<i>dē</i> , <i>down from, concerning, about</i>	<i>prō</i> , <i>in behalf of, for</i>
<i>sine</i> , <i>without</i>	

b. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the accusative. Among these are

<i>ad</i> , <i>to, towards</i>	<i>per</i> , <i>through</i>
<i>ante</i> , <i>before, in front of</i>	<i>post</i> , <i>after</i>
<i>in</i> , <i>into, to, against</i>	<i>trāns</i> , <i>across</i>

There are many others; but learn the list above of prepositions taking the ablative, and use the accusative after all others.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

359. 1. Imperium Rōmānum Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum habitābant nōn grātum erat. **2.** Itaque per multōs annōs Germānī Rōmānōs ab rēgnis suis prohibuērunt. **3.** Firmis et¹ vērīs animis prō patriā fortiter pugnāvērunt. **4.** Rēgna Germānōrum longē trāns Rhēnum patēbant. **5.** Germānī cōpiās integrās ex silvis oppidisque ēvocābant. **6.** Numerus virōrum erat magnus et animi eōrum bellō studēbant. **7.** Sed fortūna belli erat inīqua Germānis ac Rōmānis victōriam dedit. **8.** Antēā

Germāni fuerant liberi, sed post victōriam Rōmānam multi in magnās silvās fūgērunt. 9. Multi rapti sunt atque in Italiam missi sunt. 10. Quam misera erat fortūna eōrum captivōrum!

1. What are the three Latin words for *and*?

360. 1. The Roman power did not formerly extend across the Rhine. 2. When you are in the realm of the Germans, you will see great forests. 3. The nature of the place was certainly unfavorable for the battle. 4. They will fight bravely and many will give their lives¹ for their country.² 5. After the unfavorable battle grain was provided and many fresh troops were called out.

1. Singular. 2. Not the dative.

361. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of the following verbs: *pācō, habeo, teneo, agō, gerō, capiō, iaciō, audiō, mūniō.*

LESSON LII

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori — Sweet and fitting it is to die for one's country¹

THE CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

362. *Possum, I am able, I can*, is a compound of the adjective *potis, able*, and *sum, I am*. It is inflected in the indicative and infinitive as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum, posse, potui, —*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT

<i>possum, I am able, I can</i>	<i>pos'sumus, we are able, we can</i>
<i>potes, you are able, you can</i>	<i>potes'tis, you are able, you can</i>
<i>potest, he is able, he can</i>	<i>possunt, they are able, they can</i>

¹ From one of the Odes of Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

PAST

po'teram, *I was able, I could*; **poterā'mus**, *we were able, we could*; etc.

FUTURE

po'terō, *I shall be able*; etc. **pote'rimus**, *we shall be able*; etc.

PERFECT

po'tui, *I have been able, I could*; etc. **potu'imus**, *we have been able, we could*; etc.

PAST PERFECT

potu'eram, *I had been able*; etc. **potuerā'mus**, *we had been able*; etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

potu'erō, *I shall have been able*; etc. **potue'rimus**, *we shall have been able*; etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT

posse, *to be able*

PERFECT

potuis'se, *to have been able*

a. This verb has no imperative and no future infinitive. The perfect infinitive, as in all verbs, is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem (§ 332).

EXERCISES

DĒ MŪCIŌ SCAEVOLĀ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

363. Ōlim Porsenna, quī rēgnum Etrūscōrum¹ tum obtinēbat, cum Rōmānīs dē imperiō Italiae pugnāvit et Rōmam māgnīs cōpiis oppugnāvit. Iam Rōmānī inopiā frūmentī labōrābant² et magnopere perterrēbantur. Erat in numerō Rōmānōrum ēgregius iuvenis³ Mūcius Scaevola.⁴ Is ; timidōs animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit atque dixit: "In castra

Etruscōrum prōcēdam et Porsennam interficiam. Itaque patriam periculō liberābō." Fortiter negōtium suscepit, sed visus captusque est. Tum ante Porsennam prōductus est.

1. **Etrūsci, -rum, m.,** *the Etruscans*, neighbors of the Romans to the north and their most powerful enemies in the early years of the city.
2. Used here in the sense of *suffer*. 3. *Youth*. 4. The English pronunciation is *Sev/o-la*.

364. 1. They had held the sovereignty across the Rhine for (*per*) many years. 2. Because of the scarcity of grain the men had not advanced. 3. That matter had been undertaken by Mucius. 4. The captives had been led before your camp. 5. After the battle a large supply of money was found there.

LESSON LIII

Possunt quia posse videntur — They can because they think they can¹

THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

365. Nature of the Infinitive. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English. Being a *verbal noun* it is used sometimes as a verb and sometimes as a noun. As a verb, it has tense and voice, may govern a case, and may be modified by an adverb. As a noun, it may have the construction of a noun. For example, in *To cross the marsh quickly was difficult*, the infinitive *to cross* is a noun, for it is the subject of *was*; but it is also a verb, for it takes an object (*marsh*) and is modified by an adverb (*quickly*).

366. Infinitive Clause as Object. In English, verbs of *commanding*, *wishing*, *forbidding*, and the like may be followed by a clause consisting of a noun or pronoun in the objective

¹ From Vergil. Literally, *They are able because they seem (think themselves) to be able*.

case and an infinitive: as, *the slave commanded the men to flee*. The same construction is used in Latin.

Servus virōs fugere iussit, the slave commanded the men to flee

Eōs fābulam audire cupit, he wishes them to hear the story

Eum dicere vetat, he forbids him to speak

367. Rule for the Infinitive Object Clause. *The verbs iubeō, command; cupiō, wish; vetō, forbid, and the like are often followed by an infinitive clause as object.*

368. Rule for Subject of Infinitive. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

369. Complementary Infinitive. In English, and also in Latin, an infinitive without a subject may be added to many verbs as an adverbial modifier to complete their meaning. Such verbs are called *verbs of incomplete predication*, and the added infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive*. Among such verbs are the following:

incipiō, I begin

possum, I am able, I can

properō, I hasten

studeō, I am eager

Fugere incipiunt, they begin to flee

Oppidum capere properat, he hastens to take the town

Nōn pugnāre potes, you are not able to fight or you can't fight

Eum invenire studeō, I am eager to find him

370. Infinitive as Noun. In English, and also in Latin, the infinitive is often a pure noun, being used as the subject of a sentence or as a predicate noun: as,

Vidēre est crēdere, seeing (to see) is believing (to believe)

Vincere est grātum, to conquer is pleasing

a. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular, as is shown in the sentence above by *grātum*, a neuter adjective in agreement with *vincere*, the subject.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

371. 1. Vincere Rōmānōs erat grātum inimicis finitimis. 2. Mūcius Porsennam interficere studēbat. 3. Rōmāni eum suscipere id negōtium cupivērunt. 4. Populus eum in castra inimica prōcēdere nōn vetuit. 5. Rōmāni imperium Italiae obtinēre incēpērunt. 6. Inopiā frūmenti Rōmāni diū resistere nōn poterant. 7. Porsenna Mūcium prōdūci iussit. 8. Porsennam interficere erat officium pūblicum vērī Rōmāni.

372. 1. To possess power was pleasing to Dentatus. 2. The ambassadors were eager to give him¹ money. 3. But they could not persuade him.² 4. They began to speak, but Dentatus commanded them to depart. 5. He wished them to see an example of a true Roman. 6. Therefore he did not desire them to give him the money. 7. Dentatus forbade them to seek his friendship with money.³

1. Indirect object. 2. What case? See § 224. 3. Ablative of means.



THE ROMAN FORUM, A.D. 400

Note the Capitoline Hill with its two summits in the background

LESSON LIV

'Oleum et operam perdidī—I have wasted time and labor¹

WORD FORMATION

373. One of the most important of the Latin prefixes is *in-*. We have already learned something of its use with verbs. It is then the same as the preposition *in*, and has the same meanings of *in*, *on*, *into*, *against*, and has the same force in related English words: as, Latin *inducō*, *lead into*; English *induce*, meaning to lead one into some course of action.

374. But there is another prefix *in-*, identical in form but of a different origin, which may be combined with an adjective or an adverb. This *in-* negatives the word to which it is attached: thus, *firmus*, *firm* or *strong*, but *infirmus*, *infirm* or *weak*. The same prefix is similarly used in English: as, *insecure*, *in-sincere*, *in-valid*, etc. In English the prefix often changes its form to *un-*, as in *unsafe*, *unmoved*, etc. This *in-* is never used as a Latin preposition, but only as a prefix.

375. Latin prefixes before a consonant may change their final consonant to a similar letter or one more easily pronounced. This is called assimilation. Thus, *in-* + *mātūrus* = *immātūrus*, *immature*; *in-* + *mortālis* = *immortālis*, *immortal*; *con-* + *rēctiō* = *corrēctiō*, *correction*. Compare also such English words as *impossible* (*in-* + *possum*), *irresponsible* (*in-* + *respondeō*), *illiberal* (*in-* + *liberālis*), etc.

376. Another important point is that Latin simple verbs having a short *a* in the first syllable followed by a single consonant (as in *capīō*) generally change a *a* to *i* in the present, and

¹ From Plautus. Literally, *I have wasted oil* (i. e. *lamp oil*) and labor.



MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA

to *e* in the past participle, when the simple verb is compounded with a prefix. So *in-* + *capiō* becomes *incipiō* in the present and *inceptus* in the past participle. The same change in spelling follows in English; from *capiō* we have *capture*, but *incipiō* gives us *incipient*, and *inceptus*, *inception*. So *recipiō* gives us *recipient*, *recipe*, and *receptus*, *reception*, *receptive*.

EXERCISES

377. Derivation. Name ten English words in the composition of which the prefix *in-* is used, and state the force of the prefix.

378. Give the synopsis, active and passive, of *iaciō*, *cupiō*, *iubeō*, *vāstō*.

DĒ MŪCIŌ SCAEVOLĀ (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

379. Porsenna in mediis castris sedēbat et magnopere perterrēbatur, nam suum periculum ex animō agere nōn poterat. Spectāvit Mūcium et dixit: "Vitā meam petere, Rōmāne, parābās. Meō iūdictiō sine auxiliō sociōrum id negōtium nōn suscēpisti. Nārā malum cōnsilium ac cōservā vitā tuā. 5 Si nōn ita faciēs, ignī¹ cremāberis." ² Mūcius respondit: "Nōn vitā sed patriā cōservāre est officium Rōmānum. Poenās tuās minimē timeō. Vitā Rōmānam rapere potes, sed animō³ Rōmānō nocēre nōn potes." Tum statim dextrā⁴ mediō ignī,⁵ quī nōn longē aberat, iniēcit,⁶ nec dolorē⁷ ¹⁰ superābatur. Post id factū ēgregium Porsenna vetuit eum interfici et iussit eum ad Rōmānōs remitti. Postea Mūcius appellātus est Scaevola.⁸

1. *By fire.* 2. *cremō, -āre, burn, consume.* 3. *Why dative? See § 224.* 4. *dextra, -ae, F., right hand.* 5. *mediō ignī, into the midst of a fire.* 6. *iniēcit, he thrust.* 7. *By the pain.* 8. *Scaevola, left-handed.*

LESSON LV

In Deō spērāmus — In God we trust¹

SENTENCES AND CLAUSES • RELATIVE PRONOUNS

380. Sentences and Clauses. Sentences are *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

381. A *simple* sentence makes but one statement, and has but one subject and one predicate : as,

Columbus discovered America

382. A *compound* sentence contains two or more independent statements : as,

Columbus discovered America | and | he thereby won immortal fame

383. A *complex* sentence contains one independent statement and one or more dependent statements : as,

When Columbus discovered America | he won immortal fame

384. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*. An independent statement is called a *main clause* ; a dependent statement, a *subordinate clause*.

385. Subordinate clauses may be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. Hence we have *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses*, and *adverb clauses*.

386. Relative Pronouns. Examine the following sentences :

1. *This is the wounded soldier.*
2. *This is the soldier who has been wounded.*
3. *This is the soldier, and the soldier has been wounded.*

¹ Motto of Brown University.

Number 1 is a simple sentence. Number 2 is complex, the adjective *wounded* in number 1 being represented in number 2 by the subordinate adjective clause *who has been wounded*. The word *who* is a pronoun, taking the place of *soldier*, as shown by number 3, and it also connects the subordinate adjective clause *who has been wounded* with the noun *soldier*. A pronoun that connects an adjective clause with a noun or pronoun is called a *relative pronoun*, and the noun or pronoun is called its *antecedent*. In English the relative pronouns are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, *that*.

387. Declension of Relative Pronoun *qui*. The relative pronoun in Latin is *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. It is declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL.	<i>quo</i>	<i>qua</i>	<i>quo</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. Review the declension of *is*, § 203, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *qui*, *quae*, and *quibus* are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive *cuius* is pronounced *cōd'yōōs*, and the dative *cui* is pronounced *kwee*.

388. Translation. The relative *qui* is translated as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>who, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
GEN.	<i>of whom, whose</i>	<i>of which, of what, whose</i>
DAT.	<i>to or for whom</i>	<i>to or for which, to or for what</i>
ACC.	<i>whom, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
ABL.	<i>from, etc., whom</i>	<i>from, etc., which or what</i>

389. Agreement of Relative Pronoun. Note the following sentences :

Puer quem vidēs est Mārcus, the boy whom you see is Mark

Puella quam vidēs est Lesbia, the girl whom you see is Lesbia

The relatives **quem** and **quam** agree with their antecedents **puer** and **puella** in gender and number, but not in case. The antecedents are nominatives, subjects of **est**, and the relatives are accusatives, objects of **vidēs**. The rule for the agreement of the relative is, therefore, as follows :

390. Rule for Agreement of Relative Pronoun. *The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.*

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

391. 1. Mūcius, quī ā Porsennā in iūdicium vocātus est, animum vērum habēbat. 2. Rōma, quam Porsenna expugnāre cupiēbat, inopiā frūmenti labōrābat. 3. Vir cuius vīta prō patriā datur ēgregiam fāmam obtinēbit. 4. Porsenna, quem Mūcius interficere studēbat, magnopere perterritus est. 5. Factum quō Mūcius vītam suam cōservāre potuit ā multis poētis nārrātum est. 6. Quid dē Mūciō putās? Vir clārus meō iūdiō erat Mūcius. 7. Cūr appellātus est Scaevola?

392. 1. Afterwards the camp was moved from that unfavorable place. 2. Only a few hurled their spears, the rest immediately fled. 3. The baggage which was captured was placed in our camp. 4. Will he begin to send back the grain which they have found? I don't think so. 5. He will command the troops which he has summoned to move the baggage across the Rhine.

LESSON LVI

Iacta est ālea — The die is cast¹

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES • THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

393. Interrogatives in English. Interrogative pronouns and adjectives are used in asking questions. In English the interrogative pronouns are *who?* *which?* and *what?* *Which* and *what* are used also as interrogative adjectives.

Who is your friend? (*Who*, interrogative pronoun)

What friends have you? (*What*, interrogative adjective)

394. Interrogatives in Latin. The Latin interrogative pronoun is **quis** (*who?*), **quid** (*what?*). It is declined in the singular as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis , <i>who?</i>	quid , <i>what? which?</i>
GEN.	cuius , <i>whose?</i>	cuius , <i>whose?</i>
DAT.	cui , <i>to or for whom?</i>	cui , <i>to or for which or what?</i>
ACC.	quem , <i>whom?</i>	quid , <i>what? which?</i>
ABL.	quō , <i>from, etc., whom?</i>	quō , <i>from, etc., which or what?</i>

The plural forms are the same as those of the relative (§ 387).

Quis est amicus tuus, *who is your friend?*

Qui sunt amici tui, *who are your friends?*

395. The Latin interrogative adjective is **qui** (or **quis**), **quae**, **quod**. It is declined like the relative (§ 387).

Quōs librōs habēs, *what books have you?*

¹ Words of Julius Cæsar when he crossed the river Rubicon, the boundary of his province, with an armed force. This act amounted to a declaration of war against the Roman government.

396. Ablative Absolute. In English a noun with a participle attached is often used to make a phrase grammatically independent of the main clause: as,

The town having been captured } *the lieutenant fled*
With the town captured

The independent phrase is called the absolute construction. The noun is in the nominative case, and is called the *nominative absolute*.

397. In Latin a noun with attached participle in the absolute construction is put in the ablative, and the construction is called the *ablative absolute*: as,

Oppidō captō, lēgātus fūgit

a. The ablative absolute denotes the circumstances accompanying the action of the main verb, a fundamental ablative relation often expressed in English by the preposition *with*. Note the second form in § 396: *With the town captured, the lieutenant fled*.

398. There is no present participle "being" in Latin. In consequence we often have two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, in the ablative absolute with no participle: as,

fiiliā rēginā, his daughter being queen
pueris tardis, the boys being slow

399. Translation of Ablative Absolute. The absolute construction, rather rare in English, is very common in Latin, and is often best translated by a clause introduced by *when, after, since, though*, etc. Use the form of clause that will best express the thought. Note the following translations of **oppidō captō, lēgātus fūgit**:

when, since, after, although, etc. { *the town was captured, the*
lieutenant fled

400. Rule for Ablative Absolute. *The ablative of a noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be used in the absolute construction to denote attendant circumstances.*

EXERCISES

401. 1. Castris mōtis, crēbra tēla nostris¹ nocēre nōn potuerunt. 2. Eō locō occupātō, reliquae cōpiae periculō liberātae sunt. 3. Agris vāstātis et equis raptis, inopiā frūmenti mox labōrābimus. 4. Sociis nostris interfectis, ā quibus auxilium petēmus? 5. Eō proeliō factō, pauci prōcēdere studēbant. 6. Quōrum² erat imperium Italiae? Imperium Italiae erat Rōmānōrum. 7. Quī Germānōs cōpiās integrās dūcere trāns Rhēnum vetuērunt? Rōmāni. 8. Quibus bona rēgīna pecūniam dari iussit? Miseris captivis. 9. Lēgātō in iūdicium vocātō, populus bellum gerī nōn cupivit.

1. Why dative? See § 224. 2. Predicate genitive of possession, § 150.

402. 1. After the battle was fought,¹ to what famous place did they wish the lieutenant to move the camp? 2. How far away was the camp which you saw? 3. Did the battle rage² a long time? I think so. 4. Whose money did you find? Galba's. 5. After the town had been stormed, did not the people suffer³ the penalty for⁴ (their) wicked deeds? 6. Who can tell the story of Dentatus? I can.

1. Not **pugnō**. 2. Literally, *was it fought*, the word *battle* not being expressed. See § 259, note 3. 3. **dō**, -are. 4. **prō** with the ablative.





THE ARCH OF TITUS AND THE COLOSSEUM

The Arch of Titus was erected in the first century of our era to commemorate the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus. To the same period belongs the Colosseum, the most impressive ruin in Rome, covering about five acres. In it gladiatorial combats were held for nearly five hundred years. There were seats for almost 100,000 spectators and several hundred gladiators or wild beasts could fight in the arena at the same time



SECOND HALF YEAR

Classes should have reached at least this point at the beginning of the second half year. This is suggested not as a maximum, however, but as a minimum. Go as far beyond it as you can consistently with good work, so as to have more time for the reading of the stories at the end of the book before the close of the year.

LESSON LVII

Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō — The safety of the people shall be the supreme law¹

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS

403. Nouns that end in *-is* in the genitive singular are of the Third Declension. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

CLASSES OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

404. Nouns of the third declension are divided into two classes, known as *consonant stems* and *i-stems*.

a. The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are added. When the stem ends in a consonant, the stem is the same as the base. In vowel stems the stem is formed by adding the stem vowel to the base: thus, the base of *hostis*, *enemy*, is *host-*, and the stem is *host + i = hosti-*. Consonant stems and *i-stems* differ somewhat in declension, so the distinction is an important one.

¹ Motto of the state of Missouri, quoted from a famous code of Roman laws.

144 THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS

CONSONANT STEMS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES

405. Masculines and feminines are declined alike. The nominative is often the same as the base or nearly so. Often it is formed by adding *-s* to the base. In that case the added *-s* causes various changes in spelling. Always learn the genitive along with the nominative, for the genitive gives the key to all the other forms.

	cōnsul, M., <i>consul</i> (base cōnsul-)	legiō, F., <i>legion</i> (base legiōn-)	pater, M., <i>father</i> (base patr-)	TERMINA- TIONS
NOM.	cōn'sul	le'giō	pa'ter	—
GEN.	cōn'sulis	legiō'nis	pa'tris	-is
DAT.	cōn'sulī	legiō'nī	pa'trī	-ī
ACC.	cōn'sulem	legiō'nem	pa'trem	-em
ABL.	cōn'sule	legiō'ne	pa'tre	-e
NOM.	cōn'sulēs	legiō'nēs	pa'trēs	-ēs
GEN.	cōn'sulum	legiō'num	pa'trum	-um
DAT.	cōnsu'libus	legiō'nibus	pa'tribus	-ibus
ACC.	cōn'sulēs	legiō'nēs	pa'trēs	-ēs
ABL.	cōnsu'libus	legiō'nibus	pa'tribus	-ibus

	princeps, M., <i>chief</i> (base princip- ¹)	miles, M., <i>soldier</i> (base milit- ¹)	rēx, M., <i>king</i> (base rēg-)	
NOM.	prīn'ceps	miles	rēx	-s
GEN.	prīn'cipis	mī'litis	rēgis	-is
DAT.	prīn'cipī	mī'litī	rēgī	-ī
ACC.	prīn'cipem	mī'litem	rēgem	-em
ABL.	prīn'cipe	mī'lite	rēge	-e

¹ An *i* in the last syllable of the base is often changed in the nominative to *e*: as, *princeps*, base *princip-*; *miles*, base *milit-*.

NOM.	prin'cipēs	mī'litēs	rēgēs	-ēs
GEN.	prin'cipum	mī'litum	rēgum	-um
DAT.	princi'pibus	mili'tibus	rē'gibus	-ibus
ACC.	prin'cipēs	mī'litēs	rēgēs	-ēs
ABL.	princi'pibus	mili'tibus	rē'gibus	-ibus

a. The nominative case termination **s** combines with a final **c** or **g** of the base and makes **x**: thus, **rēg** + **s** gives **rēx**, *king*; and **duc** + **s** gives **dux**, *leader*. A final **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**: thus, **lapid** + **s** gives **lapis**, *stone*; **milet** + **s** gives **mīles**, *soldier*.

b. The base or stem is found by dropping **-is** in the genitive singular.

c. Review § 108 and apply the rules to this declension.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

406. 1. Si militēs rēgis oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, ab legiōnibus Rōmānis vincentur. 2. Cum tēla nostra iacere incipiēmus, paucī resistent; reliquī statim fugient. 3. Militēs nostri ā patre cōsulis dūcēbantur. 4. Multis interfectis, rēx principēs rēgnī lēgātōs¹ misit et pācem petiit. 5. Lēgātis auditis, pāx rēgī data est. 6. Pater cōsulis iussit rēgem in suum rēgnum discēdere nec iniūriam agrīs nostrīs facere. 7. Rēx, qui legiōnēs nostrās magnopere timuit, imperiō² Rōmānō pāruiit et statim discessit. 8. Numquam postea bellum cum legiōnibus nostris gerere poterit.

1. In apposition with **principēs**. 2. Why dative? See § 224.

407. 1. The consul commanded the soldiers to move the camp quickly from that unfavorable place. 2. The legions could not fight bravely there. 3. The king, who was eager to make peace, sent ambassadors. 4. After peace had been made,¹ the chiefs forbade the king's father to call out the legions.

1. Ablative absolute.

LESSON LVIII

SI quaeris pēnīnsulam amoenam, circūspice — If you are
seeking a charming peninsula, look about you¹

THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (CONTINUED)

408. Neuter Consonant Stems. There are many neuter consonant stems. The nominative singular generally differs from the base. Thus, bases in *-in-* have final *-en* in the nominative, and bases in *-er-* or *-or-* generally have *-us*.

	flūmen, N., <i>river</i> (base flūmin-)	tempus, N., <i>time</i> (base tempor-)	caput, N., <i>head</i> (base capit-)	TERMINA- TIONS
NOM.	flū'men	tem'pus	ca'put	—
GEN.	flū'minis	tem'poris	ca'pitis	-is
DAT.	flū'minī	tem'porī	ca'pitī	-ī
ACC.	flū'men	tem'pus	ca'put	—
ABL.	flū'mine	tem'pore	ca'pite	-e
NOM.	flū'mina	tem'pora	ca'pita	-a
GEN.	flū'minum	tem'porum	ca'pitum	-um
DAT.	flūmi'nibus	tempo'ribus	capi'tibus	-ibus
ACC.	flū'mina	tem'pora	ca'pita	-a
ABL.	flūmi'nibus	tempo'ribus	capi'tibus	-ibus

a. These neuter nouns, like all other neuters, have the nominative and accusative alike, which in the plural end in *-a* (§ 108. *a*).

b. Some neuters of this class have passed into English without change: as, *acumen*, *omen*, *specimen*. A few have kept the Latin form also in the plural: as, *genus*, plural *genera*; *stamen*, plural *stamens* and *stamina*, with a difference in meaning. Note, too, the plurals *viscera* and *capita*.

¹ Motto of the state of Michigan.

MĀRCUS ET QUĪNTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

409. QUĪNTUS. Quid audivisti, Mārce, dē magnō bellō quod cōsul noster in Germāniā nunc gerit? Diū patria in periculis mediis fuit et timidi animī perterrērī incipiunt.

MĀRCUS. Bona fāma vēnit. Cōsul magnās cōpiās Germānōrum crēbris proeliis superāvit atque eōs trāns flūmen Rhēnum ēgit. Rēx Germānōrum, vir barbarus et inimicus, in silvās fūgit. Et¹ māter et soror eius, quae in castris Germānis erant, captae sunt.

Q. Certē ea fāma, sī vēra est, grāta populō Rōmānō erit. Quō modo (*how*) dē victōriā audivisti?

M. Et pater et frāter meus cum legiōnibus pugnant. Hodiē² litterās³ ā patre accēpimus.

Q. Certē animum meum cōfirmāvistī. Sed tempus fugit. Valē.⁴

1. et . . . et, both . . . and. 2. Today. 3. litterae, -ārum, F., letter.
4. Good-by.

410. 1. When kings ruled the Romans, the times were evil.
2. Rome, the capital of Italy, has a well-known river. 3. After the king was killed,¹ both his son and his brother begged for peace. 4. Did not the Romans capture both his mother and his sister?² I think so. 5. After the ambassadors had been received,¹ the chiefs who were eager for war³ fled.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. See § 251. 3. What case? See § 223.

LESSON LIX

Cēdant arma togae — Let arms yield to peace¹

RŌMULUS ET REMUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 371. Decline all the nouns, adjectives, and pronouns in the story, and give the principal parts of all the verbs.

411. Rōmulus et Remus erant filii Mārtis,¹ deī belli. Eōrum māter erat Rhea Silvia, filia Numitōris,² qui rēx Albānōrum³ antea fuerat, sed ā malō frātre Amūliō pulsus erat. Itaque Amūlius, qui rēgnum Albānōrum tum obtinēbat, puerōs magnopere timuit et eōs interficere cōnsilium cēpit. 5 Rhea vitam filiōrum suōrum cōservāre studēbat, sed rēx iussit servum eōs in flūmen dēicere. Imperiō rēgis autem servus nōn pāruit, sed puerōs in arcā lignēā⁴ posuit, quae aquā⁵ flūminis sine periculō vehī⁶ poterat. Mox pueri ad ripam flūminis vecti sunt.⁶ Ibi lupa,⁷ quae nōn longē aberat, 10 puerōs audivit atque cūrāvit.⁸ Postea pāstor⁹ benignus¹⁰ eōs invēnit et in casam parvam portāvit.

Post longum tempus Rōmulus et Remus, qui viri iam erant, et malum rēgem interfēcērunt et rēgnum Numitōri reddidērunt. Tum auxiliō sociōrum suōrum novum oppidum 15 ad (*near*) flūmen posuērunt. Eius flūminis nōmen est Tiberis.¹¹ Eius oppidi nōmen est Rōma. Rōma posita est in eō locō ubi (*where*) Rōmulus et Remus inventi erant.

1. Mārs, genitive Mārtis. 2. Numitor, brother of Amulius, was the dethroned king of Alba, at that time the largest town in Latium. 3. Albānī, -ōrum, M., the Albans. 4. in arcā lignēā, in a wooden chest. 5. Ablative of means. 6. vehō, -ere, carry. 7. lupa, -ae, F., wolf. 8. cūrō, -āre, care for. 9. pāstor, -ō'ris, M., shepherd. 10. benignus, -a, -um, kind. 11. Tiberis, the Tiber.

¹ Motto of the state of Wyoming. Literally, *Let arms yield to the toga*. The toga, the dress of the civilian, was a sign of peace.

LESSON LX

Virtūte et armīs — By valor and arms¹

THE THIRD DECLENSION, I-STEMS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES

412. Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined alike. As distinguished from consonant stems, they have *-ium* in the genitive plural and *-is* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural.

	caedēs, F., slaughter (stem <i>caedi-</i> , base <i>caed-</i>)		hostis, M., enemy (stem <i>hosti-</i> , base <i>host-</i>)	
NOM.	caedēs	caedēs	hostis	hostēs
GEN.	caedis	cae'dium	hostis	hos'tium
DAT.	caedi	cae'dibus	hosti	hos'tibus
ACC.	caedem	caedis, -ēs	hostem	hostis, -ēs
ABL.	caede	cae'dibus	hoste	hos'tibus

	urbs, F., city (stem <i>urbi-</i> , base <i>urb-</i>)		cohors, F., cohort (stem <i>cohorti-</i> , base <i>cohort-</i>)	
NOM.	urbs	urbēs	co'hors	cohor'tēs
GEN.	urbis	ur'bium	cohor'tis	cohor'tium
DAT.	urbi	ur'bibus	cohor'ti	cohor'tibus
ACC.	urbem	urbis, -ēs	cohor'tem	cohor'tis, -ēs
ABL.	urbe	ur'bibus	cohor'te	cohor'tibus

a. A few nouns have either *-i* or *-e* in the ablative singular: as, *civis* (abl. *civī* or *cive*), *ignis* (abl. *ignī* or *igne*), *nāvis* (abl. *nāvī* or *nāve*).

b. A number of Latin and Greek nouns ending in *-is* or *-x* have passed into English without change and form their plural in *-es*: as, *analysis, analyses*; *appendix, appendices*; *axis, axes*; *basis, bases*; *crisis, crises*; *hypothesis, hypotheses*; *index, indices*; *oasis, oases*; *parenthesis, parentheses*; *thesis, theses*; *vertex, vertices*.

¹ Motto of the University of Mississippi.

413. Masculine and feminine *i*-stems include the following:

a. Nouns in **-ēs** or **-is** with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative.

Thus **caedēs**, **caedis**, is an *i*-stem, but **miles**, **militis**, is a consonant stem.

b. Nouns of more than one syllable in **-ns** or **-rs**: as, **cliēns**, **cohors**.

c. Nouns of one syllable in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant: as, **urbs**, **arx**.

RŌMĀNĪ ET SABĪNĪ

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 371

414. Erant in urbe novā multī virī, sed mulierēs paucae. Itaque Rōmulus spectācula¹ pūblica comparāvit et Sabīnōs,² finitimōs suōs, invitāvit.³ Magnus numerus Sabīnōrum cum filiābus ad spectācula Rōmāna vēnit. Tum signō datō⁴ Rōmānī filiās Sabīnōrum rapuērunt. Statim Sabīnī cohortēs 5 ad bellum ēvocāvērunt, et iam caedēs misera nōn longē aberat. Sed mulierēs, filiae Sabīnōrum, quās Rōmānī in mātirimōnium dūxerant, in medium proelium properāvērunt et bellum prohibuērunt.

1. **spectāculum**, -ī, *n.*, *spectacle, game*. 2. **Sabīnī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *the Sabines*, the nearest neighbors of Rome. 3. **invitō**, -āre, *invite*. 4. Ablative absolute.

415. 1. The king had been driven from his realm by his wicked brother. 2. Where did Romulus build the new city? 3. After the city was built,¹ whose daughters did the Romans marry? 4. The neighbors commanded the Romans to give back the women, but could not persuade them.² 5. The cohorts of the enemy were thrown down from the rampart with great slaughter.³

1. Ablative absolute. 2. What case? See § 224. 3. What construction? See § 168.



MULIERES BELLUM PROHIBUERUNT

LESSON LXI

Deus dītat — God enriches¹

THE THIRD DECLENSION, I-STEMS, NEUTERS

416. Neuter i-stems end in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** in the nominative singular, in **-ī** in the ablative singular, and have an **-i-** in every form of the plural. They are declined as follows :

	mare, N., sea (stem mari- , base mar-)	animal, N., animal (stem animāli- , base animāl-)	calcar, N., spur (stem calcāri- , base calcār-)	TERMINA- TIONS
NOM.	ma're	an'imal	cal'car	—
GEN.	ma'ris	animā'lis	calcā'ris	-is
DAT.	ma'rī	animā'li	calcā'rī	-ī
ACC.	ma're	an'imal	cal'car	—
ABL.	ma'rī	animā'li	calcā'rī	-ī
NOM.	ma'ria	animā'lia	calcā'ria	-ia
GEN.	—	animā'lium	calcā'rium	-ium
DAT.	ma'ribus	animā'libus	calcā'ribus	-ibus
ACC.	ma'ria	animā'lia	calcā'ria	-ia
ABL.	ma'ribus	animā'libus	calcā'ribus	-ibus

a. In the nominative and accusative singular the final **-ī** of the stem is either dropped or changed to **-e**.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 371

417. Equitēs Rōmānī calcāria magna gerēbant et equī eōrum erant pulchra animālia. 2. Ōra Galliae maribus et insulis continētur. 3. Gallia multās civitatēs et multās linguās habet.

¹ Motto of the state of Arizona, whose wealth consists of minerals.

4. Principēs civitātis, quī bellō semper studēbant, lēgātōs ad Rōmānōs remitti vetuērunt. 5. Vidistīne animālīa magna quae in mediō mari habitant? Pauca vidi. 6. Num calcāria quae eques gerit equō nocēbunt? Nōn nocēbunt. 7. Barbarī cōpiās suās trāns flūmen dūxērunt, sed lēgātus iussit cohortēs castrīs¹ continēri. 8. Linguae Latinae magnā diligentīā studēmus. 9. Pōnite castra celeriter, hostēs impedimenta iam cēpērunt.

1. Latin, *by camp*, ablative of means.

418. 1. Do their horsemen wear spurs? I think so. 2. If the danger is great, we can keep the soldiers in camp.¹ 3. We saw many large animals in the forests of Germany. 4. To sail through the deep seas is pleasing to sailors.² 5. The Romans found savage peoples and strange³ languages in those states.

1. Compare § 417. 7. 2. See § 130. 3. *novus*, -a, -um.



THE TIBER AT THE FOOT OF THE AVENTINE

LESSON LXII

Nil sine nūmine — Nothing without divine guidance¹.

THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR NOUNS

419. A few nouns of the third declension are somewhat irregular in inflection. Among these are the following:

	homō, M., <i>man</i>	vis, F., <i>force</i>	iter, N., <i>march</i>
NOM.	ho'mō	vis	iter
GEN.	ho'minis	vis (<i>rare</i>)	iti'neris
DAT.	ho'minī	vī (<i>rare</i>)	iti'nerī
ACC.	ho'minem	vim	iter
ABL.	ho'mine	vī	iti'nere
NOM.	ho'minēs	vī'rēs	iti'nera
GEN.	ho'minum	vī'rium	iti'nerum
DAT.	homi'nibus	vī'ribus	itine'ribus
ACC.	ho'minēs	vī'ris, -ēs	iti'nera
ABL.	homi'nibus	vī'ribus	itine'ribus

a. The accusative plural **vīris** may be distinguished from the dative and ablative plural **viris** (from **vir**) by the length of the **i** in the first syllable.

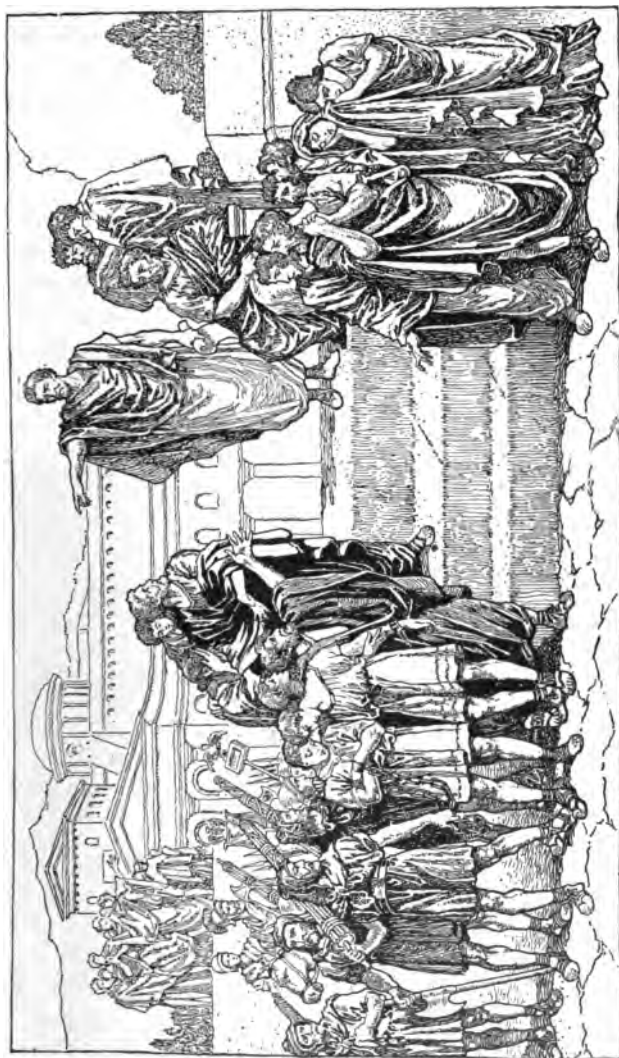
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

DĒ BRŪTŌ PRĪMŌ CŌNSULE

420. Ōlim Rōmānī ā rēgibus regēbantur, sed post multōs annōs rēgēs vī et armis pulsī sunt atque cōsulibūš imperium commissum est. Primus cōsul erat Brūtus, quem ēgregiā virtūte populus amābat. Tamen erant in urbe quidam¹ malī

¹ Motto of the state of Colorado.



BRŪTUS FĪLIŌS SUŌS INTERFICĪ IUBET

hominēs quī imperiō cōsulis inimicī erant ac rēgēs reduci cupiēbant. In eōrum numerō erant filii Brūtī. Itaque Brūtus filiōs suōs in iūdicium vocāvit et iussit eōs interfici. Quid dē eō exemplō virtūtis Rōmānae putās?

1. *quidam, some, certain.*

421. 1. The men who were in the boat were overcome by the violence of the sea. 2. A few who were saved will march to the nearest city. 3. After the battle had begun,¹ our soldiers by their great valor quickly conquered the remainder of the enemy.² 4. Nevertheless, the enemy did not flee, but led their forces back into camp.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Latin idiom, *the remaining enemy.*



ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

LESSON LXIII

Iūstitia omnibus—Justice to all¹

ORPHEUS ET EURYDICĒ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

422. Poëtae multās fābulās dē Orpheō, sacrō vāte,¹ narrant. Eum etiam animālia et arborēs² libenter³ audiēbant. Orpheus puellam pulchram, Eurydicē,⁴ in mātirimōnium dūxerat, sed mors eam rapuit et Orpheus vir miser relictus est. Tum Orpheus dolōrem⁵ suum continēre nōn poterat et ausus est ad inferōs⁶ dēscendere.⁷ Ibi Plūtōnem,⁸ rēgem inferōrum, petiit et dixit: “Cūr, Plūtō, eam iniūriam miserō virō fēcisti? Certē nōn aequum est Eurydicē morti darī. Eam reducere studeō.” Tum dulcissimē⁹ cecinit¹⁰ et etiam Plūtōnī persuāsit. Tamen Plūtō eum spectāre Eurydicē vetuit¹⁰ et dixit, “Sī in eō locō eam spectābis, postea eam vidēbis numquam.” Iam salūs nōn longē aberat. Sed Orpheus resistere nōn potuit et Eurydicē spectāvit. Statim magnā vī Eurydicē rapta est et numquam est reddita.

1. vātēs, -is, M. and F., *bard, inspired singer*. 2. arbor, -oris, F., *tree*. 3. Gladly. 4. *Eu-ryd'i-ce*. This is the accusative case. 5. dolor, -ōris, M., *grief*. 6. inferī, -ōrum, M., *shades, lower world*. 7. dēscendō, -ere, *descend*. 8. Plūtō, -ōnis, M., *Pluto*. 9. Very sweetly. 10. Perfect of canō, -ere, *sing*.

423. Answer the following questions in Latin :

1. Quī dē Orpheō fābulās narrant?
2. Quam puellam Orpheus in mātirimōnium dūxit?
3. Cūr mala erat fortūna Orpheī?
4. Quid Orpheus facere studuit?
5. Quid Plūtō vetuit?
6. Num Orpheus puellam servāre potuit?

¹ Motto of the District of Columbia.

LESSON LXIV

Alis volat propriis — She flies with her own wings¹

WORD FORMATION

424. Selecting appropriate prefixes from § 341, write a list of English derivatives from the following verbs. Define the derivatives, looking them up in the English dictionary if necessary.

putō	agō	habēō
moveō	parō	pellō
capiō	pugnō	teneō

425. Latin Suffixes. Many Latin words are formed from others by means of suffixes. Thus :

civis , <i>citizen</i>	civitās , <i>state</i>
adveniō , <i>come to</i>	adventus , <i>arrival</i>
capiō , <i>take</i>	captivus , <i>captive</i>
aequus , <i>level</i>	aequō , <i>make level</i>
liber , <i>free</i>	libertās , <i>freedom</i>
magnus , <i>great</i>	magnitūdō , <i>greatness</i>
pecus , <i>cattle</i>	pecūnia , <i>wealth</i>
vir , <i>man</i>	virtūs , <i>manliness, courage</i>

We see, too, that by the use of suffixes different parts of speech are derived from each other, such as verbs from nouns, nouns from verbs, nouns from adjectives, etc. Some of the suffixes are readily recognized and have a uniform and easily defined meaning. We shall study some of the more important ones later on (§§ 626–629). A knowledge of prefixes and suffixes will greatly increase your Latin and English vocabulary, as it will enable you to grasp the meaning of many words without consulting a dictionary.

¹ Motto of the state of Oregon.

426. English Suffixes. Suffixes are equally important in English. Many of them are of Latin origin and have the same meaning as in Latin. As an illustration of the part that suffixes play in the making of English words, note the following combinations of *port-*, 'carry,' from Latin *portō* :

porter portly portage portal portable

Using prefixes as well, we get a much larger number : as,

comport	unexportable	importation
comportable	exportation	importer
deport	exporter	reimport
deportable	reexport	report
deportation	import	reportable
department	importable	unreportable
export	important	reporter
exportable	unimportant	etc.



Eighth Review, Lessons LVII-LXIV, §§ 774-777



A ROMAN STREET SCENE

LESSON LXV

Tē Deum laudāmus — We praise Thee, O God

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, THREE ENDINGS

427. All adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like **bonus, pulcher, liber**) or of the third declension.

428. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have **i**-stems and are declined like nouns with **i**-stems (§ 412).

429. Classes of Adjectives. Adjectives of the third declension are classified as follows:

Class I. Adjectives of three endings — a different form in the nominative for each gender.

Class II. Adjectives of two endings — the nominative of the masculine and feminine alike, the neuter different.

Class III. Adjectives of one ending — the nominative masculine, feminine, and neuter all alike.

430. Adjectives of the third declension in **-er** have three endings; those in **-is** have two; the others have one.

CLASS I

431. Adjectives of three endings are declined as follows:

acer, acris, acre (stem **ācri-**, base **ācr-**), *sharp, keen, eager*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācre m	ācre m	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

432. 1. Rōmānī ācre proelium cum cōpiis pedestribus eque-
tribusque hostium facient. 2. Proeliō commissō equitēs nostri
cōpiās equestrēs hostium in fugam dare cupient. 3. Hostēs
magnā virtūte pugnābunt, tamen vincentur. 4. Mulierēs puellae-
que, quae proelium spectant, aut capientur aut salūtem fugā
petent. 5. Castra nostra in aequō locō posita sunt. 6. Firmum
praesidium ante castra locātum erat. 7. Cōpiae pedestrēs per
silvās magnīs itineribus¹ reductae erant. 8. Hominēs eius civi-
tātis bona tēla habēbant et vāllum magnā vī oppugnāvērunt.

1. *magna itinera, forced marches.*

433. 1. The sailors of Britain are not timid, and do not fear
death. 2. But with eager hearts they dare to sail even through
the midst of the perils of the sea. 3. Leaving safety behind,¹
they put the enemy to flight. 4. The spurs which the cavalry
forces wore² were new. 5. The men had swift horses, and
sought safety in flight.³ 6. Either kill the captive or let him go.⁴

1. Ablative absolute. 2. *gerō, -ere*. 3. Latin, *by flight*. 4. Imperative
of *dīmittō, -ere*.

434. Derivation. Define the following English words and
give the Latin word to which each is related :

dislocate	dependent	disintegrate	dispute
prohibition	project	legation	temporal
amplify	official	minimize	invincible

LESSON LXVI

Christō et Ecclesiāe — For Christ and the Church¹

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, TWO ENDINGS

CLASS II

435. Adjectives of two endings are declined as follows :

omnis, omne (stem **omni-**, base **omn-**), *every, all*²

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
NOM.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT.	omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus
ACC.	omnem	omne	omnis, -ēs	omnia
ABL.	omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

436. 1. Brūtus, primus cōsul, suōs filiōs in iūdicium vocāvit. 2. Brūtus eōs ad certam mortem dūcī iussit. 3. Filii cōsulis in¹ salūtem commūnem cōsilia facere incēperant. 4. Itaque coācti sunt grave supplicium dare. 5. Brūtus erat certus amicus patriae et omnia² prō bonō publicō faciēbat. 6. Etiam Rōmānis id grave supplicium nōn grātum erat. 7. Nōn omnēs Brūtō similēs esse possunt. 8. Rōmāni omnibus terris multa exempla virtūtis vērae dedērunt.

1. *Against.* 2. Adjective used as a noun. This usage is very common.

¹ Motto of Harvard University.

² *Omnis* is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.

437. 1. The languages of Gaul and of Italy were not at all similar. 2. The wars which the Romans waged with the Gauls were long and severe. 3. The fortune of war is not always sure. 4. All men are compelled to defend the common safety, or the country cannot be preserved. 5. Our courageous soldiers with their swift horses will keep¹ the violence of the enemy from our towns.

1. *prohibeō, -ēre.*

LESSON LXVII

Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur—Birds of a feather flock together¹

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, ONE ENDING

CLASS III

438. Adjectives of one ending are declined as follows :

pār (stem **pari-**, base **par-**), *equal*

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
NOM.	pār	pār	parēs	paria
GEN.	paris	paris	parium	parium
DAT.	pari	pari	paribus	paribus
ACC.	parem	pār	paris, -ēs	paria
ABL.	pari	pari	paribus	paribus

a. Some adjectives of one ending have *-e* in the ablative singular.

b. Adjectives declined like **pār** do not always end in *-r*, but have various other endings, such as *-x*, *-ns*, *-es*, etc. The final letter of the base is shown by the genitive : as, **fēlix**, **fēlicis** ; **āmēns**, **āmentis** ; etc.

¹ Literally, *Equals most easily assemble with equals*. A Latin proverb, quoted by Cicero in his well-known essay on old age.

MIDAS, THE KING OF THE GOLDEN TOUCH¹

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

439. Ōlim erat rēx cuius nōmen erat Midās. Ei deus Bacchus erat amicus et dixerat: "Tibi,¹ rēx, beneficium dare studeō. Id quod maximē petis, tibi dabō." Sed sapientia rēgis pār bonae fortunae nōn erat et respondit, "Cupiō omnia quae corpore meō tangam² in aurum³ mūtārī."⁴ Statim rēx accēpit dōnum⁵ quod petiverat. Saxum⁶ tangit et saxum in aurum solidum⁷ mūtātur. Tum arborem⁸ tangit, et arbor est similis aurō. Rēx gaudet⁹ et deō grātiās agit. Sed cum cibum¹⁰ et aquam tangit, et cibis et aqua in aurum mūtantur. Magnopere perterritus Midās mortem¹⁰ certam timuit et deum vocāvit: "Servā, servā, Bacche. Dā auxilium miserō. Dōnum⁵ tuum nōn est beneficium, sed grave supplicium." Bacchus audivit et iussit eum in flūmine corpus suum lavere.¹¹ Rēx pārui et liberātus est. Etiam nunc harēna¹² eius flūminis est aurea.¹³ 15

1. tibi, to you. 2. Future of tangō, -ere, touch. 3. aurum, -i, N., gold. 4. mūtō, -āre, change. 5. dōnum, -i, N., gift. 6. saxum, -i, N., stone. 7. solidus, -a, -um, solid. 8. arbor, -oris, F., tree. 9. gaudeō, -ēre, rejoice. 10. cibus, -i, M., food. 11. lavō, -ere, wash. 12. harēna, -ae, F., sand. 13. aureus, -a, -um, golden.

440. Give the principal parts of all the familiar verbs used in § 439. Decline the nouns *aqua*, *beneficium*, *rēx*, *nōmen*, *mors*, *corpus*. Decline the adjectives *certus*, *similis*.

¹ Read "The Golden Touch" in Hawthorne's "The Wonder-Book."



ROMAN SILVER CUPS

LESSON LXVIII

Excelsior — Higher¹

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES • THE COMPARATIVE WITH *QUAM*

441. Comparison of Adjectives in English. In English, adjectives regularly change their form to express quality in different degrees. This is called comparison. There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*. The usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *-er* for the comparative and *-est* for the superlative: as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Sometimes we use the adverbs *more* and *most*: as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

442. Comparison of Adjectives in Latin. In Latin, as in English, adjectives are regularly compared by adding suffixes. From the base of the positive the comparative is formed by adding *-ior*, masculine and feminine, and *-ius*, neuter; the superlative, by adding *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*. Thus, *altus* (base *alt-*), *high*, and *gravis* (base *grav-*), *heavy*, are compared as follows:

<i>altus</i> , -a, -um, <i>high</i>	<i>altior</i> , <i>altius</i> , <i>higher</i>	<i>altissimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>highest</i>
<i>gravis</i> , grave, <i>heavy</i>	<i>gravior</i> , <i>gravius</i> , <i>heavier</i>	<i>gravissimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>heaviest</i>

443. Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus*, *-rima*, *-rimum* to the nominative masculine of the positive. Thus, *acer* (base *acr-*),

¹ Motto of the state of New York.

sharp; **pulcher** (base **pulchr-**), *pretty*; and **liber** (base **liber-**), *free*, have the following comparative and superlative forms:

acer , <i>sharp</i>	acrior , <i>sharper</i>	acerrimus , -a, -um, <i>sharpest</i>
pulcher , <i>pretty</i>	pulchrior , <i>prettier</i>	pulcherrimus , -a, -um, <i>prettiest</i>
liber , <i>free</i>	liberior , <i>freer</i>	liberrimus , -a, -um, <i>freest</i>

444. The superlative is often translated by *very*: as, **altissimus**, *very high*.

445. Comparative with *quam*. In English two objects are compared by the use of a comparative followed by the conjunction *than*: as, *the ditch is wider than the wall*. In this sentence *ditch* is nominative, subject of *is*; and *wall* is also nominative, subject of *is* understood. That is to say, the two objects compared are in the same case. In Latin the word for *than* is **quam** and the usage is the same. Thus the sentence above becomes **fossa est lātiōr quam mūrus**.

446. Rule for Comparative with *quam*. *In comparisons with *quam* the two objects compared are in the same case.*

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

447. 1. Cōsul est aequior quam rēx. **2.** Supplicium rēgis erat gravissimum. **3.** Equus est celerior quam homō. **4.** Sed equus nōn est omnium animālium celerrimum.¹ **5.** Virtūs Scaevolae, qui ignem et mortem nōn timēbat, erat clārissima. **6.** Quis erat fortior quam Thēseus, qui puerōs puellāsque patriae servavit? **7.** Viae Rōmānae erant longissimae et per multās terrās patēbant. **8.** Iter quod per silvās dūcēbat erat difficile. **9.** Castra

in locō inīquissimō posita erant. 10. Id iter erat brevius et facilius. 11. Mare est altius quam flūmen.

1. Neuter, agreeing with **animal** understood.

448. 1. The wall of that town was very high. 2. Galba's horse is more beautiful and swifter than mine. 3. Those soldiers are very eager. 4. That route was longer and more difficult. 5. The longest rivers are not always the deepest. 6. The fire which the goddess gave to the queen was very sacred.

449. Compare the adjectives **brevis, fortis, nōtus, gravis, crēber, miser, grātus, longus, tardus, integer.**

LESSON LXIX

Silent lēgēs inter arma — Laws are silent amid arms¹

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

450. Declension of Comparatives. Comparatives are adjectives of the third declension. They are of two endings (§ 429) and are declined as follows :

altior, higher

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
GEN.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
DAT.	altiōri	altiōri	altiōribus	altiōribus
ACC.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
ABL.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

451. Ablative of Measure of Difference. In the sentence *Sextus is a foot taller than Julia* the word *foot* expresses the measure of difference in height between Sextus and Julia.

¹ From Cicero, the greatest Roman orator.

The Latin form of expression would be *Sextus is taller by a foot than Julia*, **Sextus est longior pede quam Iūlia**, and the ablative **pede** is called the *ablative of the measure of difference*.

452. Rule for Ablative of Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

a. The neuter ablatives **multō**, *by much*; **nihilō**, *by nothing*; and **paulō**, *by a little*, are very common in this construction.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

453. 1. Corpus hominis est multō levius quam corpus equī. 2. Inter ea oppida iter est nihilō facilius. 3. Puellae sunt paulō breviōrēs quam puerī. 4. Mea poena est multō gravior quam tua. 5. Cōpiae pedestrēs erant nihilō fortiōrēs quam cōpiae equestrēs. 6. Nihil grātius quam fābulam dē virtūte Dentāti audivimus. 7. Estne tua soror brevior quam mea? Longior pede ea est. 8. Animālia vidimus quae multō tardiōra sunt quam equī. 9. Urbe expugnātā, filia pulcherrima rēgīnae inter ignēs et arma relictā est. 10. Oppidum vestrum ab eō locō magnō spatiō abest.

454. 1. The marches which the commander made were neither very long nor very swift. 2. The commander thanked the bravest legion most of all. 3. Your spears are no¹ longer and no lighter than mine. 4. Between the Gauls and the Germans very frequent wars were waged. 5. That river is no¹ wider, but a foot¹ deeper. 6. Nothing is more beautiful than Rome, the capital of Italy. 7. We are a long distance² from Italy.

1. Ablative of measure of difference. 2. Latin, *distant by a great space*.

455. Decline the comparatives occurring in § 453.

LESSON LXX

Lūx et vērītās — Light and truth¹

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*

456. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison: as, *good, better, best; much, more, most*. So some Latin adjectives are compared irregularly. Among these are the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

457. The following adjectives, with regular comparative, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficillior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimillior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

458. Declension of *plūs*. *Plūs, more*, in the singular is a neuter noun. The plural (*more, many, several*) is used as an adjective. It is declined as follows:

¹ Motto of Yale University, the University of Indiana, the University of North Carolina, and the University of Montana.

170 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	NEUT. NOUN	MASC. AND FEM. ADJ.	NEUT. ADJ.
NOM.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
ABL.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

459. 1. Reliqui hostēs, qui proelium committere audēbant, cōpiis nostris nōn parēs erant atque in maximam silvam fūgērunt. 2. Libertās est multō melior quam servitūs. 3. Nihil peius quam servitūs esse potest. 4. Lēgēs quibus¹ pārēmus sunt lēgibus² Rōmānis nōn dissimillimae. 5. Dux vetuit plūrēs captivōs dimitti. 6. Linguae Galliae et Britanniae erant similimae. 7. Fortēs mulierēs difficillimum iter aut pericula plūrima silvārum nōn timuērunt. 8. Rēx pessimus ampliōrem pecūniam petiit, sed populus plūs dare nōn potuit. 9. Minōrēs principēs cīvītātis maximam auctōritātem nōn habēbant. 10. Agris³ igni vāstātis, dux oppida maxima oppugnāre incēpit.

1. What case? See § 224. 2. Dative, § 130. 3. Ablative absolute.

460. Among the Romans the consuls had the greatest authority. 2. After the kings¹ were driven out, greater liberty was given to the people. 3. The smallest states often have the bravest men and the best women. 4. The shortest route was much more difficult than the longest. 5. After that time the captives feared either certain death or the worst slavery. 6. Your laws and your languages are very different.²

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Express by the superlative.

LESSON LXXI

Omnia praeclāra rāra — All the best things are rare¹

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

461. Formation of Adverbs. An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, and generally answers the question *How? Where? When? Why? To what extent?*

462. Rule for Adverbs. *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

463. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives. In English they usually end in *-ly*: as, adjective *brave*, adverb *bravely*. Latin adverbs, too, have certain endings. They are compared, but not declined.

464. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the adjective.

ADJ.	<i>lātus, wide</i>	<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	<i>liber, free</i>
ADV.	<i>lātē, widely</i>	<i>pulchrē, beautifully</i>	<i>liberē, freely</i>

465. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are generally formed by adding *-iter* to the base of the adjective.

ADJ.	<i>ācer, sharp</i>	<i>celer, swift</i>	<i>brevis, brief</i>
ADV.	<i>ācritēr, sharply</i>	<i>celeritēr, swiftly</i>	<i>brevitēr, briefly</i>

466. Comparison of Adverbs. Adverbs are compared like the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in *-ius* and the superlative in *-ē*.

¹ From Cicero, Rome's foremost man of letters.

172 FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>lātē, widely</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>pulchrē, beautifully</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>liberē, freely</i>	<i>liberius</i>	<i>liberrimē</i>
<i>ācritē, sharply</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>similiter, similarly</i>	<i>similius</i>	<i>simillimē</i>

467. Using the regular terminations, form adverbs from the following adjectives, and compare them :

<i>longus</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>altus</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>celer</i>
<i>tardus</i>	<i>similis</i>	<i>malus</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>fortis</i>

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

468. 1. Dux tardissimē prōcessit quod nihil dē nātūrā loci cognōverat. 2. Tum iussit equitēs celerrimē discēdere et hominēs ex proximō oppidō rapere. 3. Post breve tempus equitēs septem¹ hominēs cēpērunt et eōs ad ducem addūxērunt. 4. Dux cupīvit captīvōs nārārē omnia quae cognōverant. 5. Is captivīs dixit: "Dicite liberrimē, hominēs. Si ita nōn faciētis, gravissimum supplicium dabitis." 6. Tamen septem captivī nihil respondērunt et certam mortem fortissimē exspectāvērunt.

1. Count seven in Latin; see § 283.

469. 1. When that plan¹ became known, their² allies quickly deserted the city and sought safety in flight.³ 2. The commander had been very severely wounded by a spear. 3. The soldiers advanced more slowly because they were waiting for fresh troops. 4. The captives were quickly brought to the commander. 5. He wished to learn the nature of the place. 6. A few¹ being lightly wounded, the rest did not advance farther.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Not *suus*. 3. Latin, *by flight*.

LESSON LXXII

Salūs populī — The safety of the people¹

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (CONCLUDED)

470. Case Forms used as Adverbs. The accusative or the ablative neuter singular of some adjectives is used adverbially. Thus the comparative adverb in *-ius* is really the accusative neuter singular of the comparative adjective. Other examples are the following :

facile, easily, accusative of *facilis, easy*
plūrimum, very much, accusative of *plūrimus, most*
primum, first, accusative of *primus, first*
primō, at first, ablative of *primus, first*

471. The following adverbs are formed irregularly and have irregular comparison :

<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius, better</i>	<i>optimē, best</i>
<i>diū, long (time)</i>	<i>diūtius, longer</i>	<i>diūtissimē, longest</i>
<i>magnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>maximē, most</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius, oftener</i>	<i>saepissimē, oftenest</i>

a. Note the difference in meaning between *diū, long* in time, and *longē, long* in space.

472. In English, adverbs and adjectives are often compared by means of *more* and *most*. So some Latin adverbs and adjectives are compared by means of *magis, more*, and *maximē, most*: as, *idōneus, suitable*; *magis idōneus, more suitable*; *maximē idōneus, most suitable*.

a. The Latin comparative sometimes means *quite* or *somewhat*, and the superlative is often best translated by *very* or *exceedingly*.

¹ Motto of the University of Missouri.

COLLOQUIUM — DUO DISCIPULI

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

473. PRIMUS. Habēsne multās fābulās in tuō librō?

SECUNDUS. Plūrimās fābulās habeo. Omnēs fābulae sunt bonae; sed optima fābula, meō iūdicīō, est fābula dē Thēseō. Quam facile et bene pericula maxima superāvit!

P. Certē facta Thēseī sunt nōtissima, tamen fābula Mānlī, viri clārissimī, meum animum magis tenet. Is Rōmam ā Gallis quī mūrōs ascenderant servāvit. Facta Mānlī sunt maiōra quam facta Thēseī.

S. Minimē ita putō. Quid autem dē Scaevolā dicam? Nōne erat eius virtūs multō magis ēgregia?

P. Id est vērum, nam is ignem mortemque nōn timēbat. Tamen Dentātus maiōra negōtia, primō in bellō deinde in pāce, suscepit ac saepius patriam servāvit. Itaque Dentātus erat maior quam Scaevola.

S. Iam dē quattuor viris fāmae nōtissimīs diximus. Primus¹ erat Thēseus, secundus erat Mānlius, tertius erat Scaevola, quārtus erat Dentātus. Dē Brūtō autem, primō cōsule, nōn diximus. Sed dē omnibus dicere nōn possumus. Diūtius manēre nōn possum. Frāter meus mē² exspectat et villā nostrā magnō spatiō absum.

1. Learn the ordinal numerals, *first, second, third, fourth*, as they appear here. 2. *Me*.

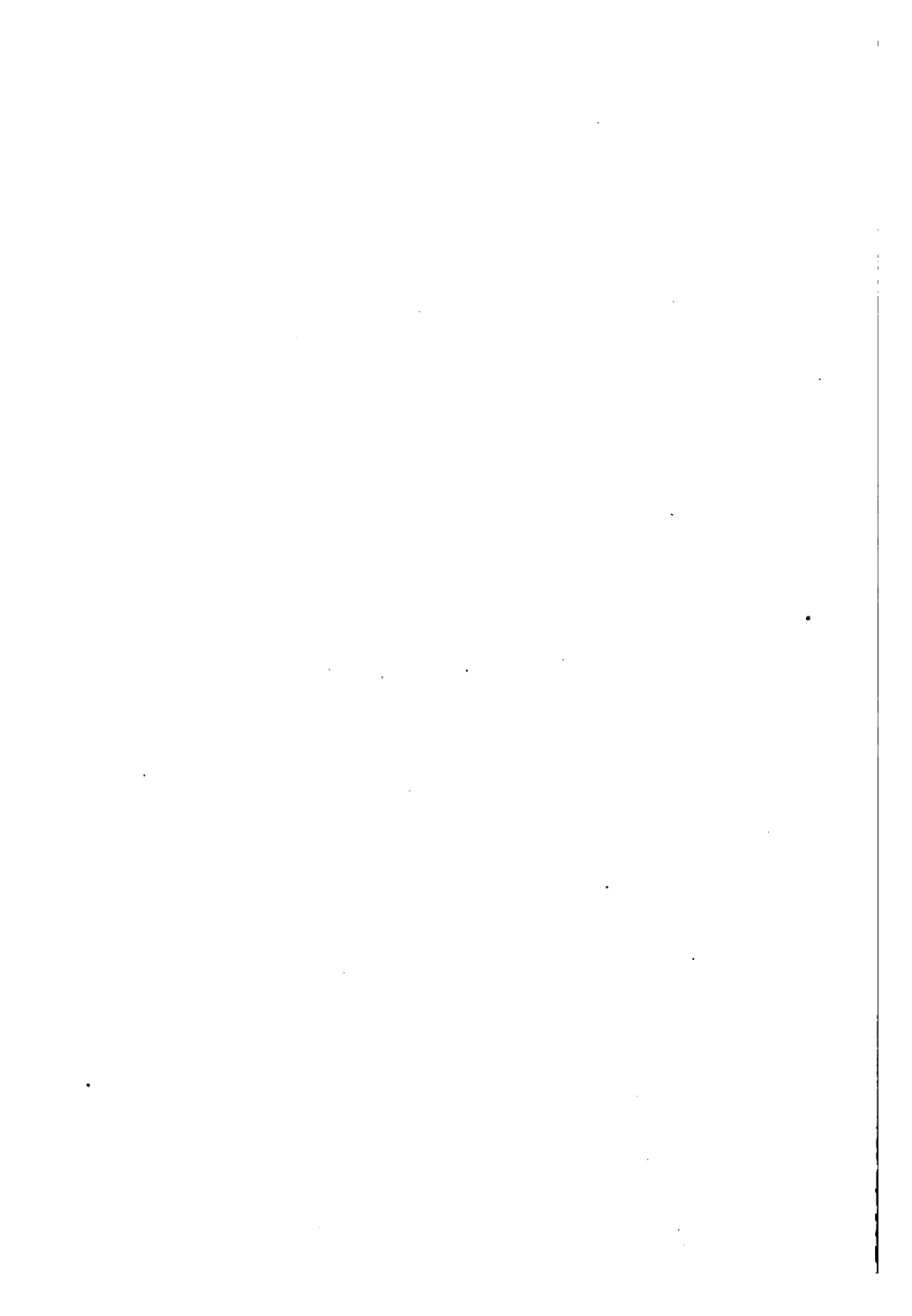
474. Derivation. Using prefixes previously studied (§§ 341, 373, 374) and such suffixes as appear in § 426, and any others you know, make a list of at least twenty-five English derivatives from the verbs *nāvigō, timeō, sedeō, vincō, faciō*.





THE ROMAN CAMPAGNA AND THE ALBAN MOUNT

The great plain surrounding Rome, known as the Campagna, now nearly bare, was in ancient times a terrestrial paradise of villas and gardens. After the fall of the Roman Empire it was laid waste by barbarian invaders and has never been reclaimed. The Alban Mount was the sacred mountain of the Latins. On its slope was built Alba Longa, Rome's mother city



LESSON LXXIII

Ad maiorem Dei glóriam — To the greater glory of God¹

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

475. Nouns that end in *-ūs* in the genitive singular are of the Fourth Declension.

476. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter. The nominative singular of masculine nouns ends in *-us*; of neuters, in *-ū*.

a. Feminines, by exception, are *domus, house*; *manus, hand*; and a few others.

477. Nouns of the fourth declension are declined as follows :

		TERMINATIONS	
		MASC.	NEUT.
adventus, M., arrival	cornū, N., horn		
(base advent-)	(base corn-)		
NOM. adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN. adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT. adventui (-ū)	cornū	-ui (-ū)	-ū
ACC. adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL. adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
NOM. adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN. adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT. adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC. adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL. adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. The base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

b. *Cornū* is the only neuter in common use.

¹ Motto of the Jesuits.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

478. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris equitatus hostium magnā celeritāte ācerrimum impetum in castra fēcit. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō difficile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castris ēdūci. 4. Ā dextrō cornū equitatum Rōmānum, ā sinistrō cornū equitatum sociōrum posuit. 5. Signō datō, proelium commissum est. 6. Diū et ācritē in eō locō pugnātum est.¹ 7. Dēnique multis² interfectis et vulnerātis, hostēs fugere incēpērunt ad castra quae trāns flūmen posita erant. 8. Eā victōriā cognitā, civitatēs proximae, primum minōrēs, deinde eae quae plūrimum poterant, pācem petiērunt.

1. See § 259, note 3. 2. Adjective used as a noun, ablative absolute.

479. 1. After Cæsar's arrival¹ was known, the cavalry fought well. 2. First on the right wing, then on the left, the signal was given. 3. The swiftness of our attack terrified the army most of all. 4. Lesbia remained a little² longer,³ because she was expecting her sister. 5. The farmer held the animal by the horn. 6. He very easily led it to the shore.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Ablative of measure of difference. 3. Why not *longius*?



OFFERING A SACRIFICE

LESSON LXXIV

In lūmine tuō vidēbimus lūmen — In thy light we shall see light¹

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

480. Regular Expressions of Place. The place *to which*, the place *from which*, and the place *at or in which* are regularly expressed by prepositions with their proper cases. From this general principle we deduce the following rules :

481. Rule for Accusative of Place to Which. *The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative, and answers the question Whither?*

Galba ad casam properat, *Galba hastens to his cottage*

482. Rule for Ablative of Place from Which. *The place from which is expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the ablative, and answers the question Whence?* (Cf. § 295.)

Galba ā casā properat, *Galba hastens from his cottage*

483. Rule for Ablative of Place at or in Which.² *The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in, and answers the question Where?*

Galba in casā habitat, *Galba lives in his cottage*

484. Important Exceptions. Names of towns and small islands, domus, home,³ and rūs, country, omit the preposition in expressions of place.

Galba Athēnās properat, *Galba hastens to Athens*

Galba Athēnīs properat, *Galba hastens from Athens*

¹ Motto of Columbia University.

² This is often called the locative ablative (from locus, place).

³ When domus means house, the preposition is used.

Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at (or in) Athens

Galba domum properat, Galba hastens home

Galba rūs properat, Galba hastens to the country

Galba domō properat, Galba hastens from home

Galba rūre properat, Galba hastens from the country

a. Names of *countries*, like *Germānia*, *Italia*, etc., do not come under these exceptions. With them prepositions must be used.

485. Locative Case. Names of towns and small islands that are singular and belong to the first or second declension express the place *at which* by the so-called *locative* case. This is like the genitive singular in form. Other locatives are *domi*,¹ *at home*, and *rūri*, *in the country*.

Galba Rōmae habitat, Galba lives at Rome

Galba Corinthī habitat, Galba lives at Corinth

Galba domi habitat, Galba lives at home

Galba rūri habitat, Galba lives in the country

a. When the name of the town is *plural*, there is no special locative form and the ablative must be used (§ 483).

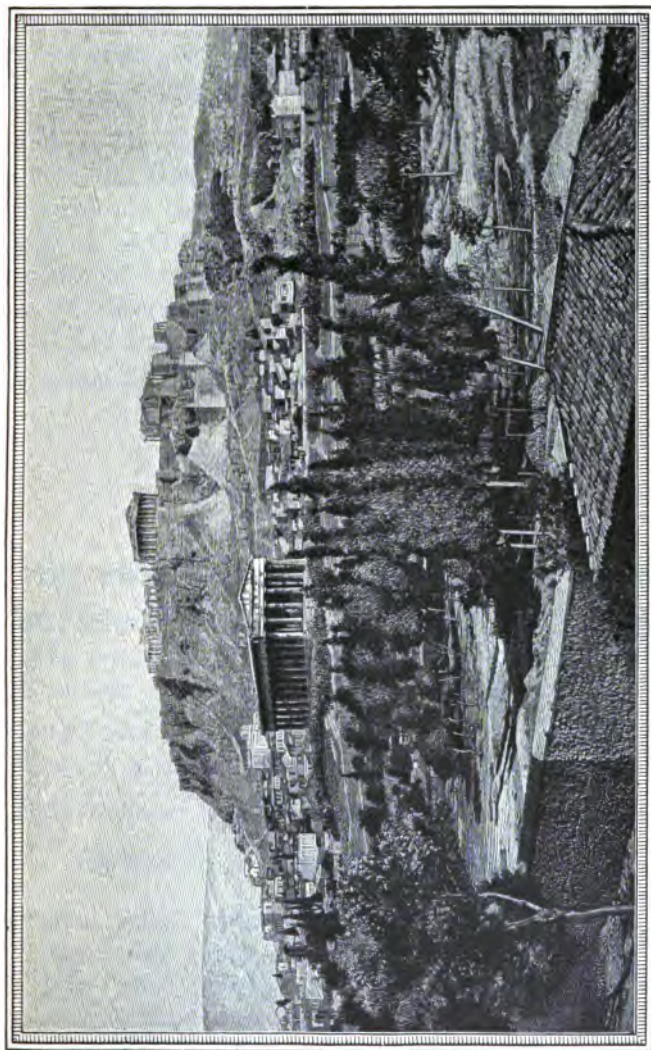
Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at Athens

EXERCISES

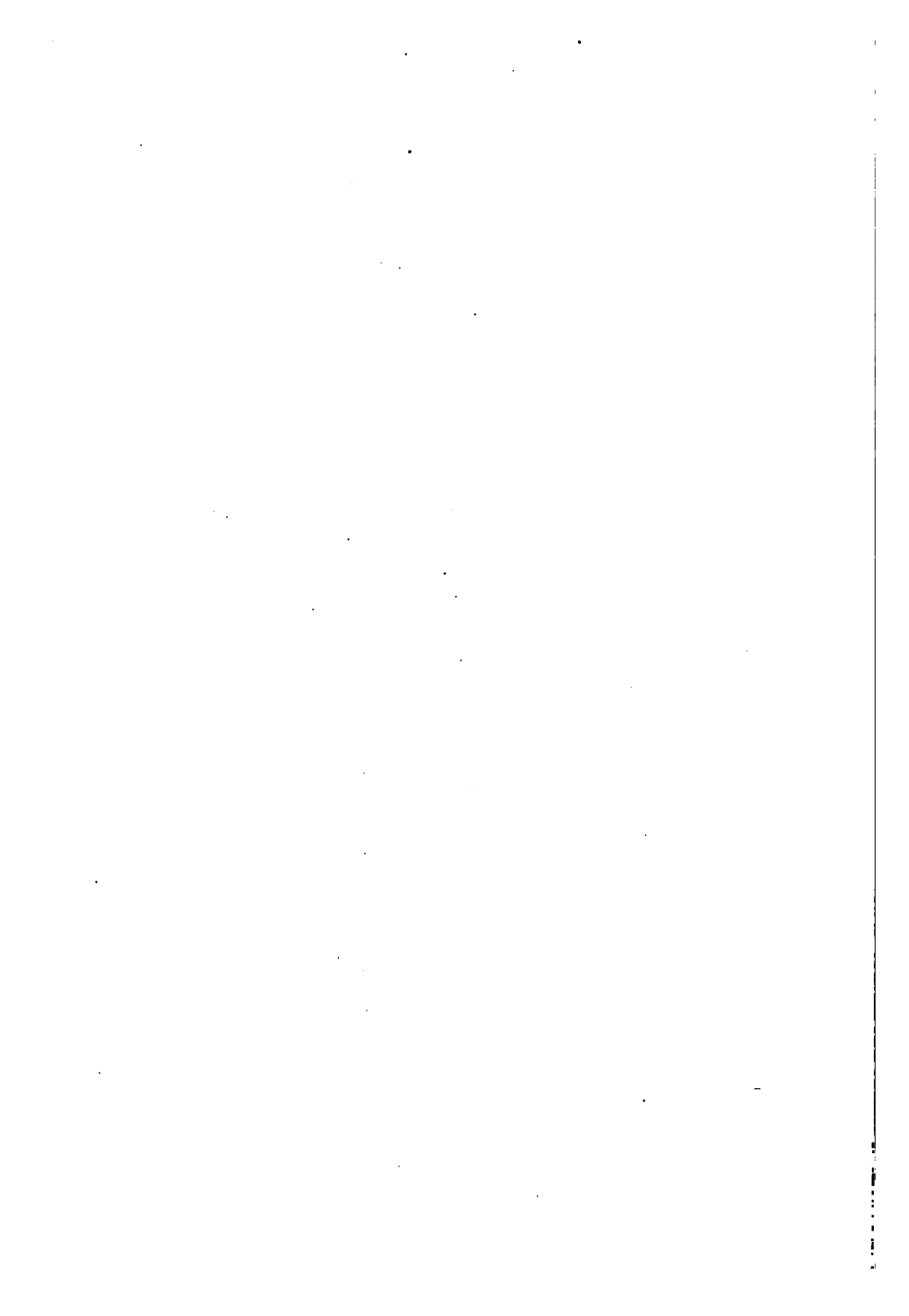
First learn the special vocabulary, page 375

486. 1. Num¹ frāter tuus iter in Galliam cum exercitū Caesaris fēcit? 2. Minimē. Frāter meus domi mānsit. 3. Ubi est domus tua? 4. Anteā rūri habitābāmus, nunc in urbe domum habēmus. 5. Habitāsne Rōmae? 6. Nōn Rōmae sed Athēnīs² habitō, quae urbs est in Graeciā. Mox ab Italiā nāvīgābō et domum celerrimē contendam. Nōnne cupis Athēnās, urbem Minervae, nāvīgāre? 7. Cupiō, sed nōn possum. Officia pūblica mē³ prohibent. Meliōra tempora exspectō.

¹ For the declension of *domus* see § 813.



ATHĒNAE, URBS MINERVAE



Tum in nāvem ascendam atque primum Athēnās, deinde ad reliquās urbēs clārās, quae magnō spatiō absunt, contendam.

1. See § 251. 2. *Athēnae*, -ārum, F., *Athens*. 3. *Me*.

487. 1. The cavalry was on the right wing, the infantry on the left. 2. Ambassadors of the king hastened to Rome and thanked¹ the consul. 3. In the country we saw an ample supply of grain. 4. The men who were the most powerful remained at Rome. 5. They were waiting for the arrival of a ship. 6. When an attack² had been made on the city, the consul fled from Rome into the country.

1. *grātiās agere*, followed by the dative. 2. Ablative absolute.

LESSON LXXV

Rēgnant populī — The peoples rule¹

THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

488. **Fifth Declension.** Nouns that end in -ēī in the genitive singular are of the Fifth Declension. The nominative singular ends in -ēs.

489. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine.

490. Nouns of the fifth declension are declined as follows :

	diēs (base dī-), M., <i>day</i>		rēs (base r-), F., <i>thing</i>		TERMINA- TIONS	
	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs		
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

¹ Motto of the state of Arkansas.

a. The vowel *e* which appears in every form is regularly long. But it is shortened in the ending *-ei* after a consonant, as in *rēi*; and before *-m* in the accusative singular, as in *diem*. (Cf. § 194. 2.)

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout. Other nouns of this declension lack all or a part of the plural.

c. What do the abbreviations A. M. and P. M. stand for? (Cf. p. 383.)

491. Declension shown by Genitive. The key to the declension of a noun is the ending of its genitive singular. Review the five distinctive genitive endings given below.

DECLENSION	GENITIVE ENDING
I	-ae
II	-i
III	-is
IV	-ūs
V	-ī

492. Ablative of Time When. The ablative relation of *at*, *in*, or *on* (§ 65) may refer to *time* as well as to *place*: as, *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative expressing this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

493. Rule for Ablative of Time When. *The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. Occasionally the preposition *in* is found. Compare the English *The next day we started* and *On the next day we started*.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 375

494. 1. Hieme diēs sunt multō breviōrēs quam aestāte. 2. Primā lūce agricolae labōrāre incēpērunt. 3. Populus oppidum nocte reliquit quod diūtius manēre timuit. 4. Hieme Rōmae habitāmus, aestāte rūri. 5. Omnēs rēs quās hominēs

pessimī fēcerant clāriōrēs erant quam lūx. 6. Proximō¹ annō in Italiā domī eram. 7. Eis rēbus cognitis, omnēs paulō ācrius contendere incēpērunt. 8. Dux iussit legiōnem primam mediā nocte discēdere. 9. Eō diē vidimus multōs ignēs quī agrōs hostium vāstābant. 10. Ignēs magnō spatiō aberant.

1. *Last*. It may also mean *next* if the sense demands that translation.

495. 1. Galba, who lives in the country, is a remarkable example of industry. 2. For he begins to work at daylight. 3. Neither does he leave the fields before night. 4. In summer he works longer¹ than in winter. 5. But even at that time many things claim² his attention. 6. And he does not often sit³ idly at home.

1. Not longius. 2. *animum tenēre*, *claim attention*. 3. *sedēre*, *sit idly*.

LESSON LXXVI

Est modus in rēbus—There is a proper measure in things¹

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION • WORD FORMATION

496. **Gender in Third Declension.** In all the declensions except the third the gender of nouns is easy to determine. In the third, however, the rules for gender are numerous and present many exceptions. The subject has therefore been postponed to prevent confusion during the learning of the case forms. We take it up at this point, confining it to a few rules that are of great practical service and have few exceptions.

¹ From Horace, the great lyric poet. The sentiment teaches the value of the golden mean. One of the sayings of one of the seven sages of Greece was, "Nothing too much." The Latin equivalent, *nē quid nimis*, quoted from Terence, will be found on the title-page of this book.

a. Masculine are most nouns in **-or** and **-es** (genitive **-itis**).

b. Feminine are most nouns in **-dō, -iō, -tās, -ūs**, and in **-s** preceded by a consonant.

(1) Exception: masculine are

dēns, a tooth, and **mōns**, a mountain,
pōns, a bridge, and **fōns**, a fountain.

c. Neuter are most nouns in **-e, -al, -ar, -n, -ūs**.

497. Word Formation. To the prefixes that you have learned (**ā, ab, ad, con-, dē, ē, ex, in, in-, prō, re-, trāns**) we now add four more: **inter, per, prae, and sub**. Two of these, **inter** and **per**, you have already learned as prepositions.

a. Inter, *between* or *among*, also used as a preposition with the accusative: as, **intermittō**, *send between* or *among*, hence *interrupt*, *suspend*; English derivatives, *intermission*, *intermittent*; **intericiō** (**inter** + **iaciō**, *throw*), *throw between*; English derivatives, *interject*, *interjection*, etc.

b. Per, *through*, also used as a preposition with the accusative: as, **permittō**, *send through*, hence *give leave*, *permit*; English derivatives, *permission*, *permissible*, etc. As a prefix **per** often has the force of *through and through, thoroughly*: as, **terreō**, *frighten*; **perterreō**, *frighten thoroughly*; **moveō**, *permovēō*; etc.

c. Prae, *before*, also used as a preposition with the ablative, but more common as a prefix: as, **praemittō**, *send ahead*. In English this prefix usually appears as *pre-*, as in the word *prefix* itself, which means to *fix or fasten before* or *in front*. Compare also such words as *predict* (**prae** + **dicō**), *prepare* (**prae** + **parō**), *precede* (**prae** + **cēdō**, *move*), *preoccupy* (**prae** + **occupō**), etc.

d. Sub, *under*, also used as a preposition, generally with the ablative: as, **submittō**, *send under*, hence *yield*, *submit*; English derivatives, *submission*, *submissive*, etc. The prefix also takes the form *suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, and sus-*, as in *suc-cumb*, *suf-fer*, *sug-gest*, *sup-port*, *sus-tain*. Look up these words in the English dictionary and note the force of the prefix and the meaning of the root word.

EXERCISES

498. Derivation. What should you judge to be the meaning of *inter + veniō*, *per + veniō*, *prae + veniō*, *sub + veniō*?

499. Derivation. With *veniō* as the root word, write a list of twenty-five English derivatives, using prefixes and suffixes, and define each derivative.

500. With the aid of the rules in § 496 give the gender of the following nouns:

<i>mare</i>	<i>aestās</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>mors</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>legiō</i>
<i>pedes</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>corpus</i>

501. Give the rules for gender in the five declensions. See §§ 86, 97, 496, 476, 489.

LESSON LXXVII

Nōn omnia possumus omnēs—We cannot all do all things¹

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

502. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in *-ius* and the dative in *-i* in all genders. The rest of the singular and all the plural forms are regular. Learn the meaning of each:

<i>alius, alia, aliud, other, another</i> (of several)	<i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone</i>
<i>alter, altera, alterum, the one, the other</i> (of two)	<i>tōtus, -a, -um, all, whole, entire</i>
<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither</i> (of two)	<i>ūllus, -a, -um, any</i>
<i>nūllus, -a, -um, none, no</i>	<i>ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone</i> ; (in the plural) <i>only</i>
	<i>uter, utra, utrum, which?</i> (of two)

¹ From Lucilius, a famous writer of Latin satire.

503. Declension of *nūllus* and *alius*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	alius	alia	aliud
GEN.	nūlli'us	nūlli'us	nūlli'us	ali'us	ali'us	ali'us
DAT.	nūlli	nūlli	nūlli	alii	alii	alii
ACC.	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	aliū	aliā	aliud
ABL.	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	aliō	aliā	aliō

The plural is regular.

504. *Alius* and *alter* are frequently used in pairs as follows :

alius . . . alius, one . . . another

alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other

alii . . . alii, some . . . others

alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other party

alter iubet, alter pāret, the one commands, the other obeys

alii terram, alii aquam amant, some love the land, others the water

505. *Alius* repeated in another case expresses briefly a double statement.

alius aliud petit, one seeks one thing, another another (literally, *another seeks another thing*)

alii aliam urbem occupant, some seize one city, others another (literally, *others seize another city*)

EXERCISES

- 506.** 1. Utra domus est Caesaris ? Neutra domus est Caesaris.
 2. Ea civitās nec ūlli lēgī¹ nec ūlli imperiō¹ pārēbit. 3. Exercitus duo cornua habet ; alterum appellātur dextrum, alterum sinistrum. 4. Alii aliās rēs portābant. 5. Alii hieme, alii aestāte ācrius labōrant. 6. Galli sōli impetum eōrum prohibēre nōn poterant. 7. Alius aliam rem spectāvit. 8. Alii equi sunt celerēs, alii tardī. 9. Omnia in ūnō locō locāta erant.

1. Why dative ? See § 224.

507. 1. Some horses are slower than others. 2. The king had seized the sovereignty of the entire island. 3. Some live on one street, others on another. 4. At night we could see many fires; some were large, others small. 5. At daylight neither commander was at home. 6. At no time of the year have I seen any ships in that sea. 7. You can make that journey without any danger.

LESSON LXXVIII

Nec tēcum possum vivere, nec sine tē—I can live neither with you nor without you¹

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS • PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

508. **Classes of Pronouns.** The classes of pronouns are the same in Latin as in English.

a. Personal pronouns, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of: as, *ego, I; tū, you*. (Cf. § 509.)

b. Possessive pronouns, which denote possession: as, *meus, my; tuus, your; suus, his, her, its, their*; etc. (Cf. § 133.)

c. Reflexive pronouns, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject: as, *sē vidit, he saw himself*. (Cf. § 511.)

d. Intensive pronouns, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun: as, *ipse id vidi, I myself saw it*. (Cf. § 516.)

e. Demonstrative pronouns, which point out persons or things: as, *is, this, that*. (Cf. § 203.)

f. Relative pronouns, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent: as, *quī, who*. (Cf. § 386.)

g. Interrogative pronouns, which ask a question: as, *quis? who?* (Cf. § 394.)

h. Indefinite pronouns, which point out indefinitely: as, *aliquis, someone, anyone; quidam, some, certain ones*; etc. (Cf. § 528.)

¹ From Martial, a Roman poet, famous for his epigrams.

509. Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I*, and *nōs, we*; of the second person, *tū, thou* or *you*, and *vōs, ye* or *you*. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		
	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
NOM.	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>tū, you</i>
GEN.	<i>mei, of me</i>	<i>tui, of you</i>
DAT.	<i>mihi, to or for me</i>	<i>tibi, to or for you</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me</i>	<i>tē, you</i>
ABL.	<i>mē, with, from, etc., me</i>	<i>tē, with, from, etc., you</i>
PLURAL		
NOM.	<i>nōs, we</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>
GEN.	<i>nostrum or nostri, of us</i>	<i>vestrum or vestri, of you</i>
DAT.	<i>nōbis, to or for us</i>	<i>vōbis, to or for you</i>
ACC.	<i>nōs, us</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>
ABL.	<i>nōbis, with, from, etc., us</i>	<i>vōbis, with, from, etc., you</i>

a. The nominatives, *ego, tū, nōs, vōs*, are used only to express emphasis or contrast.

510. The personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they, etc.*) is regularly expressed by the demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id* (§ 205).

511. Reflexive Pronouns. The reflexives of the first person (*myself, ourselves*) and of the second person (*yourself, yourselves*) are expressed by the forms of *ego* and *tū*: as,

<i>videō mē, I see myself</i>	<i>vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves</i>
<i>vidēs tē, you see yourself</i>	<i>vidētis vōs, you see yourselves</i>

512. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, declined alike in the singular and plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

NOM.	lacking
GEN.	sui , <i>of himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
DAT.	sibi , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
ACC.	sē or sēsē , <i>himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
ABL.	sē or sēsē , <i>with, from, etc., himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>

EXAMPLES

Puer sē videt, *the boy sees himself*

Puella sē videt, *the girl sees herself*

Animal sē videt, *the animal sees itself*

Ii sē vident, *they see themselves*

513. Enclitic Use of cum. The preposition **cum**, when used with the ablatives **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, is joined to them: as, **mēcum**, *with me*; **nōbīs'cum**, *with us*; etc. **Cum** is likewise joined to **quō**, **quā**, and **quibus**, the ablative forms of the relative and interrogative: as,

Vir quōcum puer venit, *the man with whom the boy is coming*

Quibuscum bellum gerunt, *with whom do they carry on war?*

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 375.

514. 1. **Mea patria est mihi nōta**, et **tua patria est tibi nōta**.
2. **Vestri amīci sunt nōbīs grāti**, et **nostrī amīci sunt vōbīs grāti**.
3. **Lēgātī pācem amicitiamque sibi et sociīs suis petiērunt**. **4.** **Si tū¹ arma capiēs**, ego **1** **rēgnū tuum occupābō**. **5.** **Uter vestrum est civis Rōmānus?** Neuter nostrum. **6.** **Quibus² rēbus cognītīs**, multi **sēsē** in fugam dedērunt. **7.** **Timōre servitūtis commōtae**, multae mulierēs **sēsē** interfēcērunt. **8.** **Quōcum imperātor iter faciet?** **Mēcum**.

1. Personal pronouns in the nominative are emphatic. **2. These.** The relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence with the force of a demonstrative.

515. 1. You cannot see yourself. 2. The queen is pleasing to herself, but not to her kingdom. 3. The general, alarmed by your arrival, fled.¹ 4. You will suffer² punishment on that day, but not I.³ 5. Many things alarmed us, but most of all the fear of the cavalry.

1. Latin, *gave himself into flight*. 2. Latin, *give*. 3. The pronouns *you* and *I*, being emphatic, must be expressed.

LESSON LXXIX

Nīl sine magnō vīta labōre dedit mortālībus—Life has given
nothing to mortals without great labor¹

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* · THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *IDEM*

516. Intensive Pronoun *ipse*. The intensive *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, is used both as a pronoun and as an adjective. It is usually an adjective and emphasizes the noun or pronoun with which it agrees, and is translated *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *myself*, *yourself*, etc.: as,

Homō ipse venit, *the man himself is coming*

Puella ipsa venit, *the girl herself is coming*

Pueri ipsi veniunt, *the boys themselves are coming*

Ego ipse veniō, *I myself am coming*

a. In English the pronouns *himself* etc. are used both intensively (as, *Galba will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *Galba will kill himself*); in Latin the former would be translated by the adjective *ipse*, the latter by the pronoun *sē*:

Galba ipse veniet

Galba sē interficiet

b. *Ipse* is sometimes translated by *very*: as, *eō ipso diē*, *on that very day*.

¹ From Horace.

517. The intensive pronoun *ipse* is declined like the nine irregular adjectives (§ 502).

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN.	<i>ipsi'us</i>	<i>ipsi'us</i>	<i>ipsi'us</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

518. Demonstrative Pronoun *īdem*. The demonstrative pronoun *īdem*, *the same*, is a compound of *is*, and is declined as follows :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
GEN.	<i>eius'dem</i>	<i>eius'dem</i>	<i>eius'dem</i>
DAT.	<i>ei'dem</i>	<i>ei'dem</i>	<i>ei'dem</i>
ACC.	<i>eun'dem</i>	<i>ean'dem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
ABL.	<i>eō'dem</i>	<i>eā'dem</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>
NOM.	<i>īi'dem</i> <i>ei'dem</i>	<i>eae'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārun'dem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>
DAT.	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>
ACC.	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eās'dem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
ABL.	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>	<i>īis'dem</i> <i>eis'dem</i>

a. The forms *īidem* and *īisdem* are often spelled and pronounced with one *i*.

b. The demonstrative *īdem* is used both as a noun and as an adjective.

c. *Īdem* is sometimes best rendered *also, at the same time*: as, *ego īdem dixi, I also said.*

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

519. 1. Ego et tū¹ eandem urbem incolimus. 2. Iter ipsum nōn timēmus, sed aliis rēbus commōti sumus. 3. Ōlim nōs ipsi idem iter fēcimus, sed aliō tempore annī. 4. Rōmānī in maximam spem adventū imperātōris adducti erant. 5. Iam tōtam spem salūtis dēposuērunt, quod pars exercitūs capta est et imperātor ipse est in manibus hostium. 6. Tamen vōs ipsi eōsdem saepissimē vicistis. 7. Imperātor suā manū filiam servāvit, sed sē ipse² servāre nōn potuit.

1. Latin says *I and you*, not *you and I*. 2. The intensive *ipse* here agrees with the subject, though in English the emphasis falls on the predicate.

520. 1. The general himself gave a part of the army the right of way through the same kingdom. 2. After all hope¹ of safety was left behind, the citizens themselves laid down their arms. 3. The same great fear seized² the hearts of all.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. *occupō, -āre*.

LESSON LXXX

Nōn sibi, sed suis—Not for herself, but for her own¹

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

521. Use of *hic, iste, and ille*. The demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id*, makes no definite reference to place or time (§ 203); but *hic* (*this, he*) refers to a person or thing near the speaker, *iste* (*that, he*) to a person or thing near the person addressed, and *ille* (*that, he*) to a person or thing remote from both.

Amāsne hunc equum, do you like this horse (of mine)?

Istum equum amō, sed illum equum nōn amō, I like that horse
(of yours), *but that horse* (yonder) *I don't like*

¹ Motto of Tulane University.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE* 191

522. The demonstratives *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. When used as adjectives, they regularly precede their nouns.

523. Declension of *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*. *Hic* is declined as follows :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. *Huius* is pronounced *hoo'yōos*, and *huic* is pronounced *hweek* (one syllable).

524. The demonstrative pronouns *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, and *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms *istud* and *illud*, are declined like *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. (See § 517.)

A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN ADDRESSES HIS FOLLOWERS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

525. *Ille fortis Gallōrum princeps suōs convocāvit et hōc modō¹ animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit: "Vōs, quī hōs finēs incolitis, in hunc locum convocāvi,² quod mēcum debētis istōs agrōs atque istās domōs ā manibus Rōmānis liberāre. Hoc nōbis nōn difficile erit, quod illi hostēs hās silvās, hōs montēs 5 timent. Sī fortēs erimus, deī ipsī nōbis viam salūtis dēmōnstrābunt. Itaque dēpōnite istum timōrem. Magnam spem victōriae habeo. Iam magnam partem exercitūs Rōmāni superāvimus." 2*

1. Ablative of manner. 2. Translate by the present perfect (§ 312).

526. 1. Is that spear (of yours¹) heavy? No, this spear (of mine¹) is light. 2. That spear of Mark's is much longer than mine. 3. You ought to show us the road that leads across this mountain. 4. That road which extends through our territory is much shorter. 5. The very manner of life of those savages is not the same.

1. English words in parentheses are not to be translated.

LESSON LXXXI

Labor omnia vincit—Labor conquers all things¹

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

527. Indefinite pronouns do not, like demonstratives, point out definite persons or things, but refer to them indefinitely: as, *someone, anyone, something, some, any*.

528. Indefinite pronouns, like demonstratives, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. The simple indefinite pronoun is *quis, someone, anyone*, and the indefinite adjective is *qui, quae, quod, some, any*.² Far more common are the compounds *aliquis, someone; quisque, each one; and quidam, a certain one*. The forms of these indefinites are as follows:

1. Substantive forms:

MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
<i>aliquis, someone, anyone</i>		<i>aliquid, something, anything</i>
<i>quisque, each one, everyone</i>		<i>quidque, each thing, everything</i>
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>quidam, a certain man</i>	<i>quaedam, a certain woman</i>	<i>quiddam, a certain thing</i>

¹ Motto of the state of Oklahoma.

² The indefinites *quis* and *qui* are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives (§§ 394, 395).

2. Adjective forms :

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
aliqui	aliqua	aliquod, <i>any</i>
quisque	quaeque	quodque, <i>each</i>
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, <i>a certain</i>

529. Declension of Indefinites. Indefinites are declined, in general, like the interrogatives **quis** and **qui**. An **m** coming before a **d** is changed to **n** : as, **quendam**, not **quemdam**.¹

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

530. 1. Hōc proeliō factō, Galli suam quisque¹ domum pro-
perāvērunt. 2. Quidam hominēs, quī amici illius rēgis existi-
mābantur, ab imperātōre retenti sunt. 3. Est in vitā cuiusque
aliqua adversa (*ill*) fortūna. 4. Aliquis dēbet tibi viam dēmōn-
strāre. 5. Quisque nostrum illi fortī militi aliquid dare dēbet.
6. Ego quendam rūri vidī quī per illōs finēs iter fēcerat.

1. In apposition with **Galli**.

531. 1. If you see a certain Quintus at Rome, send him to
me. 2. Even I said something to someone. 3. Some who
were considered very brave did not retain their arms. 4. Each
citizen ought to uphold the state and obey the laws.¹ 5. Certain
cities are considered equal to Rome itself.

1. Dative, § 224.

~~~~~

**Tenth Review. Lessons LXXIII-LXXXI, §§ 783-787**

<sup>1</sup> The declension of the indefinites is given in § 831, but demands little special study.

## LESSON LXXXII

Quot hominēs, tot sententiæ — As many men, so many minds<sup>1</sup>

### CARDINAL NUMERALS AND THEIR DECLENSION

**532. Cardinal Numerals.** Cardinal numerals answer the question *How many?* The first twelve cardinals are as follows: <sup>2</sup>

|             |            |              |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1, ūnus     | 5, quinque | 9, novem     |
| 2, duo      | 6, sex     | 10, decem    |
| 3, trēs     | 7, septem  | 11, ūndecim  |
| 4, quattuor | 8, octō    | 12, duodecim |

a. The word for 100 is *centum*; for 200, *ducenti*; for 1000, *mille*.

**533. Declension of Cardinals.** Of the cardinals, only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* used as a noun, are declined.

**534. Ūnus, one,** is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like *nūllus* (§ 503).

**535.** Learn the declension of *duo*, *two*, and of *trēs*, *three*. See § 824.

**536. Mille, thousand,** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and is declined like the plural of *mare*:

|      |                |
|------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>milia</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>milium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>milibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>milia</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>milibus</i> |

<sup>1</sup> From Terence, the famous writer of comedies. The motto means that every man has his opinion.

<sup>2</sup> A fuller table of numerals is given in § 823.

**537. Ducenti**, *two hundred*, and other hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of **bonus**: as,

ducenti

ducentae

ducenta

ducentōrum

ducentārum

ducentōrum

ducentis

ducentis

ducentis

etc.

etc.

etc.

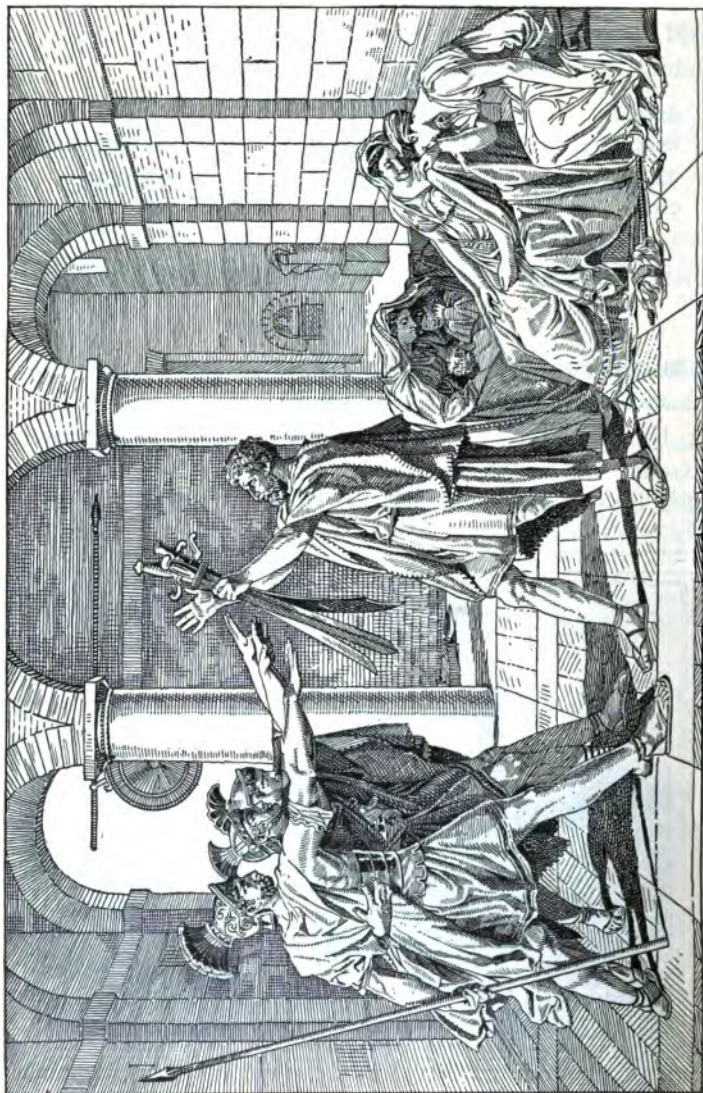
### THE CONTEST OF THE HORATII AND THE CURIATII

Try to translate this at sight

**538.** Ōlim Rōmāni cum Albānis<sup>1</sup> bellum gerēbant. Erant in duōbus exercitibus trigemini<sup>2</sup> frātrēs, trēs Horātii in exercitū Rōmānō, trēs Curiātii in exercitū Albānō. Ducibus convocātis, quidam ex eis dixit: "Cūr omnēs nōs pugnāmus? Melius est paucōs<sup>3</sup> prō omnibus contendere et reliquōs<sup>3</sup> esse 5



SO-CALLED TOMB OF THE HORATII AND CURIATII

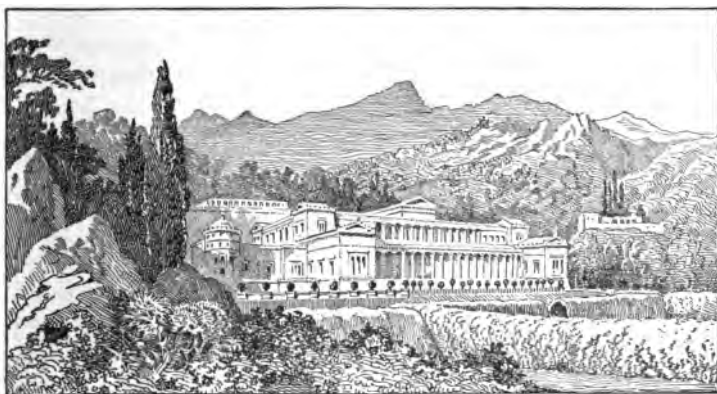


PATER IPSE TRIBUS FILIIS ARMA NOVA DEDIT

integrōs. Cūr nōn iubēmus trēs Horātiōs cum tribus Curiātiis pugnāre et hōc modō bellum diiudicāmus<sup>4</sup>?" Hōc cōnsiliō omnibus<sup>5</sup> persuāsit, et pater ipse Horātiōrum filiis fortibus suis nova arma dedit.

Et Horātii et Curiātii certāmini<sup>6</sup> studēbant et manūs cōn-  
seruērunt.<sup>7</sup> Primō impetū trēs Albānī ā tribus Rōmānis  
vulnerāti sunt, duo Rōmānī ā tribus Albānis interfecti sunt,  
ūnus Rōmānus integer erat. Iam tōtus Albānōrum exer-  
citus certam victōriam exspectābat. Rōmānus autem fugam  
simulāvit<sup>8</sup> et illō modō trēs vulnerātōs Albānōs sēparāvit.<sup>9</sup> 15  
Tum subitō<sup>10</sup> reuertit<sup>11</sup> et singulōs<sup>12</sup> superāvit atque inter-  
fecit. Postea Rōmānī in<sup>13</sup> Albānōs multōs annōs<sup>14</sup> imperium  
tenēbant.

1. Albānī, -ōrum, *the Albans*, who lived near Rome. 2. *Triplet*.  
3. paucōs is the subject accusative of *contendere*, and reliquōs of *esse*.  
The infinitive clauses are the subjects of *est*. 4. diiudicō, -āre, *decide*.  
5. Why dative? See § 224. 6. certāmen, -inis, N., *contest*. 7. manūs cōn-  
seruērunt, *joined in a hand-to-hand struggle*. 8. simulō, -āre, *pretend*.  
9. sēparō, -āre, *separate*. 10. Suddenly. 11. reuertō, -ere, *turn back*.  
12. singulī, *one at a time*. 13. Over. 14. multōs annōs, *for many years*.



VILLA OF A WEALTHY ROMAN

## LESSON LXXXIII

**Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem**—With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom<sup>1</sup>

### ORDINAL NUMERALS · THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE, OR THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

**539. Ordinal Numerals.** Ordinal numerals answer the question *In what order?* The first twelve are as follows:

*first*, **primus**, -a, -um  
*second*, **secundus**, -a, -um  
*third*, **tertius**, -a, -um  
*fourth*, **quārtus**, -a, -um  
*fifth*, **quintus**, -a, -um  
*sixth*, **sextus**, -a, -um

*seventh*, **septimus**, -a, -um  
*eighth*, **octā'vus**, -a, -um  
*ninth*, **nōnus**, -a, -um  
*tenth*, **decimus**, -a, -um  
*eleventh*, **ūndecimus**, -a, -um  
*twelfth*, **duodecimus**, -a, -um

The ordinals are all declined like **bonus**.

**540. Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.** In the sentence *Of all these the Belgæ are the bravest*, the phrase *of all these* represents the whole number of whom the Belgæ are the bravest part. This sentence is expressed similarly in Latin: as,

**Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ**

and the genitive **hōrum omnium** is called the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive.

**541. Rule for Genitive of the Whole.** *A genitive denoting the whole is used with words denoting a part, and is known as the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Massachusetts.

**542.** *Mille*, singular, is an indeclinable adjective: as, *mille militēs*, *a thousand soldiers*. *Milia*, plural, is a neuter noun, and is followed by the genitive: as, *decem milia militum*, *ten thousand soldiers* (literally, *ten thousands of soldiers*).

**543.** Cardinal numbers, except *milia*, are followed by the ablative with *ex* or *dē*, instead of the genitive: as, *ūnus ex pueris*, *one of the boys*.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

**544.** Annus quattuor tempora<sup>1</sup> et duodecim mēnsēs<sup>2</sup> continet. Aestās est omnium temporum grātissimum. Nunc mēnsis primus annī est Iānuārius, sed antiquis<sup>3</sup> temporibus Mārtius<sup>4</sup> primus mēnsis existimābatur. Quā dē causā September erat septimus mēnsis antiqui<sup>8</sup> annī, Octōber erat 5 octāvus mēnsis, November erat nōnus mēnsis, December erat decimus mēnsis. Omnium mēnsium Februārius erat brevissimus. Urbs Rōma plūs quam mille annōs<sup>5</sup> permānsit<sup>6</sup> et multa milia hominum habet.

1. Here used in the sense of *seasons*. 2. *mēnsis*, -is, *M.*, *month*. 3. *antiquus*, -a, -um, *ancient*. 4. *March*. 5. *plūs quam mille annōs*, *for more than a thousand years*. 6. Present Perfect, § 312.

**545.** The Romans had seven kings. The first king was Romulus, the second king was Numa, the third king was Tullus Hostilius, the fourth king was Ancus Marcius, the fifth king was Tarquinius Priscus, the sixth king was Servius Tullius, the seventh king was Tarquinius Superbus. Of all the kings Tarquinius Superbus was the worst. For this reason he was driven out by Brutus, the first consul.

## LESSON LXXXIV

CIVI et rei pūblicaē — For the citizen and the commonwealth<sup>1</sup>

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME OR EXTENT OF SPACE

**546.** The questions *How long?* and *How far?* are answered in English by an adverbial objective expressing duration of time or extent of space. This relation is similarly expressed in Latin by the Latin objective, or accusative: as,

Galli sex diēs pugnāverunt, *the Gauls fought for six days*  
Aqua centum pedēs alta est, *the water is a hundred feet deep*

**547.** Rule for Accusative of Duration or Extent. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

**548.** The accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of the time *when* or *within which* (§ 493) must be carefully distinguished. Select what would be accusatives of time or space and ablatives of time in the following passage if it were in Latin:

At midnight I went on deck. For many hours I had been tossing sleepless in my bunk. In the first place, the storm which began on Monday had now been raging for five days. Furthermore, in a few hours we should be in the channel; only a few miles from safety, to be sure, but also in the most dangerous zone of our voyage. The night was clear, and once I thought I saw a periscope, but it was only a floating spar extending several feet above the water. I was distinctly nervous, and did not care to repeat my former experience when I spent forty-eight hours in a leaky boat, which we rowed forty-seven miles before we were saved.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Oklahoma.



## CÆSAR IN GAUL

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

**549.** Caesar bellum in Galliā septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs superāvit, et eōdem annō Germānōs, qui magnum numerum hominum trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant, ex Galliā expulit. Multōs iam annōs Germānī magnam partem Galliae obtinēbant.<sup>1</sup> Quā dē causā principēs Galliae lēgātōs 5 ad Caesarem miserant et auxilium petierant. Lēgātīs auditis, Caesar brevī tempore cōpiās suās coēgit. Magnō itinere cōfectō, aciem instrūxit et primā lūce proelium cum Germānis commisit. Tōtum diem ācrit̄er pugnātum est. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū aciem dūxit. Dēnique post magnam caedem 10 Germānī aliī aliam in partem trāns Rhēnum fugam cēpērunt.

1. Translate as if past perfect.

**550.** 1. The battle began at daylight and part of the army fought all<sup>1</sup> day. 2. That bridge is two hundred feet long. 3. The enemy's camp was twelve miles<sup>2</sup> distant. 4. Those mountains are three hundred feet high. 5. In a short time the queen had collected five thousand men. 6. That forest extended a great distance.

1. Not *omnis*. 2. Latin, *twelve thousands of paces*.



A GATE OF POMPEII (RESTORED)

## LESSON LXXXV

Amicitia nisi inter bonōs esse nōn potest—Friendship cannot exist except between the good<sup>1</sup>

### THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT • THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**551. Ablative of Respect.** Note the following sentences :

**Civēs erant paucī numerō**, *the citizens were few in number*

**Mārcus frātre[m] virtūte superat**, *Mark excels his brother in valor*

The ablatives **numerō** and **virtūte** answer the question *In what respect?* and are called ablatives of respect.

**552. Rule for Ablative of Respect.** *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

**553. Genitive with Adjectives.** Compare the following sentences :

**Rēx bellum cupit**, *the king desires war*

**Rēx bellī cupidus est**, *the king is desirous of war*

The relation between the verb **cupit** and its direct object **bellum** is clearly similar to that between the adjective **cupidus** and its genitive **bellī**. Genitives used as the object of the action or feeling implied in certain adjectives are therefore called objective genitives.

**554. Rule for Genitive with Adjectives.** *The adjectives cupidus, desirous; peritus, skilled; imperitus, ignorant, and others of similar character are followed by the objective genitive.*

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero's famous essay on friendship.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

**555.** 1. Aciem instruere nōn poterat, quod erat imperitus rei militāris. 2. Sapientiā Minerva reliquās deās superābat. 3. Signō datō, legiō decima, cupidior laudis quam vitae ipsius, prōcēdere incēpit. 4. Gallī et Germānī dissimillimī linguā ac lēgibus erant. 5. Quīdam ex principibus, quod pācis cupidi erant, lēgātōs ad nōs misērunt. 6. Dux rei militāris peritus in locō iniquō nōn permanēbit. 7. Servi libertātis cupidissimi aliī aliam in partem fūgērunt. 8. Quīdam imperātor, Galba nōmine, timōre commōtus iter intermitti iussit. 9. Oppidum, nullō spatiō intermissō, mūrō viginti<sup>1</sup> pedēs altō dēfendebātur. 10. Cūr in eādē libertāte quam ā patribus nostris accēpimus permanēre nōn possumus?

1. *Twenty.*

**556.** 1. Few men were equal to Cæsar either<sup>1</sup> in wisdom or in valor. 2. The men are unskilled in languages. 3. These ought not to sail to other lands. 4. Cæsar was king in fact,<sup>2</sup> but not in name. 5. Some work because they are desirous of praise, others because they are desirous of money. 6. The commander himself is skilled in the art of war. 7. He will not let several days elapse without good cause.

1. *Either . . . or, aut . . . aut.* 2. *rēs.*



ANCIENT COINS

## LESSON LXXXVI

Nōn omnis moriar—I shall not wholly die<sup>1</sup>

### DEPONENT VERBS · THE GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

**557. Deponent Verbs.** A deponent verb is one that is passive in form but active in meaning.

**558.** The principal parts of deponents are, of course, passive.

**hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge**

**a.** A few verbs are deponent in the perfect system only: as,

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare**

**559.** Deponent verbs are conjugated in the passive:

**hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum (urge), like vocor (§ 832)**

**vereor, verēri, veritus sum (fear), like moneor (§ 833)**

**sequor, sequi, secūtus sum (follow), like regor (§ 834)**

**patior, pati, passus sum (suffer), like capior (§ 836)**

**partior, partiri, partitus sum (share), like audior (§ 835)**

**560.** Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive, the active participles, and a few other active forms which will be noted later.<sup>2</sup>

**561. Genitive or Ablative of Description.** English and Latin employ similar expressions of quality or description. Thus we may say either *Cæsar was a man of great courage* or *Cæsar was a man with great courage*. Similarly in Latin we may use the genitive in the first case and the ablative in the second: as,

**Caesar erat vir magnæ virtūtis**

**Caesar erat vir magnā virtūte**

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the poet laureate of the Augustan age.

<sup>2</sup> The complete synopsis of deponent verbs is given in § 837.

**562. Rule for Genitive or Ablative of Description.** *The genitive or the ablative, with a modifying adjective, is used in expressions of quality or description.*

a. Numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive, and descriptions of physical characteristics are usually in the ablative.

*fossa decem pedum, a ditch of ten feet, or a ten-foot ditch*  
*puella parvis manibus, a girl with small hands*

### CÆSAR AND THE HELVETIANS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 378

**563.** 1. *Helvētīi, quī nec deōs nec hominēs verēbantur, magnum dolōrem patiēbantur quod ex omnibus partibus<sup>1</sup> magnae altitudinis montibus continēbantur.* 2. *Quā dē causā cōsiliū cēpērunt ex suis finibus cum omnibus cōpiis excēdere.* 3. *His rēbus cognitīs, Cæsar, vir ēgregiā virtūte et rei militāris peritissimus, magnīs itineribus in Galliam contendit.* 4. *Nōn passus est Helvētiōs iter per finēs Rōmānōs facere, sed plūrēs<sup>2</sup> diēs eōs secūtus est.* 5. *Dēnique Helvētīi, itinere intermissō, aciem instrūxērunt.* 6. *Helvētīi Rōmānis erant parēs virtūte, sed nōn armīs.* 7. *Tum Cæsar militēs hortātus est, et, proeliō commissō, magnam partem hostium interfēcit.*

1. *ex omnibus partibus, on all sides.* 2. *Several.*

**564.** 1. *Cæsar constructed<sup>1</sup> a ten-foot rampart.<sup>2</sup>* 2. *The rampart was many miles<sup>3</sup> long.* 3. *Men of no wisdom suffer pain because they do not fear the laws.* 4. *One man urges one thing, another another.<sup>4</sup>* 5. *But we shall follow Cæsar's authority.* 6. *In height your mountains are not equal to ours.*

1. *dūcō.* 2. *Latin, a rampart of ten feet.* 3. *Latin, many thousands of paces.* 4. *Translate the sentence by three Latin words. See § 505.*

## LESSON LXXXVII

Vox clāmantis in dēsertō — The voice of one crying in the wilderness<sup>1</sup>

### PARTICIPLES

565. The nature of the participle has been already discussed (§ 344). Latin has four participles, the present and the future in the active voice, and the past and the future (also called the gerundive) in the passive voice.<sup>2</sup>

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>I. <b>Present Active Participle.</b> Present Stem + <b>-ns</b> or <b>-ēns</b></p>                            | <p><i>vocāns, calling</i><br/> <i>monēns, advising</i><br/> <i>regēns, ruling</i><br/> <i>audiēns, hearing</i></p>                                              |
| <p>II. <b>Future Active Participle.</b> Participial Stem + <b>-ūrus, -a, -um</b></p>                            | <p><i>vocātūrus, about to call</i><br/> <i>monitūrus, about to advise</i><br/> <i>rēctūrus, about to rule</i><br/> <i>auditūrus, about to hear</i></p>          |
| <p>III. <b>Past Passive Participle.</b> Participial Stem + <b>-us, -a, -um</b></p>                              | <p><i>vocātus, having been called</i><br/> <i>monitus, having been advised</i><br/> <i>rēctus, having been ruled</i><br/> <i>auditus, having been heard</i></p> |
| <p>IV. <b>Future Passive Participle or Gerundive.</b> Present Stem + <b>-ndus</b> or <b>-endus, -a, -um</b></p> | <p><i>vocandus, to be called</i><br/> <i>monendus, to be advised</i><br/> <i>regendus, to be ruled</i><br/> <i>audiendus, to be heard</i></p>                   |

566. **Declension of Participles.** All participles ending in **-us** are declined like **bonus** (§ 120). Present participles are declined like adjectives of one ending; see the declension of **vocāns**, § 817.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Dartmouth College. From the Latin translation of the Bible.

<sup>2</sup> It is to be noted that Latin, unlike English, has no past active participle (*having called*) or present passive participle (*being called*).

**567. Past and Future Participles.** We have made frequent use of the past passive participle as the last of the principal parts (§ 299), and in the formation of the perfect passive system (*vocātus sum*, etc.). We have also used it frequently in agreement with a noun in the ablative absolute (§ 400): as,

*Gallīs superātis, Caesar in Italiam contendit, after the Gauls had been overcome, Cæsar hastened into Italy*

The future active participle with *esse* makes the future active infinitive (§ 356): as, *vocātūrus esse, to be about to call*.

**568. Present Active Participle.** The present active participle, as well as the past passive, is often used with a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute.

*Caesare dūcente, nihil timēmus, Cæsar leading (or when Cæsar leads), we fear nothing*

**569. Participles of Deponent Verbs.** Deponent verbs have four participles, of the same form as those of other verbs: as,

*hortāns, urging*  
*hortātūrus, about to urge*  
*hortātus, having urged*  
*hortandus, to be urged*<sup>1</sup>

But note that the past participle of deponents is *active* in meaning, and that only deponent verbs have an *active* past participle. Compare

*hortātus, having urged (active), from hortor, deponent*  
*vocātus, having been called (passive), from voco, not deponent*

**570. Give the participles of the following verbs:**

|              |              |              |               |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>portō</i> | <i>mittō</i> | <i>mūnīō</i> | <i>vereor</i> |
| <i>iaciō</i> | <i>dūcō</i>  | <i>moveō</i> | <i>patior</i> |

<sup>1</sup> The future passive participle, or gerundive, of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as well as in form.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 378

**571.** 1. Caesar sequēns barbarōs nec nocte nec diē iter intermīsīt. 2. Magnam multitudine hostium fugientium interfēcīt et grave supplicium dē captivīs sūmpsīt. 3. Magnitudine et altitudine illud flūmen omnia alia superat. 4. In<sup>1</sup> eō flūmine imperātor pontem mille pedum fēcīt. 5. His bellis cōfectis, imperātor librum dē rē militārī scripsīt. 6. Ubi Lesbiam vidisti? Lesbiam sedentem ante casam Galbae vīdi. 7. Tertiā hōrā explorātōrēs, quī praemissī erant, locum idōneum castris dēlēgērunt. 8. Illō imperātōre dūcente, certissima esse victōria dēbet. 9. Dux tuus est celerior corpore quam animō. 10. Veritī fortūnam pessimam, grātiās deīs iam ēgimus quod cōservātī erāmus.

1. Where we say "build a bridge *over*," the Romans said "build a bridge *in*," because bridges were often built of boats.

**572.** 1. When our country calls,<sup>1</sup> we ought to take up arms. 2. The king, fearing the multitude, did not dare to send ahead spies. 3. After suffering<sup>2</sup> wrongs for many years, the allies were eager for war. 4. At the fourth hour suitable scouts were chosen and sent forward. 5. Cæsar inflicted punishment on that king. 6. Many books have been written concerning the size of Rome. 7. After drawing up<sup>3</sup> the line of battle, the commander waited for two hours.

1. Express by the present participle in the ablative absolute. 2. Past participle. 3. Express by the past participle in the ablative absolute, and note that, as this participle is regularly passive in Latin, the voice of the English verb must be changed, and thus the English becomes *after the line of battle had been drawn up*. Never fail to change an English past participle from the active to the passive before translating, unless the Latin verb is deponent (cf. § 569).



## LESSON LXXXVIII

Scientia sōl mentis—Knowledge the sun of the mind<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

**573. Spelling of English Words in -ant and -ent.** Many English nouns and adjectives ending in *-ant* and *-ent* are derived from the Latin present participle, and have the same form as its base. Thus:

| LATIN VERB | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | ENGLISH WORD     |
|------------|--------------------|------------------|
| occupō     | occupāns, -antis   | <i>occupant</i>  |
| servō      | servāns, -antis    | <i>servant</i>   |
| importō    | importāns, -antis  | <i>important</i> |
| studeō     | studēns, -entis    | <i>student</i>   |
| agō        | agēns, -entis      | <i>agent</i>     |
| contineō   | continēns, -entis  | <i>continent</i> |

English words of this kind derived from Latin verbs of the first conjugation end in *-ant*; from verbs of other conjugations, in *-ent*.

*a.* Exceptions to this rule are words of Latin origin that have come into English through the medium of Norman French, where the present participle of verbs of all conjugations ends regularly in *-ant*. Thus, from *teneō* (present participle *tenēns*) the English derivative is not *tenent*, as we should expect, but *tenant* (cf. French *tenant*).

**574. Nouns in -or denoting the Agent or Doer.** Many Latin nouns denoting the *agent* or *doer* are formed from Latin verbs by changing *-us* of the past participle to *-or*. These nouns have generally passed into English with no change of form. Thus:

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Delaware College.

| VERB    | PAST PARTICIPLE | LATIN NOUN | ENGLISH NOUN     |
|---------|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| agō     | āctus           | āctor      | <i>actor</i>     |
| audiō   | auditus         | auditor    | <i>auditor</i>   |
| capio   | captus          | captor     | <i>captor</i>    |
| inveniō | inventus        | inventor   | <i>inventor</i>  |
| liberō  | liberātus       | liberātor  | <i>liberator</i> |
| moneō   | monitus         | monitor    | <i>monitor</i>   |
| narrō   | narrātus        | narrātor   | <i>narrator</i>  |
| navigō  | navigātus       | navigātor  | <i>navigator</i> |
| spectō  | spectātus       | spectātor  | <i>spectator</i> |
| vincō   | victus          | victor     | <i>victor</i>    |

The number of these nouns, both in Latin and English, is very great. Some of the Latin nouns have a feminine form in **-trix**: as, **administrātrix**, **victrix**, etc. The same suffix is used in English: as, *administrator*, M.; *administratrix*, F.

### EXERCISES

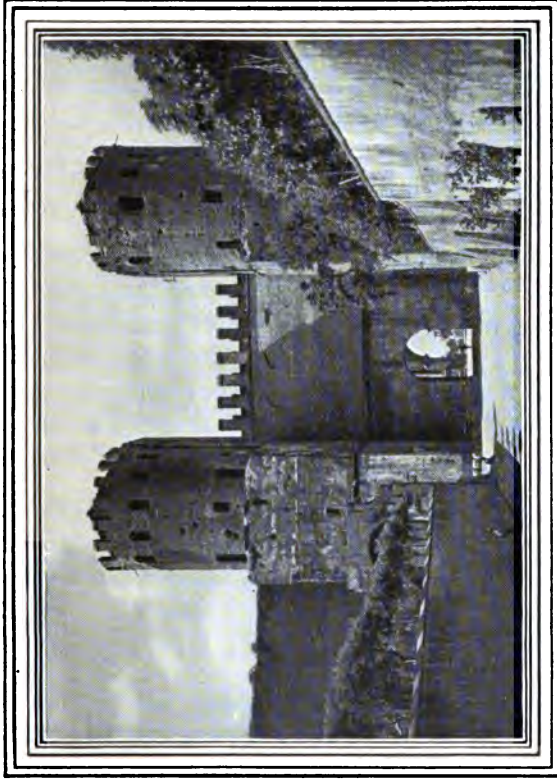
First learn the special vocabulary, page 378

**575.** 1. Rōmānī bellum cum Albānīs gerentēs omnēs nōn pugnāvērunt. 2. Nam imperātōrēs melius cōsiliū docēbant. 3. Trēs frātrēs, virtūtis magnae et rei militāris peritī, utrimque (*from each side*) dēlēcti sunt. 4. Apud duōs exercitūs ācerrimē pugnātum est. 5. Curiātiis interfectis, civitās Rōmāna maiōrem potestātem habuit. 6. Albānī vērō dolōrem magnum passi sunt.

**576. Derivation.** Using prefixes previously studied (§ 497) and such suffixes as appear in § 426, and any others you know, make a list of at least twenty English derivatives from the verbs *scribō*, *sūmō*, *iaciō*, *audiō*, *pōnō*.



**Eleventh Review. Lessons LXXXII-LXXXVIII, §§ 788-792**



THE GATE OF ST. SEBASTIAN

Rome is still a walled town. The wall built about 600 B. C. by King Servius Tullius sufficed for nine hundred years, though the city had spread far beyond it on every side. But about A. D. 300 the danger of barbarian invasion became so great that the present wall was constructed. It is nearly twelve miles in circuit and has fifteen gates. The gate in the picture is the Porta Appia, now called the Gate of St. Sebastian, through which passes the Appian Way



## LESSON LXXXIX

Scientia crēscat, vīta colātur—Let knowledge grow, let  
life be enriched<sup>1</sup>

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE COMPARED

**577. Subjunctive Mood.** Besides the indicative and imperative, Latin has a third mood, called the subjunctive.

**578. Tenses of Subjunctive.** The subjunctive has four tenses : present, past, perfect, and past perfect.

The personal endings, active and passive, are the same as in the indicative.

*a.* The meaning of the subjunctive varies in different constructions to such a degree that it is not practical to translate the subjunctive forms in the paradigms.

**579. Present Subjunctive of First Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is **-ē-**, which takes the place of **-ā-**, the final vowel of the present stem : *as*,

ACTIVE  
 $\text{voc}(\bar{a}) + \bar{e} + m = \text{vocem}$

PASSIVE  
 $\text{voc}(\bar{a}) + \bar{e} + r = \text{vocer}$

**580.** In the subjunctive, as elsewhere, a long vowel is shortened before **nt** and final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r** (see § 194). The present subjunctive is inflected as follows :

| ACTIVE VOICE     |                 | PASSIVE VOICE         |                  |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>vo'cem</i> | <i>vocē'mus</i> | <i>vo'cer</i>         | <i>vocē'mur</i>  |
| 2. <i>vo'cēs</i> | <i>vocē'tis</i> | <i>vocē'ris (-re)</i> | <i>vocē'mini</i> |
| 3. <i>vo'cet</i> | <i>vo'cent</i>  | <i>vocē'tur</i>       | <i>vocen'tur</i> |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of The University of Chicago.

**581. Present Subjunctive of Second Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive in the second conjugation is *-ā-*, which is added to the present stem and is followed by the personal endings: as,

ACTIVE *monē + ā + m = moneam* PASSIVE *monē + ā + r = monear*

Long vowels are shortened in the usual places (§ 194).

| ACTIVE VOICE      |                  | PASSIVE VOICE          |                   |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>mo'neam</i> | <i>moneā'mus</i> | <i>mo'near</i>         | <i>moneā'mur</i>  |
| 2. <i>mo'neās</i> | <i>moneā'tis</i> | <i>moneā'ris (-re)</i> | <i>moneā'mini</i> |
| 3. <i>mo'neat</i> | <i>mo'neant</i>  | <i>moneā'tur</i>       | <i>monean'tur</i> |

**582. Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.** The indicative mood asserts facts or inquires after facts. The subjunctive, on the other hand, expresses *desires, wishes, purposes, possibilities, expectations*, and the like. The following sentences illustrate the difference between indicative and subjunctive ideas.

| INDICATIVE IDEAS                                                                                        | SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>We call him</i><br><i>Eum vocāmus</i>                                                             | 1. <i>Let us call him</i><br><i>Eum vocēmus</i> (desire)                                                                   |
| 2. <i>You see the city</i><br><i>Urbem vidēs</i>                                                        | 2. <i>May you see the city</i><br><i>Urbem videās</i> (wish)                                                               |
| 3. <i>Scouts come who warn you</i><br><i>Explōrātōrēs veniunt quī tē monent</i>                         | 3. <i>Scouts come to warn (or who are to warn) you</i><br><i>Explōrātōrēs veniunt quī tē moneant</i> (purpose)             |
| 4. <i>They fight bravely</i><br><i>Fortiter pugnant</i>                                                 | 4. <i>They would fight bravely</i><br><i>Fortiter pugnent</i> (possibility)                                                |
| 5. <i>He waits at Rome until the enemy are overcome</i><br><i>Rōmae exspectat dum hostēs superantur</i> | 5. <i>He waits at Rome until the enemy shall be overcome</i><br><i>Rōmae exspectat dum hostēs superentur</i> (expectation) |

## EXERCISE

583. Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative, and which in the subjunctive, in a Latin translation?

And we won't come back till it's over over there.

How splendidly our soldiers made good the words of their song. Who would have expected so speedy and so glorious a victory? They were young. They were fine. They were brave. But they had not been tested. "Let us hope, let us have confidence," was the best one could say. The crisis was at hand. At Paris, less than forty miles away, one might hear the thunder of the guns. And still the enemy pressed on and the brave French were forced back. American forces were rushed to the front. The French urged retreat to a stronger position. "We came to fight, not to retreat," said the Yanks. Then in plunged the Marines. May their glory ever shine! And what they did thrilled the world. From that day onward the Stars and Stripes blazed the victorious trail.

'Tis the Star-Spangled Banner, O long may it wave  
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave!

584. Inflect the present subjunctive, active and passive, of *vāstō*, *moveō*, *servō*, *iubeō*.



GREEK VASES

## LESSON XC

Scūtō bonae voluntātis tuae corōnāstī nōs—Thou hast  
encompassed us by the shield of Thy loving-kindness<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS · SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

**585. Present Subjunctive of Third Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive of the third conjugation is **-ā-**. This **-ā-** takes the place of **-e**, the final vowel of the present stem, and is followed by the personal endings :

ACTIVE **reg(e) + ā + m = regam**      PASSIVE **reg(e) + ā + r = regar**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. re'gam | regā'mus |
| 2. re'gās | regā'tis |
| 3. re'gat | re'gant  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

- |                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| re'gar         | regā'mur  |
| regā'ris (-re) | regā'mini |
| regā'tur       | regan'tur |

**a.** In like manner inflect **capiam**, the present subjunctive of **capīō**, and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation (see § 836).

**586. Present Subjunctive of Fourth Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive of the fourth conjugation is **-ā-**. This is added to the present stem and is followed by the personal endings :

ACTIVE **audī + ā + m = audiam**      PASSIVE **audī + ā + r = audiar**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. au'diam | audiā'mus |
| 2. au'diās | audiā'tis |
| 3. au'diat | au'diant  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| au'diar         | audiā'mur  |
| audiā'ris (-re) | audiā'mini |
| audiā'tur       | audian'tur |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Maryland. From the Latin translation of the Bible.



**587. Subjunctive of Purpose.** Observe the following sentence:

**Explōrātōrēs veniunt quī tē moneant,** *scouts come to warn you.*

The verb **moneant** in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it expresses the scouts' purpose. This use of the subjunctive is called the *subjunctive of purpose*. In English the purpose is often expressed, as here, by the infinitive. *It is never so expressed in good Latin prose.*

**588. Rule for Subjunctive of Purpose.** *A clause expressing purpose takes the subjunctive.*

**589.** A clause of purpose is introduced by the relative pronoun **quī** (as above), or by **ut**, *in order that, that*; or, if negative, by **nē**, *in order that not, that not, lest*.

**Caesar mittit milītēs qui agrōs vāstent,** *Caesar sends soldiers to lay waste (literally, who should lay waste) the fields*

**Milītēs veniunt ut agrōs vāstent,** *soldiers come to lay waste (literally, in order that they may lay waste) the fields*

**Agricolae pugnant nē agrī vāstentur,** *the farmers fight that their fields may not be laid waste*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

**590.** 1. Dux, vir summae virtūtis, praemittit explōrātōrēs qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. 2. Iubet eōs celerrimē properāre nē tempus āmittant. 3. Interim quidam princeps, vir summā potestāte apud Gallōs, ducem quaerit ut condiciōnēs pācis petat. 4. Sed dux eum rapit ut dē eō supplicium sūmat. 5. Tum vērō suōs (*his men*) convocat ut ratiōnem proeli doceat.

**591.** 1. The soldier asks for better arms that he may not lose his life. 2. The king sends his son to hear the conditions of peace. 3. He follows this plan lest he lose the supreme power. 4. An army is hastening to inflict punishment on him.

## LESSON XCI

Et docēre et rērum exquirere causās — Both to teach and to search  
out the reasons of things<sup>1</sup>

### PAST SUBJUNCTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**592. Inflection of Past Subjunctive.** The past subjunctive of any verb may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active. The past subjunctive of **vocō** and **moneō** is inflected as follows :

#### ACTIVE VOICE

|             |             |          |             |
|-------------|-------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. vocā'rem | vocārē'mus  | monē'rem | monērē'mus  |
| 2. vocā'rēs | vocārē'tis  | monē'rēs | monērē'tis  |
| 3. vocā'ret | vocārē'rent | monē'ret | monērē'rent |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

|                     |             |                  |             |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. vocā'rer         | vocārē'mur  | monē'rer         | monērē'mur  |
| 2. vocārē'ris (-re) | vocārē'mini | monērē'ris (-re) | monērē'mini |
| 3. vocārē'tur       | vocāren'tur | monērē'tur       | monēren'tur |

**593. Sequence of Tenses Defined.** Tenses referring to present or future time are called *primary* tenses. Tenses referring to past time are called *secondary* tenses. As a rule, the tenses of the verbs used in the principal and the dependent clause of a complex sentence harmonize ; that is, all are primary or all are secondary. For example, in *He says that he is coming* both of the verbs are present and in a primary tense ; but if we change *He says* to *He said*, a corresponding change takes place in the verb in the dependent clause, and we say *He said that he was coming*, both of the verbs being in a secondary tense. This harmony between the tenses is called the *sequence of tenses*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Georgia.



## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

**597.** 1. Partem impedimentōrum relinquit ut ad illud oppidum celeriter perveniat. 2. Interim imperātor trēs legiōnēs remiserat quae illōs finēs statim pācārent. 3. Propter nātūrā eius loci nēmō excēdere potuit quī fortūnam miseram nostram nūntiāret. 4. Hostēs vāllum decem milia passuum longum et fossam octō pedum perdūxerant ut itinere nostrōs prohibērent. 5. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō, multī peritī rei militāris domum contendērunt ut prō rē publicā pugnārent. 6. Ampliōrēs cōpiās expectābimus nē hostēs summum montem<sup>1</sup> obtineant. 7. Propter vulnera imperātor in castris manēre dēbet atque mittere aliquem quī animōs militum hortētur. 8. Quidam vir laudis cupidissimus librum dē suis victōriis scripsit. 9. Quidam vērō civēs, timōre summō permōti, Caesarem quaerunt ut eum dē ratiōne belli cōsulant.

1. *summum montem, the top of the mountain.*

**598.** 1. Cæsar forbade the Germans to advance farther, lest they should settle in Gaul. 2. After all things<sup>1</sup> had been prepared, he climbed to the top of the mountain to storm the camp. 3. I shall arrive at Rome<sup>2</sup> at daybreak<sup>3</sup> that I may undertake this serious business of the republic immediately. 4. Scævola came to put<sup>4</sup> the king to death. 5. Because of his supreme valor no one inflicted punishment on him.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Accusative without a preposition. 3. Latin, *first light*, ablative of time. 4. Latin, *give the king to death*.

## LESSON XCII

Artēs, scientia, vērītās — The arts, knowledge, truth<sup>1</sup>

### PAST SUBJUNCTIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS NOUN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

599. Inflection of Past Subjunctive. The past subjunctive of *regō* and *audiō* is inflected as follows :

#### ACTIVE VOICE

|             |            |          |            |
|-------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. re'gerem | regerē'mus | audi'rem | audirē'mus |
| 2. re'gerēs | regerē'tis | audi'rēs | audirē'tis |
| 3. re'geret | re'gerent  | audi'ret | audir'ent  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

|                     |             |                  |             |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. re'gerer         | regerē'mur  | audi'rer         | audirē'mur  |
| 2. regere'ris (-re) | regerē'mini | audirē'ris (-re) | audirē'mini |
| 3. regere'tur       | regeren'tur | audirē'tur       | audiren'tur |

*a.* Like *regerem* inflect *caperem*, the past subjunctive of *capīō*, and other *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation (see § 836).

600. **Noun Clause Defined.** A clause is often used as a part of speech, and is then named after the part of speech to which it is equivalent (cf. § 385). Thus we saw in § 386 that a relative clause has the force of an adjective and hence is called an adjective clause. A clause may modify a verb like an adverb, and is then called an adverbial clause : as, *vēnērunt ut pācem peterent*, *they came to seek peace* (adverbial clause of purpose). Similarly, a clause that is used as a noun is called a *noun* clause. Such a clause is often the subject or object of a verb : as,

*That we should agree seems impossible* (clause used as subject)

*Cæsar commanded that the captives should be let go* (clause used as object)

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Michigan.

**601. Noun Clauses of Purpose.** In English, verbs of *asking, commanding, urging*, etc. are usually followed by an infinitive clause as object: as,

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>They asked</i>     | } <i>me to come</i> |
| <i>They commanded</i> |                     |
| <i>They urged</i>     |                     |

Verbs of this kind denote a purpose or desire that something be done, and the infinitive expresses what that something is. But in Latin, as we have learned (§ 582), a purpose or desire is not expressed by the infinitive, but by the subjunctive. Compare the following English and Latin sentences:

*They urged me to come*

*Hortābantur mē ut venirem* (lit. *that I should come*)

**602. Rule for Noun Clauses of Purpose.** *Verbs denoting a purpose or desire that something be done are followed by a subjunctive clause as object, introduced by ut or nē.*

**603.** The following common verbs are regularly followed by a noun clause with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive:

*hortor, urge*

*imperō, order* (with the dative of the *person* ordered and a subjunctive clause of the *thing* ordered)

*moneō, advise*

*persuādeō, persuade* (with the same construction as *imperō*)

*petō, rogō, beg, ask*

*postulō, demand, require*

a. Remember that *iubeō, order*, takes the infinitive as in English (§ 367). Compare the following sentences:

*Iubeō eum venīre, I order him to come*

*Imperō ei ut veniat, I give orders to him that he come*

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

**604.** 1. Maximē lēgātōs hortātus est ut dē rē frūmentāriā prōvidērent. 2. Imperātor rēgī imperat nē sociīs populī Rōmānī noceat. 3. Gallī, timōre servitūtis permōtī, postulāvērunt ut exercitus rei pūblicae ex finibus suis excēderet. 4. Plūrimīs vulneribus acceptīs, quīdam nōbis persuāsit ut fugam temptārēmus. 5. Propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae imperātor monuit ut castra in alium locum movērēntur. 6. Petimus et hortāmur ut nōs ab iniūriis dēfendās. 7. Ad urbem tertiā hōrā pervēnī, sed nēmō mē rogāvit ut ūnum (*even one*) diem manērem. 8. Proximō diē magna multitūdō vēnit ut mē cōsuleret et dē condiōnibus pācis quaereret. 9. His rēbus gestis, lēgātus cum tribus legiōnibus relictus est ut dē rē frūmentāriā prōvidēret.

**605.** 1. Because of <sup>1</sup> your wounds I urge you not to try<sup>2</sup> that long journey. 2. You asked him to look out<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> the grain supply, didn't you<sup>4</sup>? Not at all. 3. Seek for the general and demand that he lead his forces out of my territory. 4. He ordered<sup>5</sup> the 'captives not to attempt<sup>2</sup> flight. 5. The woman demanded that the money be found.

1. The ablative of cause might be used, but the accusative with **propter** is more common. 2. Not infinitive. 3. *dē*. 4. On this form of question, review § 251. 5. What construction follows **iubeō**? What **imperō**?



GLADIATORS' HELMETS

## LESSON XCIII

Dei sub nūmine viget—She flourishes under the will of God<sup>1</sup>

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

**606. Subjunctive of *sum*.** The subjunctive of *sum* is inflected as follows:

| PRESENT           |                  | PAST            |                   |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>sim</i>     | <i>simus</i>     | <i>essem</i>    | <i>essē'mus</i>   |
| 2. <i>sis</i>     | <i>sitis</i>     | <i>essēs</i>    | <i>essē'tis</i>   |
| 3. <i>sit</i>     | <i>sint</i>      | <i>esset</i>    | <i>essent</i>     |
| PERFECT           |                  | PAST PERFECT    |                   |
| 1. <i>fu'erim</i> | <i>fue'rimus</i> | <i>fuis'sem</i> | <i>fuissē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>fu'eris</i> | <i>fue'ritis</i> | <i>fuis'sēs</i> | <i>fuissē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>fu'erit</i> | <i>fu'erint</i>  | <i>fuis'set</i> | <i>fuis'sent</i>  |

**607. Subjunctive of *possum*.** The subjunctive of *possum* is inflected as follows:

| PRESENT             |                    | PAST              |                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>possim</i>    | <i>possī'mus</i>   | <i>possem</i>     | <i>possē'mus</i>    |
| 2. <i>possis</i>    | <i>possī'tis</i>   | <i>possēs</i>     | <i>possē'tis</i>    |
| 3. <i>possit</i>    | <i>possint</i>     | <i>posset</i>     | <i>possent</i>      |
| PERFECT             |                    | PAST PERFECT      |                     |
| 1. <i>potu'erim</i> | <i>potue'rimus</i> | <i>potuis'sem</i> | <i>potuissē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>potu'eris</i> | <i>potue'ritis</i> | <i>potuis'sēs</i> | <i>potuissē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>potu'erit</i> | <i>potu'erint</i>  | <i>potuis'set</i> | <i>potuis'sent</i>  |

*a.* Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative. Note that the past subjunctive may be formed by adding *m* to the present active infinitive (*posse* + *m*), and the past perfect subjunctive by adding *m* to the perfect active infinitive (*potuisse* + *m*).

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Princeton University.



## EXERCISES

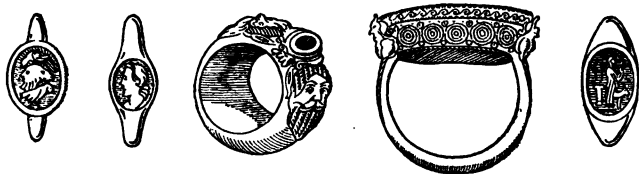
First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

**608.** 1. Si exercitus vester finibus nostris appropinquābit, magnam multitudinem mittēmus quae iter vestrum vī et armīs impediāt. 2. Imperātor reliquās cōpiās prōdūxit nē rē frūmentāriā interclūderētur. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>1</sup> habitā,<sup>2</sup> nē tardissimī quidem rogant ut iniquae condiciōnēs pācis accipiantur. 4. Caesar quidem trēs legiōnēs cōscripserat ac pōstulāverat ut iter hostium maximē impeditrētur. 5. Antea nē eius quidem ōrātiō civibus persuādere potuerat ut rem pūblicam cōservāre dēberent. 6. Nunc vērō nēmō ausus est rogāre nē legiōnēs novae cōscriberentur. 7. Caesar vāllum ad flūmen perdūxit nē aquā ab hostibus interclūderētur. 8. Tum suōs,<sup>3</sup> gravibus vulneribus impeditōs, hortātus est ut sēsē in castris continērent.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. ōrātiōnem habēre = *deliver an oration*.  
3. Possessive adjective used as a noun, *his men*.

**609.** 1. As winter<sup>1</sup> was approaching, he ordered<sup>2</sup> two cohorts to look out for a grain supply. 2. Someone urged the chief to make<sup>3</sup> a speech. 3. He asked the citizens to hinder<sup>3</sup> the march of the enemy. 4. He demanded of them (*ab eis*) that they shut the enemy off from the river. 5. Yet not even he could persuade the timid citizens to enroll<sup>3</sup> new legions.

1. Ablative absolute with present participle. 2. Write with both *iubeō* and *imperō*. 3. Not infinitive.



FINGER RINGS WITH ENGRAVED SETTINGS

## LESSON XCIV

Lūx sit—Let there be light<sup>1</sup>

### THE PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOCŌ, MONEŌ, REGŌ, AND AUDIŌ*

**610. Inflection of Perfect Subjunctive.** Learn the inflection of the following perfect subjunctives :

|           | ACTIVE            | PASSIVE                               |
|-----------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| CONJ. I   | <b>vocā'verim</b> | <b>vocā'tus (-a, -um) sim</b> (§ 832) |
| CONJ. II  | <b>monu'erim</b>  | <b>mo'nitus (-a, -um) sim</b> (§ 833) |
| CONJ. III | <b>rē'xerim</b>   | <b>rēc'tus (-a, -um) sim</b> (§ 834)  |
| CONJ. IV  | <b>audi'verim</b> | <b>audi'tus (-a, -um) sim</b> (§ 835) |

**611. Inflection of Past Perfect Subjunctive.** Learn the inflection of the following past perfect subjunctives :

|           | ACTIVE             | PASSIVE                                 |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| CONJ. I   | <b>vocāvis'sem</b> | <b>vocā'tus (-a, -um) essem</b> (§ 832) |
| CONJ. II  | <b>monuvis'sem</b> | <b>mo'nitus (-a, -um) essem</b> (§ 833) |
| CONJ. III | <b>rēxis'sem</b>   | <b>rēc'tus (-a, -um) essem</b> (§ 834)  |
| CONJ. IV  | <b>audivis'sem</b> | <b>audi'tus (-a, -um) essem</b> (§ 835) |

*a.* Note that the formation and inflection of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive active are like **fuerim** and **fuissem**, the corresponding tenses of **sum** ; and that in the passive **sim** and **essem** take the place of **sum** and **eram** of the indicative passive.

### EXERCISES

**612.** Inflect the complete subjunctive, active and passive, of **pācō, moveō, rapiō, mittō, mūniō**.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Washington. Compare the following verse in the Latin Bible: "Dixitque Deus: Fiat lūx. Et facta est lūx."

HĒRŌ ET LĒANDER

The story of Hero and Leander has been the subject of many poems, both ancient and modern. See Leigh Hunt, Tom Hood, Moore, Tennyson.

First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

**613.** Iūdicīō multōrum poētārum nēmō apud puellās Graecās<sup>1</sup> erat pulchrior quam Hērō, sacerdōs<sup>2</sup> templi<sup>3</sup> quod Sēsti<sup>4</sup> positum est. Eam Lēander, adulēscēns<sup>5</sup> nōbilissimus, tōtō animō amāvit et in mātīmōnium dūcere cupivit, sed lēgēs vetuērunt. Lēander autem nec lēgēs sacrās nec deōs<sup>6</sup> iniquōs veritus est. Tamen ut amor<sup>7</sup> eius cēlārētur,<sup>7</sup> Lēander numquam diē sed tantum<sup>8</sup> nocte vēnit ut eam vidēret. Nec sine summā difficultāte erat hoc iter, nam mare angustum,<sup>9</sup> Hellēspontus nōmine,<sup>10</sup> inter Sēstum et Abūdum, urbem Lēandri, interfuit.<sup>11</sup> Sed nē mare quidem eum interclūdere<sup>10</sup> poterat. Omni<sup>12</sup> nocte Lēander Hellēspontum trānābat<sup>13</sup>; omni nocte Hērō in summā turrē diligenter locābat lucernam<sup>14</sup> quae adulēscēntē per aquās perdūceret.

1. *Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.* 2. *sacerdōs, -ōtis, M. and F., priest or priestess.* 3. *templum, -i, N., temple.* 4. *Sēstus, -i, F., Sestos, a city on the Hellespont at its narrowest point, opposite Aby'dos. The form Sēsti is locative; see § 485.* 5. *adulēscēns, -entis, M., youth.* 6. *amor, -ōris, M., love.* 7. *cēlō, -āre, conceal.* 8. *Only.* 9. *angustus, -a, -um, narrow.* 10. *Ab-lative of respect, § 552.* 11. *interfluō, -ere, flow between.* 12. *omnis in the singular often means every.* 13. *trānō, -āre, swim across.* The Hellespont at this point is about a mile wide, but there is a dangerous current. Byron's successful attempt to swim across is well known. 14. *lucerna, -ae, F., lamp.*

**614.** 1. Many reasons urged Leander not to expose<sup>1</sup> himself to death. 2. Not even Hero could persuade him<sup>2</sup> not to attempt<sup>3</sup> that journey. 3. He asked her to put<sup>3</sup> a lamp on top of the tower. 4. She listened<sup>4</sup> attentively that she might save his life. 5. She ought to advise him to remain<sup>3</sup> at home.

1. *committō.* Not infinitive. 2. *Dative.* 3. *Not infinitive.* 4. *audiō.*

## LESSON XCV

Vēritās vōs liberābit—The truth will set you free<sup>1</sup>

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

615. Observe the following sentence :

*The danger was so great that all fled, periculum erat tantum ut omnēs fugerent*

The principal clause names a cause, and the dependent clause states the result of this cause. In English the verb *fled* in the dependent clause is indicative, but in Latin this clause is introduced by *ut* (*so that*), and *fugerent* is subjunctive. This construction is called the *subjunctive of result*.

**616. Rule for Subjunctive of Result.** *Clauses of result are introduced by ut (negative ut nōn) and have the verb in the subjunctive.*

617. Result is sometimes expressed by a noun clause used as object : as,

*Periculum fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, the danger caused all to flee*  
(literally, *made so that all fled*)

**618. Rule for Object Clauses of Result.** *Object clauses of result introduced by ut (negative ut nōn) are used after verbs of effecting or bringing about.*

619. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are similar ; but a negative purpose clause is introduced by *nē*, while a negative result clause has *ut nōn*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Johns Hopkins University. From the Latin Bible.



HERO AND LEANDER

Leander! Leander! Speak to me!  
Speak to me! Leander! Leander!

MARTIN SCHÜTZE — Hero and Leander

a. When *tam*, *ita*, *sic* (all meaning *so*), *tālis* (*such*), or *tantus* (*so great*) appears in the main clause, the dependent clause denotes result.

b. Do the following sentences denote purpose or result?

*Celeriter fugit nē caperētur*, *he fled swiftly that he might not be taken*

*Tam celeriter fugit ut servārētur*, *he fled so swiftly that he was saved*

*Celeriter fugit ut servārētur*, *he fled swiftly that he might be saved*

*Tam celeriter fugit ut nōn caperētur*, *he fled so swiftly that he was not taken*

### HĒRŌ ET LĒANDER (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

620. Hāc in condiōne rēs diū permanēbant. Sed nihil est certum hominī,<sup>1</sup> nec ūlla fortūna semper aequa. Ōlim tanta tempestās<sup>2</sup> coōrta est<sup>3</sup> ut etiam maximae nāves impetum maris sustinēre nōn possent ac summā celeritātē ad ōrās finitimās fugerent. Tamen Lēander suā cōnsuetūdine<sup>4</sup> ad 5 ōram primā nocte pervēnit ut iter faceret. Mare quidem erat turbidum,<sup>5</sup> sed is lūcem turris trāns mare vidēre poterat ibique<sup>6</sup> erat Hērō ipsa. Itaque omni timōre dēpositō adulēscēns<sup>7</sup> nōbilis vitam suam aquis commisit. Statim autem summis difficultātibus ita premēbātur ut vī ipsā maris 10 superārētur.

Interim Hērō eum multās hōrās exspectābat. Tāli timōre commōta est ut mēns cōsistere nōn posset. Primā lūce vērō ad ōram contendit ut eum quaereret. Dēnique diligenter quaerēns corpus eius invēnit. Eō visō<sup>8</sup> sēsē in mare coniēcit. 15 Nam dolor ipse fēcerat<sup>9</sup> ut puella miserrīma mentem suam āmitteret.

1. *Man is sure of nothing.* 2. *tempestās, -ātis, F., storm.* 3. *coōrior, -iri, deponent verb, rise.* 4. *According to his custom.* 5. *turbidus, -a, -um, stormy.* 6. Two words, *ibi + que.* 7. *adulēscēns, -entia, M., youth* 8. Ablative absolute. Translate, *on seeing this.* 9. *Had caused.*

621. 1. So great was the violence of the sea that no one dared to sail. 2. The timid sailors stood on the shore. 3. They warned him not to throw<sup>1</sup> himself into such a sea. 4. Leander was so hard pressed that he abandoned all hope of safety. 5. Hero, according to her custom, was waiting for him. 6. What caused<sup>2</sup> her to lose her mind?

1. Not infinitive. 2. Latin idiom, *made that she lost*.

## LESSON XCVI

Commune vinculum omnibus artibus—The common bond for all the arts<sup>1</sup>

### THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

622. The dative is the case of the indirect object (§ 58). Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object (§ 222), and some transitive verbs take both a direct object and an indirect object: as, **Mārcus puerō tēlum dedit**, *Marcus gave a spear to the boy*. Whether or not a verb will have an indirect object depends on its meaning. A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form do not take an indirect object, have a meaning, when compounded with certain prepositions, that calls for one. This indirect object is called the *dative with compounds*.

**623. Rule for Dative with Compounds.** *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, de, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, and super take the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Minnesota.

Potestās rēgi nōn deērat, *power was not lacking to the king*  
 Caesar equitātui lēgātum praefēcit, *Cæsar placed the lieutenant in*  
*command of the cavalry*

α. Many verbs compounded with these prepositions *do not take the dative*, because their meaning forbids: as,

Caesar cōpiās ad montem prōdūxit, *Cæsar led forth the troops to*  
*the mountain*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 381

624. 1. Cōsul optimōs cīvēs ēvocāre incēpit ut eis praemia ampla prōpōneret. 2. Magna multitudō convēnerat nē amplius exercitus imperātōri deēsset. 3. Quem nāvibus senātus praeficiet? Senātus virum summae virtūtis dēliget. 4. Barbari ita premēbantur ut oppida reliqua incenderent. 5. Acīē instrūctā, imperātōr iussit Mārcum dextrō cornū praeesse. 6. Peditēs tantum numerum tēlōrum coniēcērunt ut pauci in mūrō cōsistere possent. 7. Cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmāni et iūre belli senātus dēbet illi imperātōri imperāre ut civitātēs inimicās pācet. 8. Altitudō vālli fēcit ut pauci vulnerērentur.

625. 1. The senate ordered that the remaining captives be led away into slavery. 2. Heretofore, according to the law of war, the towns had been set on fire. 3. The senate assembled to place<sup>1</sup> someone in command of the infantry forces. 4. These things he set forth that money might not be lacking to the commonwealth. 5. Is not<sup>2</sup> your mind in command of your body<sup>3</sup>? Yes.

1. Express *place in command* by one word. 2. See § 251. 3. Not genitive.





## LESSON XCVII

Civium in mōribus rei pūblicae salūs—In the character of its citizens lies the safety of the commonwealth<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

626. Many abstract nouns are formed from adjectives by the suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūdō*.

memor-*ia*, *memory*

inop-*ia*, *want*

sapient-*ia*, *wisdom*

amici-*tia*, *friendship*

celeri-*tās*, *swiftness*

liber-*tās*, *freedom*

magni-*tūdō*, *greatness*

alti-*tūdō*, *height*

memor, *mindful*

inops, *poor*

sapiēns, *wise*

amicus, *friendly*

celer, *swift*

liber, *free*

magnus, *great*

altus, *high*

627. Adjectives denoting *quality* or *state* are formed from verbs by the suffix *-idus*.

cup-*idus*, *desirous*

tim-*idus*, *fearful*

cupere, *desire*

timēre, *fear*

628. Adjectives denoting *fullness* are formed from nouns by the suffix *-ōsus* (the English suffix *-ous*).

pericul-*ōsus*, *dangerous*

studi-*ōsus*, *zealous*

periculum, *danger*

studium, *zeal*

629. Adjectives denoting *capability* in a passive sense are formed from verbs by the suffixes *-ilis* and *-ibilis*.

fac-*ilis*, *easy* (able to be done)

crēdi-*ibilis*, *credible* (able to be believed)

amā-*ibilis*, *lovable*

facere, *do*

crēdere, *believe*

amāre, *love*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Florida.

**630. Hints on Spelling.** When in doubt as to whether an English word should end in *-able* or *-ible*, remember that derivatives from Latin verbs of the first conjugation end in *-able*, those from other conjugations end in *-ible*.

|                   |                  |                  |                 |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>portable</i>   | <b>portāre</b>   | <i>visible</i>   | <b>vidēre</b>   |
| <i>vulnerable</i> | <b>vulnerāre</b> | <i>reducible</i> | <b>reducere</b> |
| <i>comparable</i> | <b>comparāre</b> | <i>audible</i>   | <b>audire</b>   |
| <i>habitable</i>  | <b>habitāre</b>  | <i>possible</i>  | <b>posse</b>    |

A few common words are exceptions: as, *tenable*, *movable*, *capable*, *dependable*.

**631.** Most English words ending in *-tion* or *-sion* are derived from Latin verbs. If the Latin past participle ends in *-tus*, use the suffix *-tion*; if in *-sus*, use *-sion*.

| ENGLISH WORD      | LATIN PARTICIPLE |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>exception</i>  | <b>exceptus</b>  |
| <i>contention</i> | <b>contentus</b> |
| <i>monition</i>   | <b>monitus</b>   |
| <i>ascension</i>  | <b>ascēsus</b>   |
| <i>admission</i>  | <b>admissus</b>  |
| <i>session</i>    | <b>sessus</b>    |

### EXERCISES

**632. Derivation.** From your knowledge of prefixes what should you judge to be the meaning of the following compounds of *iaciō*, *throw*?

|                |               |               |                |                |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| <b>adiciō</b>  | <b>dēiciō</b> | <b>iniciō</b> | <b>prōiciō</b> | <b>subiciō</b> |
| <b>coniciō</b> | <b>ēiciō</b>  | <b>obiciō</b> | <b>reiciō</b>  | <b>trāiciō</b> |

**633.** See how many English derivatives you can write from *iaciō* and its compounds.

## LESSON XCVIII

Litteris dēdicāta et omnibus artibus — Dedicated to letters and  
all the arts<sup>1</sup>

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS *volō*, *nōlō*, AND *mālō*

**634.** Learn the inflection of *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *be unwilling*; and *mālō*, *prefer* (§ 840), and note that the indicative and subjunctive are inflected like *regō* except in the present indicative and the present and past subjunctive. These verbs have no passive voice.

**635.** Constructions with *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*. In English we say *I wish to write* or *I wish him to write*. In the first sentence *I wish* is followed by the complementary infinitive *to write*, and the subject of the two verbs is the same. In the second, *I wish* is followed by the object clause *him to write*, and the subjects are different.

Similarly, in Latin, *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* are used with the complementary infinitive when the subject remains the same; and with the infinitive with subject accusative when the subjects are different (§§ 367–369).

*Volō scribere, I wish to write*

*Volō eum scribere, I wish him to write*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 381

**636.** 1. Potestās Caesarī nōn deērat et mālēbat rē<sup>1</sup> esse rēx quam nōmine. 2. Hostēs, cum primī ōrdinēs sē ostendunt, nē cōsistunt quidem, sed in finēs suōs sē recipiunt. 3. Cōpiaē enim quae praemissae erant ut impetum nostrum prohiberent

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Nebraska.

satis firmæ nōn erant. 4. Hās rēs lēgātī prōposuerant ut hae cīvitatēs in fidem<sup>2</sup> ac potestātem populi Rōmānī venīre vellent. 5. Oportuit Rōmānōs urbem vāllō fossāque circummūnīre ut fidēs<sup>3</sup> pūblica servārētur. 6. Illa silva, quae ab flūmine ad mare pertinet, multa genera animālium habet quae in aliīs locīs nōn videntur. 7. Nōnne illa legiō cui filius tuus praeerat parāvit omnia quae ad salūtem cīvium pertinent? Parāvit. 8. Tanta multitūdō convēnerat ut cōpia frūmenti satis<sup>4</sup> nōn esset.

1. *rē*, in reality, ablative of respect, § 552. 2. in *fidem*, under the protection. 3. *fidēs pūblica*, the promise given by the state. 4. The word *satis* may be an adverb, as in 3; or an adjective, as in 8; or a noun, as, *satis supplī'ci*, enough (of) punishment; *satis facere*, to give satisfaction; etc.

637. 1. The senate is not willing to give satisfaction<sup>1</sup> to our enemies. 2. We wish war rather than that kind of peace. 3. For it is necessary to keep the faith which we received from our fathers. 4. Display hope, citizens, and not fear. 5. Fortify<sup>2</sup> the city all about with walls and ditches. 6. For the senate does not wish us to withdraw without a battle. 7. But it wishes us to prepare all things that pertain to war.

1. See § 636, note 4. 2. *Fortify all about* is expressed by one word.



A ROMAN STOVE WITH HOT-WATER BOILER

## LESSON XCIX

Vita hominum lūx—Light, the life of men<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · CONSTRUCTIONS WITH CUM

**638.** Review the word lists in §§ 732, 733, 737, 738.

**639. Constructions with cum.** The conjunction *cum* has three meanings: *when*, *since*, and *although*.

**640.** Clauses introduced by *cum* are of four kinds: *temporal*, *descriptive*, *causal*, and *concessive*.

**641.** *Cum* meaning *when* is temporal or descriptive,<sup>2</sup> and is usually followed by the indicative if the tense is present or future, otherwise by the subjunctive.

Veniam cum poterō, *I will come when I can*

Cum Rōmānī sē ostenderent, hostēs fūgerunt, *when the Romans appeared (showed themselves), the enemy fled*

**642.** *Cum* causal (*since*) and *cum* concessive (*although*) are followed by the subjunctive.

Cum pacem peterent, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcit, *since they were seeking peace, Caesar did not make an attack on them*

Cum primī ōrdinēs fūgissent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōsistēbant, *though the first ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of New Mexico.

<sup>2</sup> A descriptive clause describes the circumstances under which the main action took place: as, *The farmer found the money when he was plowing*. It is, furthermore, implied that but for the circumstances stated, the action expressed in the main clause would not have taken place. Thus, in the sentence above, if the farmer had not been plowing, he would not have found the money.

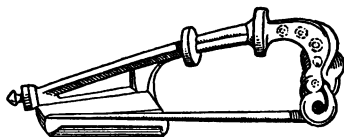
**643.** Rule for Constructions with *cum*. *Cum* means *when, since, or although, and takes the subjunctive except in a temporal or descriptive clause of present or future time.*

### EXERCISES

**644.** 1. Cum rēgina novās grātāsque condiōnēs pācis prōposuisset, nē socii quidem, qui inimici anteā fuerant, arma ac frūmentum dare nōlēbant. 2. Cum<sup>1</sup> via tam longa sit, tamen oportet puerōs puellāsque iter facere. 3. Cum<sup>2</sup> aqua satis alta esset, nautae sine ūllā difficultāte ad insulam parvam nāvīgāvērunt. 4. Cum nāvēs omni genere convocātae essent, rēgina iussit servōs cōpiam frūmentī ex agris proximīs ad ōram maris portāre. 5. Cum ōrdinēs nostrī sē ostenderent, hostēs in oppidum sē recipiebant. 6. Cum Rōmānī in finēs Gallōrum venirent, Galli magnopere commōti sunt. 7. Cum imperātor lēgātōs videt, rogat, "Cūr, lēgātī, vēnistis? Quid quaeritis?" 8. Lēgātī respondent, "Volumus in fidem et potestātem populi Rōmāni venire."

1. *cum* = *though*. The concessive use of *cum* is often indicated by the presence of *tamen* in the main clause. 2. *cum* = *since*.

**645.** 1. Since the money is not sufficient, why do you not demand more? 2. Though you prepare all kinds of arms, you cannot overcome my allies. 3. When I was living at Rome, I often heard and saw famous Romans. 4. When you call me, I will hasten. 5. When the enemy appeared, we withdrew.



GOLDEN FIBULA, OR BROOCH

The Romans were familiar with the principle of the modern safety pin

## LESSON C

Mediō tūtissimus ibis — In the middle course you will go safest<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE IRREGULAR VERB *eō*

**646.** Review the word lists in §§ 743, 744.

**647. Irregular Verb *eō*.** Learn the inflection of the irregular verb *eō*, *go* (§ 842), and the declension of the present participle *iēns*, *going* (§ 817).

### EXERCISES

**648. Derivation.** The irregular verb *eō* has a large number of compounds. Using your knowledge of prefixes, give the meaning of the following common words: *adeō*, *exeō*, *ineō*, *redeō*, *trāseō*.

**649.** 1. Cum<sup>1</sup> exercitus rē frūmentāriā premerētur, dux ad oppidum ire contendit. 2. Castris positis, nostrī equitēs crēbra proelia cum barbaris fēcērunt, sed legiōnēs sēsē in castris continēbant. 3. Germānī cum magnis cōpiis ex finibus suis ierant ut agrōs meliōrēs occupārent. 4. Multi Germānōs ita timēbant ut cum eis pugnāre nōllent et domum ire vellent. 5. Imperātor, cum hanc fāmam audīvisset, dixit, “ Īte domum, sī vultis, atque ego sōlus in hostēs ibō.” 6. Tum tanta virtūs animōs omnium occupāvit ut manēre quam ire mālrent. 7. Cum ad Galliam irēmus, ōram insulae Britanniae vidēre poterāmus. 8. Sine ūllā spē praemī aut victōriae et cum summō periculō pugnāvi, nē amicitiam tuam āmitterem. 9. Puerī miserī, quī per silvam euntēs raptī erant, numquam postea visī sunt.

1. *cum* causal.

<sup>1</sup> From Ovid, a famous poet of the Augustan age. The words are often quoted to urge the value of moderation in all things.

**650.** 1. The senate persuaded the general<sup>1</sup> not to go<sup>2</sup> to Britain. 2. Though we have toiled many days, yet you wish us to go home without any reward. 3. When you have<sup>2</sup> plenty of money, I advise you to go<sup>3</sup> to Rome. 4. Since you fear frequent wars, why do you not make peace? 5. Go into battle with good arms if you wish to conquer.

1. Not accusative. 2. Use the future. 3. Not infinitive.

## LESSON CI

*Lūx et lēx* — Light and law<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

**651.** Review the word lists in §§ 749, 750.

**652. Indirect Statements in English.** Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements :

|                   |   |                                                                                                      |
|-------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Direct statements | { | 1. <i>The Gauls are brave</i><br>2. <i>The Gauls were brave</i><br>3. <i>The Gauls will be brave</i> |
|-------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                     |   |                                                                                               |
|---------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Indirect statements | { | 1. <i>He says that the Gauls are brave</i><br>after a verb in<br>the present tense            |
|                     | { | 2. <i>He says that the Gauls were brave</i><br>3. <i>He says that the Gauls will be brave</i> |

|                     |   |                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Indirect statements | { | 1. <i>He said that the Gauls were brave</i><br>after a verb in<br>a past tense                     |
|                     | { | 2. <i>He said that the Gauls had been brave</i><br>3. <i>He said that the Gauls would be brave</i> |

When an English direct statement becomes indirect,

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of North Dakota.



**a.** The indirect statement becomes a dependent clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.

**b.** The verb remains finite and its subject is in the nominative.

**c.** The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

**653. Indirect Statements in Latin.** In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be expressed as follows :

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Direct state-<br>ments   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Galli sunt fortēs, the Gauls are brave</i></li> <li>2. <i>Galli erant fortēs, the Gauls were brave</i></li> <li>3. <i>Galli erunt fortēs, the Gauls will be brave</i></li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Indirect state-<br>ments | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Dicit or Dixit Gallōs esse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to be brave)</i><sup>1</sup></li> <li>2. <i>Dicit or Dixit Gallōs fuisse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to have been brave)</i><sup>1</sup></li> <li>3. <i>Dicit or Dixit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to be about to be brave)</i><sup>1</sup></li> </ol> |

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences :

**a.** There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.

**b.** The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.

**c.** The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

**654. Rule for Indirect Statements.** *When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.*

**655. Tenses of Infinitive.** When the sentences in §653 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, *sunt* became *esse*, *erant* became *fuisse*, and *erunt* became *futūrōs esse*.

<sup>1</sup> These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.

**656. Rule for Tenses of Infinitive in Indirect Statements.**

*A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

**657. Rule for Verbs followed by Indirect Statements.**

*The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.*

**658.** Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are

**a.** Verbs of saying and telling :

*dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell*

*negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not*

*nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce*

*respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, reply*

**b.** Verbs of knowing :

*cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perfect) know*

*sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know*

**c.** Verbs of thinking :

*existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, believe*

*iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide*

*putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think*

*spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope*

**d.** Verbs of perceiving :

*audiō, audire, audīvī, auditus, hear*

*sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive*

*videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, see*

*intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, understand, perceive*

Most of these verbs you know. Learn the new ones, and use the list for reference.

## EXERCISES

659. 1. Caesar per explorātōrēs cognōverat hostēs inopiā frūmentī premi. 2. Rōmānī audivērunt Helvētiōs proximā aestāte ex finibus suis excessūrōs esse. 3. Lēgātī cum pervēnissent, respondērunt frātrēm rēgis exercitūi praefutūrū esse. 4. Principēs Gallōrum negābant sē oppida sua incendisse. 5. Rēx respondit pecūniam esse rēgīnae.<sup>1</sup> 6. Poētae existimābant potestātem deōrum esse maiōrem quam deārū. 7. His rēbus<sup>2</sup> cognitis, spērāvimus aliquem missūrū esse nāvigium quod nōs servāret.<sup>3</sup> 8. Cum urbi appropinquārēmus, intellēximus mediam partem altis et lātis mūrīs mūnitam esse. 9. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>2</sup> habitā, sēnsimus animum finitimōrum esse nōbis inimicū.

1. *rēgīnae*, predicate genitive of possessor (§ 150). 2. Ablative absolute (§ 400). 3. Subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose (§ 589).

660. Using five of the verbs in § 658, write five Latin sentences, each one containing an indirect statement.



A STREET IN POMPEII

The street is paved with blocks of lava. Note the stepping-stones for crossing the street in wet weather. Vesuvius looms in the distance

## LESSON CII

Quī trānstulit sustinet — He who transplanted sustains<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERŌ*

661. Review the word lists in §§ 755, 756.

662. Irregular Verb *ferō*. Learn the inflection of *ferō*, *bear* (§ 841). Its principal parts are very irregular, but the different tenses are formed on the three stems as usual.

a. The verb *ferō* has many compounds. One of these is *inferō* in the idiom *bellum inferō*, *I make war on*, with the dative. Learn also the idiom *graviter* or *molestē ferō*, *I am annoyed*, followed by the accusative and infinitive.

### EXERCISES

663. Derivation. Note the prefixes and give the meanings of the following compounds: *ad'ferō*, *cōn'ferō*, *dē'ferō*, *in'ferō*, *trāns'ferō*. Name ten English derivatives from these words.

664. I. 1. *Māvis, nōn vultis, vīs, nōlumus*. 2. *Ut nōlit, nē vellēmus, nōlite, māvultis*. 3. *It, imus, ut eant, eunt*. 4. *Fer*,<sup>1</sup> *tulisse, ferent, tulerant*. 5. *Ut ferrent, lātus esse, nē ferant*.

1. *Dic, dūc, fac, and fer* are the four short imperatives. Cf. p. 100, footnote.

II. 1. *Rōmānī molestē ferēbant illam civitātem sociis bellum inferre*. 2. *Explōrātōrēs nūtiāvērunt summum montem circummūnitum esse et firmō praesidiō tenērī*. 3. *Caesar respondit senātum graviter ferre magnam multitudinem Germānōrum in optimis partibus Galliae sedēre*. 4. *Nōs iūdicāmus vōs nōbis bellum inferre nōn oportēre*. 5. *Rēx dixit memoriā patrum*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Connecticut.

Helvētiōs proelium cum Rōmānis commisisse et eōs<sup>1</sup> magnā caede in fugam dedisse. 6. Cum impedimenta rapta essent, barbari impetum nostrōrum diūtius ferre nōn poterant.

1. *eōs* refers to the Romans and is the object of *dedisse*.

665. 1. We are annoyed that the Gauls are making war on our allies. 2. The king denied that his son had gone. 3. The captives hastened to go that they might observe<sup>1</sup> the battle. 4. When the towers had been moved<sup>2</sup> to the walls, all who bore arms were led out.

1. *spectō*, -āre. 2. *agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actus*.

## LESSON CIII

*Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit*—Virtue surpasses all things<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

666. Review the word lists in §§ 762, 763.

667. **Indirect Question Defined.** When we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION

INDIRECT QUESTION

*Who conquered the Gauls?*    *He asked who conquered the Gauls*

An indirect question is a noun clause and is usually the object of a verb of *asking*, *saying*, *knowing*, or *feeling*.

668. **Moods in Questions.** In English, as the example shows, the indicative is used in both direct and indirect questions.

<sup>1</sup> From Plautus, a dramatic poet.

**669.** In Latin, verbs in direct questions are in the indicative ; verbs in indirect questions are in the subjunctive.

## DIRECT QUESTION

**Quis Gallōs vicit ?**

*Who conquered the Gauls ?*

**Ubi est Rōma ?**

*Where is Rome ?*

## INDIRECT QUESTION

**Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret**

*He asked who conquered the Gauls*

**Rogat ubi sit Rōma**

*He asks where Rome is*

**a.** Compare indirect *questions* and indirect *statements*. An indirect question is interrogative in form and has its verb in the subjunctive, as shown above. An indirect statement is introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and its verb in Latin is in the infinitive : as, *He says that Cæsar conquered the Gauls, dicit Cæsarem Gallōs vicisse.*

**670.** Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as direct questions. *Whether* is usually rendered by *num*.

**671. Rule for Indirect Questions.** *In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive, and its tense is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 595).*

**672.****IDIOMS**

**memoriā tenēre**, *to remember* (literally, *to hold by-memory*)

**novis rēbus studēre**, *to be eager for a revolution* (literally, *new things*)

**in reliquum tempus**, *for the future*

**EXERCISES**

**673. 1.** Rēx rogāvit cūr lēgātī excessissent atque cūr ad sē nōn vēissent. **2.** Imperātor, vir ēgregiæ virtūtis, amplās et integrās cōpiās misit quæ oppidum dēfenderent et cognōscerent quæ esset nātūra locī. **3.** Galli, qui semper novis rēbus<sup>1</sup> studēbant, quaesivērunt quid Rōmānī armis facere possent. **4.** Moneō tē nē in reliquum tempus petās quid agam. **5.** Tenētisne memoriā

quae sint pūblica officia cōsulis? 6. Omnibus rēbus comparātis, dux expectāvit<sup>2</sup> quid hostēs facerent. 7. Hī militēs erant tam timidi ut imperiō<sup>1</sup> ducis pārere nōn audērent.<sup>3</sup>

1. Why dative? See § 224. 2. *Waited to see.* 3. Why subjunctive? See § 616.

**674.** 1. How far distant is the villa? 2. He asks how far distant the villa is. 3. Do you remember the story about Brutus? 4. They asked whether he remembered the story about Brutus. 5. Whither do you wish to go? 6. Do you know whither you wish to go?

~~~~~

Thirteenth Review. Lessons XCVII-CIII, §§ 798-803



A MUSICAL RECITAL

The woman at the left is reciting a poem to the accompaniment of a lyre and two pipes. The pipes are fitted into a band across the piper's mouth, enabling him to blow on both pipes at the same time

LESSON CIV

Mēns agitat mōlem — Mind moves the mass¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE IRREGULAR VERB *fīō*

675. Review the word lists in §§ 768, 769.

676. Irregular Verb *fīō*. Learn the inflection of *fīō*, *be made*, *happen* (§ 843). In the present system this verb serves as the passive of *faciō*. The rest of the passive of *faciō* is regular.

677.

IDIOMS

Aliquem certiōrem faciō, *I inform someone* (literally, *I make someone more certain*), followed by an infinitive with subject accusative or by an indirect question.

Certior fiō, *I am informed* (literally, *I am made more certain*), followed by the same construction as above.

Helvētliis in animō est, *the Helvetii intend* (literally, *it is in mind to the Helvetii*), followed by the complementary infinitive.

EXERCISES

678. 1. Tuā linguā intellegō tē esse Gallum, et certior factus sum tibi in animō esse ratiōnem nostram belli hostibus nūntiāre. 2. Quā dē causā tē rapī iubēbō ut supplicium pūblicum dē tē sūmam. 3. Multa beneficia ā populō Rōmānō antēā accēpisti, itaque tē rogō cūr tē gravissimam poenam dare nōn oporteat. 4. Iūre¹ belli tē ad mortem dūci statim oportet. 5. Magnā parte impedimentōrum relictā, hostēs alii aliam in partem fūgērunt. 6. Sciēbant nec quō īrent nec quid facerent. 7. Explōrātor lēgātum certiōrem fēcit quae² cōpiaē castra obtinērent.

1. In accordance with the law. 2. What forces, introducing an indirect question.

¹ Motto of the University of Oregon.

679. 1. Don't you know why I am unwilling to undertake this business? 2. He asked why they were terrified. 3. He perceived why the camp had been moved. 4. Someone informed the senate that the town could not be taken. 5. We think that you will receive this state under¹ your protection. 6. He had been informed that the army had been led forward. 7. Do you know what the Helvetii intend to do?

1. in with the accusative.

LESSON CV

Litterae sine mōribus vānae — Letters without morals are vain¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW • PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

680. Review the word lists in §§ 774, 775.

681. **Predicate Accusative.** In English, verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming*, and the like may take two objects referring to the same person or thing. The first of these is the direct object, and the second completes the sense of the predicate, and is called the predicate objective or the objective attribute.

The Romans made him consul

The senate called the king friend

682. Similarly, in Latin, *faciō, make; dēligō, choose; vocō and appellō, call*, and the like may take two accusatives: the first, the direct object; the second, referring to the same person or thing, known as the predicate accusative.

Rōmānī eum cōsulem fēcērunt, the Romans made him consul

Senātus rēgem amicum appellāvit, the senate called the king friend

¹ Motto of the University of Pennsylvania.

683. When the verb is changed to the passive, both the accusatives become nominatives; the direct object becoming the subject, and the predicate accusative the predicate nominative.

Rēx amicus ā senātū appellātus est, the king was called friend by the senate

a. Note that *senātus*, the subject of the active verb, becomes *ā senātū*, ablative of agent, when the verb is changed to the passive.

684. Rule for Predicate Accusative. *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, and the like may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.*

685. Dative of Purpose. Observe the following sentence:

Explōrātōrēs locum castris dēlēgērunt, the scouts chose a place for a camp

Note that the dative *castris* expresses the purpose for which the place was intended. Such a dative is called the *dative of purpose* or *end for which*. It is often followed by a second dative denoting the person or thing affected: as,

Hoc erat magnō impedimentō Gallis, this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls

686. Rule for Dative of Purpose. *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.*

687.

IDIOMS

iniuriās alicui inferre, to inflict injuries upon someone

nihil posse, to have no power

praesidiō civitatī esse, to be a defense to the state

688. 1. Omnibus temporibus exercitus erat firmissimō prae-sidiō civitatī. 2. Lēgātus nōs certiōrēs fēcīt tē cōsulem appellātum esse. 3. Rogāvi cūr senātus mihi iniūriās intulisset. 4. Rēx voluit vōbīs auxiliō esse, sed nihil poterat. 5. Certior factus eram tibi in animō esse domum sine mē contendere. 6. Magnō impedimentō hostibus erit si hunc locum castris dēligēmus. 7. Scisne cūr Rōmānī urbem Rōmam appellāverint?

EXERCISE

689. 1. Men like you are a great defense to the common-wealth. 2. The consul called the woman's sister queen of the island. 3. The new city was called Rome by Romulus. 4. It will be a great hindrance¹ to your safety if the citizens make² you king. 5. The chiefs dared to inflict injuries upon the king because he had no power. 6. He asked where the horseman had left his spurs.

1. Latin, *for a great hindrance*. 2. Use the future perfect.

LESSON CVI

Crēscit eundō — She grows as she goes¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

690. Review the word lists in §§ 778, 779.

691. Gerund. A verbal noun is the name of an action: as, *Talking is useless*.

692. English has many verbal nouns ending in *-ing*. When these are in the nominative case, they are expressed in Latin by the infinitive: as,

Seeing is believing, vidēre est crēdere

693. When the English verbal noun is not a nominative, it is expressed in Latin by a verbal noun called a *gerund*.

¹ Motto of the state of New Mexico. Literally, *She grows by going*.

694. The Latin gerund is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, and is formed by adding **-ndi**, **-ndō**, **-ndum**, **-ndō** to the present stem : as,

GEN.	vocandi , <i>of calling</i>
DAT.	vocandō , <i>for calling</i>
ACC.	vocandum , <i>calling</i>
ABL.	vocandō , <i>by calling</i>

Learn the gerunds of the other model verbs, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō** (§§ 833-836). Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice.

695. Uses of Gerund. The gerund has the construction of a noun ; but, being verbal in character, it may have an object : as,

gerendō bellum, *by waging war*

Here **gerendō** is ablative of means and **bellum** is its direct object.

696. Gerund denoting Purpose. The accusative of the gerund with **ad**, or the genitive of the gerund followed by **causā** (*for the sake of*), is often used to express purpose.

Hominēs ad videndum vēnērunt, *the men came for the purpose of seeing, to see* (literally, *for seeing*)

Hominēs videndi causā vēnērunt, *the men came for the sake of seeing, to see*

697. Gerundive. The future passive participle (§ 565) is called the *gerundive* when it takes the place of the gerund. The gerund, being a noun, may be used either alone or with an object ; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun. Observe the following sentences :

1. **Urbem videndi causā vēnērunt**, *they came to see the town*

2. **Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt**, *they came to see the town* (literally, *they came for the sake of the town to be seen*)

In sentence 1, we have the gerund **videndi** and its direct object **urbem**. In 2, we have the gerundive **videndae** in agreement with **urbis**.

Note that the sentences are translated alike. *The gerund with a direct object must not be used except in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.* Even then the gerundive construction is more common.

SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT POINTS

1. The gerund is a noun. The gerundive is an adjective.
2. The gerund may stand alone or with an object.
3. The gerundive construction is more frequently used than the gerund with an object.
4. The gerund with an object may be used only in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.
5. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive after *ad*, or the genitive preceding *causā*, may be used to denote purpose.

EXERCISES

698. 1. *Omnēs mulierēs orātiōnem audiendī¹ causā mānsērunt.* 2. *Omnēs mulierēs ad orātiōnem audiendam¹ mānsērunt.* 3. *Fuga erat tam celeris ut nūllum spatium ad novās cōpiās cōgendās darētur.* 4. *Multis vulnerātīs, reliquī adventum ducis exspectāvērunt, minimē diūtius resistendī causā sed pācis petendae causā.* 5. *Spatium neque arma capiendī neque auxili petendī datum est.* 6. *Haec civitās, auctōritāte et grātiā rēgis adducta, cōpiās pedestrēs ad iter nostrum prohibendum miserat.* 7. *Maximae rēs nōn exspectandō sed agendō cōnficiuntur.*

1. Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?

699. 1. You will make your death more certain by remaining among the Gauls. 2. He made the journey much¹ shorter by building² a bridge. 3. They sent ambassadors to seek³ peace. 4. The cavalry battle was very severe, since⁴ the place was unfavorable for fighting. 5. Cæsar learned, by inquiring, what⁵ the nature of the island was.

1. Latin, *by much*, ablative of measure of difference, § 452. 2. Use both the gerund and the gerundive construction. 3. Use the genitive with *causā*. 4. *cum* causal, § 642. 5. What kind of question? See § 671.

LESSON CVII

Disciplina praesidium civitatis — Training, the defense of the state¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF AGREEMENT AND OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

700. Review the word lists in §§ 783, 784.

701. The Four Agreements.

1. Agreement of the predicate noun and appositive (§§ 61, 104).
2. Agreement of the adjective, adjective pronoun, and participle (§§ 91, 134).
3. Agreement of the verb with its subject (§ 48).
4. Agreement of the relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 390).

702. The Genitive Case.

1. Genitive of the Possessor { *a.* As attributive (§ 34).
 b. As predicate (§ 150).
2. Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive (§ 541).
3. Genitive with Adjectives (§ 554).
4. Genitive of Description (§ 562).

703. The Dative Case.

1. The Indirect Object { *a.* With intransitive verbs, and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 58).
 b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 224).
 c. With verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super* (§ 623).
2. Dative with Adjectives (§ 130).
3. Dative of Purpose (§ 686).

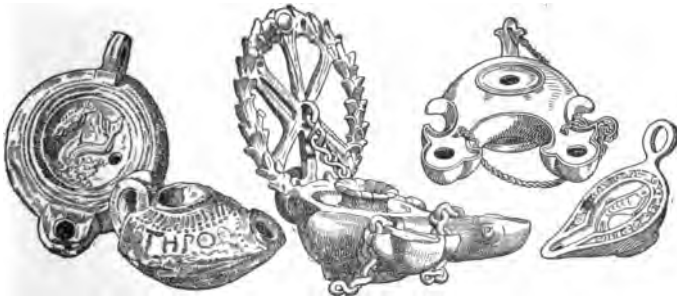
¹ Motto of the University of Texas.

EXERCISES

704. 1. Fortissimi militum quōs vidimus existimāvērunt imperium belli esse Caesaris imperātōris. 2. Socii, timōre commōti, quendam rei militāris peritissimum exercituī praefēcerant. 3. Num senātus memoriam iniūriarū quās nōbis intulisti dēpōnere dēbet? 4. Nōn virtūs sed sapientia rēgi deērat. 5. Militēs cum diūtius impetum sustinēre nōn possent, aliā aliam in partem fūgērunt. 6. Acie instrūctā, imperātor proelium ā dextrō cornū commisit. 7. Cum Rōmae essem, aliquis dēmōnstrāvit domum ubi ille incolēbat. 8. Magna pars equitātūs, hostēs sequendi cupida, summā celeritāte contendit. 9. Decima legiō erat maximae virtūtis. Quā dē causā Caesar huic legiōni maximē favēbat.

705. 1. Marcus is not desirous of living¹ in the city. 2. Which of you is a Roman citizen? Neither of us. 3. You alone could persuade me to hold² back the army. 4. Whom did the general place in command of the left wing? 5. A wall of great height was a strong defense³ to the town. 6. A certain man inflicted these injuries on me. 7. He was desirous of your friendship.

1. Genitive of the gerund. 2. Not infinitive. 3. Dative of purpose.



ROMAN LAMPS

LESSON CVIII

Studiis et rebus honestis — To pursuits and deeds that are honorable¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

706. Review the word lists in §§ 788, 789.

707. The Accusative Case.

1. The Accusative as Direct Object (§ 35).
2. The Predicate Accusative (§ 684).
3. The Accusative as Subject of an Infinitive (§ 368).
4. The Accusative of Duration or Extent (§ 547).
5. The Accusative denoting the Place to Which (§ 481).

708. The Ablative Case.

I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):

1. Cause (§ 165).
2. Means (§ 166).
3. Accompaniment (§ 167).
4. Manner (§ 168).
5. Measure of Difference (§ 452).
6. Ablative Absolute (§ 400).
7. Description (§ 562).
8. Respect (§ 552).

II. Ablative rendered *from* (or *by*):

1. Place from Which (§§ 295, 482).
2. Separation (§ 296).
3. Personal Agent with a Passive Verb (§ 261).

III. Ablative rendered *in* (or *at*):

1. Place at or in Which (§ 483).
2. Time When or within Which (§ 493).

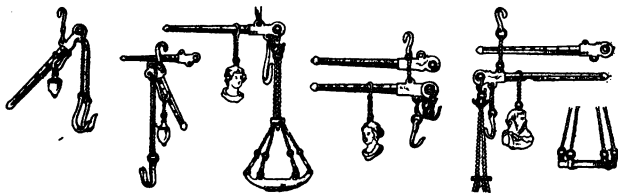
¹ Motto of the University of Vermont.

EXERCISES

709. 1. Dux trēs cohortēs praemisit quae vāllum fossamque duo milia passuum per eōrum finis perdūcerent. 2. Aliquae civitatēs scripsērunt sē malle in fidē populi Rōmāni permanēre. 3. Paucis praesidiō castris relictis, barbari tertiā hōrā aciem instruere incēpērunt. 4. Plūrēs diēs iter intermissum est ut milites oppida hostium expugnārent. 5. Plūrimum vērō apud Gallōs haec civitas et virtūte et hominum numerō poterat. 6. Illa victōria nobis erat grātor quam omnēs aliae. 7. Imperātor captivum rogāvit quā dē causā salutem fugā petisset. 8. Hōc proeliō cōfectō, lēgātus suis laudem idōneam dedit quod summā virtūte pugnāverant. 9. Rēx cum ā senātū amicus appellātus esset, tamen erat animō inimicō.

710. 1. The Gauls, meanwhile, seize the bridge that they may prevent¹ our march. 2. On hearing this,² Cæsar hastened from Rome into Gaul with three legions. 3. The citizens informed³ me that a certain man had called Cæsar king. 4. Because of the greatness of the crowd no one could hear the oration. 5. Some towns are much larger than others. 6. The next day he went home to see⁴ his son.

1. Latin, *keep us from the march*. 2. Latin, *these things having been heard*, ablative absolute. 3. Latin, *made more certain*. 4. Why not infinitive?



STEELYARDS FROM POMPEII

These seem to have been a Roman invention. Nearly all the scales found at Pompeii are of this pattern

LESSON CIX

*Ecce quam bonum — Behold how good*¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

711. Review the word lists in §§ 793, 794.

712. The Gerund and Gerundive.

1. The Gerund and its Construction (§§ 691–696).
2. The Gerundive and its Construction (§ 697).

713. Constructions of the Infinitive.

I. The Infinitive used as in English :

1. As Subject or Predicate Nominative (§ 370).
2. As Object with Subject Accusative (§ 367).
3. Complementary Infinitive (§ 369).

II. The Infinitive in Indirect Statements (§§ 654, 656, 657).

714. Constructions of the Subjunctive.

1. The Subjunctive of Purpose (§§ 588, 602).
2. The Subjunctive of Result (§§ 616, 618).
3. The Subjunctive with *cum* (§ 643).
4. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions (§ 671).

EXERCISES

715. 1. Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Gallōs novis rēbus studēre. 2. Lēgātī cum pervēnissent, petēbant nē Rōmānī oppidum suum incenderent. 3. Dux mihi imperāvit ut cognōscerem quae ratiō belli esset. 4. Nōs quidem molestē ferimus sociōs nostrōs dē rē frūmentāriā nōn prōvidisse. 5. Propter multitudinem tēlōrum erat difficillimum in vāllō cōsistere. 6. Tam ācritur ab utrāque parte pugnābātur ut

¹ Motto of the University of the South.

multa milia hominum vulnerarentur. 7. Nōne cōpiās integrās praemittēmus ad Rōmānōs itinere interclūdendōs? 8. Cum oppidō¹ mediā nocte appropinquārēmus, tamen omnēs civēs nōs exspectābant. 9. Cum pācem iam petātis, hās condiōnēs prōpōnam. 10. Inopia aquae fēcit ut nōs omnēs premerēmur.

1. Dative with **appropinquārēmus**.

716. 1. Such fear seized the hearts of all that not even the bravest were willing to remain. 2. He asked who was in command of the ships.¹ 3. He demanded that² for the future the army should not be led through our territory. 4. Cæsar built a bridge for the purpose³ of terrifying the Germans. 5. Someone said that you had been placed in command of the army.¹

1. Not genitive. See § 623. 2. *That . . . not*, **nē**. 3. Use **causā** with the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. See § 696.

LESSON CX

Iamque opus exēgī—And now I have finished my work¹

VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF WORD FORMATION

717. Review the word lists in §§ 798, 799.

718. Review of Prefixes.

1. Illustrate the force of each of the following prefixes by a Latin word (§§ 341, 497):

ā (ab)	dē	inter	prō	sub
ad	ē (ex)	per	re-	trāns
con- (com-, co-)	in	prae		

2. What is meant by assimilation? (§ 375.)

3. What changes in spelling occur in compounds of words like **capiō**, **faciō**, etc.? (§ 376.)

¹ From the closing lines of Ovid's great poem, the "Metamorphoses."

4. What is the force of **in-** (**im-**) when prefixed to an adjective or adverb? Illustrate. (§ 374.)

719. Review of Suffixes.

1. What can you say in general about the use of suffixes in Latin and in English? (§§ 425, 426.)

2. How are Latin nouns like **rēctor**, **victor**, etc. formed, and how are the corresponding English words derived? (§ 574.)

3. By means of what suffixes are abstract nouns formed from adjectives? Illustrate. (§ 626.)

4. Explain the force of the suffix in the following adjectives: **cupidus**, **periculōsus**, **facilis**, **crēdibilis**. (§§ 627-629.)

720. Hints on Spelling.

1. What generally determines whether an English word should end in **-ant** or **-ent**? Illustrate. (§ 573.)

2. What is the rule for the spelling of English words in **-able** or **-ible**? in **-tion** or **-sion**? Illustrate. (§§ 630, 631.)



THE GAULS IN SIGHT OF ROME

OPTIONAL LESSONS

OPTIONAL LESSON A

Ēmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs — She refines character and
does not allow it to be untrained ¹

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION

721. A relative clause with its verb in the indicative states a fact concerning the antecedent: as,

*Caesar erat imperātor quī Gallōs superāvit, Cæsar was the general
who overcame the Gauls*

722. A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is often used to *describe* an antecedent. Such a clause is called a relative clause of characteristic or description: as,

*Quondam erat imperātor quī Gallōs superāret, once there was a
general who overcame the Gauls*

a. A relative clause is descriptive when the antecedent is indefinite or general and the relative may be translated by the words *of such a character that*, as in the following expressions:

sunt quī sciāt, there are some who know (i.e. of such a character
that they know)

quis est quī sciāt, who is there who knows?

nēmō est quī sciāt, there is no one who knows

ūnus est quī sciāt, he is the only one who knows

723. Rule for Subjunctive of Characteristic. *A relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.*

¹ From Ovid. Motto of the University of South Carolina.

EXERCISES

724. 1. Erant duo itinera quibus Helvētīi domō discēdere possent. 2. Erat nūllum oppidum quod sē armīs dēfendere vellet. 3. Quis est quī viam meliōrem nōbīs ostendere possit? 4. Ille est ūnus quī sciat nātūrā illius loci. 5. Cum Rōmāni oppidum rē frūmentāriā interclūserint, nihil habēmus quō diūtius sustinēre possimus. 6. Alii Gallōrum pācis petendae cupidi erant. 7. Erant alii quī novīs rēbus studērent. 8. Erant quī molestē ferrent novās legiōnēs in nostris finibus cōscribi. 9. Nēmō est quī neget rem pūblicā cōservārī dēbere. 10. Dentātus cum imperium summum tenēret, tamen rūri vivere mālēbat. 11. Quis est quī nōn audiverit Rōmulum urbem suam Rōmam appellāvisse?

725. 1. Once there was a consul who inflicted the severest punishment on his own sons. 2. Who is there that does not remember that man's name? 3. There were some who said that the consul's sons had made war upon their country. 4. It is the business¹ of the consul to look out for the safety² of the commonwealth. 5. He is the only one who has sufficient authority.³

1. Omit. 2. Not dative. 3. Latin, *sufficient of authority*, partitive genitive.



ROMAN CAESTUS, OR BOXING GLOVE

This consisted of thongs of leather bound around the hand and forearm. It was often loaded with lead and was a terrible weapon

OPTIONAL LESSON B

Dē gustibus nōn est disputandum — There is no disputing
about tastes¹

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS AND THE
DATIVE OF AGENT

726. The future active participle in **-ūrus** is often combined with the forms of **sum** to denote future or intended action : as,

vocātūrus sum, *I am about to call, I intend to call*
audītūrus eram, *I was about to hear, I intended to hear*

This is known as the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

727. The future passive participle (gerundive) in **-ndus** is similarly combined with the forms of **sum** to denote obligation or necessity in the passive voice : as,

vocandus sum, *I ought to be called, I must be called*
audiendus sum, *I ought to be heard, I must be heard*

This is known as the *passive periphrastic conjugation*.

728. The personal agent is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (§ 261) : as, **castra ā militibus mūnīta sunt**, *the camp was fortified by the soldiers* ; but with a passive periphrastic form the person by whom something ought to be done or must be done is expressed by the *dative*. This is called the *dative of agent* : as,

Castra militibus mūnienda sunt, *the camp must be fortified by the soldiers*

729. Rule for Dative of Agent. *With the passive periphrastic conjugation agency is expressed by the dative.*

¹ Or *Everyone to his own taste*. Both of these translations are free. Literally, *It ought not to be disputed about tastes*, **disputandum est** being an impersonal passive periphrastic form.

EXERCISES

730. 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 2. Signum proeli imperātōrī dandum erat. 3. Militēs quī aberant ducibus convocandī erant. 4. Legiōnēs quae pugnātūrae erant Caesarī hortandae erant. 5. His omnibus rēbus cōfectis, aciēs erat instruenda. 6. Sed tam breve erat tempus et tantus erat impetus hostium ut magna pars hārum rērum eis intermittenda esset. 7. Eō diē erant quī putārent Rōmānōs nōn victūrōs esse. 8. Quis est quī crēdat illud proelium nōn faciendum fuisse? 9. Mox auditūri sumus dē aliīs bellis quae ā Rōmānis gesta sunt. 10. Longa itinera magnō impedimentō Rōmānis futūra sunt.

731. 1. Many things had to be done by Theseus to save¹ the boys and girls of Greece. 2. That famous man intended to kill the Minotaur. 3. First a long journey to Crete had to be made by him. 4. Then help had to be given by someone. 5. When he had arrived at² Crete, he told the king's daughter what³ he intended to do. 6. Without any difficulty he persuaded her to give⁴ him⁵ aid.

1. Not infinitive (§ 588). 2. ad. 3. An indirect question (§ 671). 4. Not infinitive (§ 602). 5. sibi.



THE ROMANS STORM THE ENEMY'S STRONGHOLD

ORIGINAL STORIES

Study each of the following pictures. Where is the scene laid? What objects do you see? What characters are present? What are they doing? Attention to these details will give you the material for writing a short Latin story or, at least, for composing some disconnected sentences. The vocabulary below each picture will help you.



I. In times ancient as well as modern, women by their patriotic service have saved the state when men were ready to despair.

argentum, -i, *n.*, silver
aurum, -i, *n.*, gold
computō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, compute
dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be
 lacking, *w. dat.*
dōnum, -i, *n.*, gift
mātrōna, -ae, *f.*, matron, lady
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table
ornāmentum, -i, *n.*, jewel

patria, -ae, *f.*, country, native land
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money
periculum, -i, *n.*, danger
scriba, -ae, *m.*, clerk
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit; *ante*
mēnsam sedēre, sit before a table
sine, prep. w. abl., without
summa, -ae, *f.*, sum total
tabula, -ae, *f.*, writing tablet



II. Roman women were famous for their devotion to their children, whom they valued far above beauty or personal adornment.

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant

ānulus, -ī, *m.*, ring

arcula, -ae, *f.*, jewel casket

armilla, -ae, *f.*, bracelet

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, *the woman on the left*

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, train, bring up

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, beauty

Gāius, **Gāi**, *m.*, Gaius, *the younger son of Cornelia*

gemma, -ae, *f.*, gem, jewel

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise

liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children

margarīta, -ae, *f.*, pearl

mātrōna, -ae, *f.*, matron

maximē, *adv.*, most of all, especially

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table

optimus, -a, -um, best

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*, ornament, jewel

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, display, show off

pretiōsus, -a, -um, expensive, fine

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask

splendidus, -a, -um, glittering

superbus, -a, -um, proud

Tiberius, **Tibe'ri**, *m.*, Tiberius, *the older son of Cornelia*

vicīna, -ae, *f.*, neighbor

visitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call on, go to see

III. This picture is clearly of a religious character. The Romans were very faithful in their worship. The household gods comprised the Lares (the spirits of the ancestors), the Penates (the gods guarding the family stores), and the Genius (the guardian spirit of the master of the house). The family shrine was often a niche, containing images of the gods, with an altar before it. In the picture the niche is closed by a metal screen. The serpents painted on the wall are a symbol of the protecting divinities. Incense was burned to the gods; and wine, oil, and food were offered. Family worship was usually conducted by the father. He is not present in this case. Perhaps he is fighting with the Gauls, and is in danger of his life.



absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away, be absent

adorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, worship

ampulla, -ae, f., bottle

ante, prep. w. acc., before

āra, -ae, f., altar

cotidiē, adv., daily

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, burn

dōnum, -i, n., gift, offering

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, train, educate

fūmō, -āre, —, —, smoke

invocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, invoke, call upon

larārium, -i, n., household shrine

Larēs, -um, m. pl., the Lares

mātrōna, -ae, f., matron, wife

oleum, -i, n., oil

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wish for, pray for

pavimentum, -i, n., pavement, floor

Penātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Penates

peristylum, -i, n., the peristyle, the inner court of a Roman house

sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, offer sacrifice

sellula, -ae, f., low stool

stō, -āre, steti, stātūrus, stand

trochus, -i, m., hoop

tūs, tūris, n., incense



IV. Among the Greek heroes none was more famous than Hercules. He went about destroying the huge and fierce monsters that laid waste the land. One of the most dangerous of these was an immense hydra, or water serpent, with seven heads.

cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail
clāva, -ae, *f.*, club
cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, desire, wish
exspirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, breathe out
feriō, -ire, —, —, strike, hit
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire
fortissimus, -a, -um, bravest
fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke
Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules
hērōs, -ōis, *acc.* hērōa (*a Greek noun*), *m.*, hero, demigod

hydra, -ae, *f.*, hydra, water serpent
mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, monster
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, kill
petō, -ere, -ii, -ītus, seek, attack
rapīō, -ere, -uī, -tus, seize
saevus, -a, -um, savage
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear
validissimus, -a, -um, strongest
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lay waste, destroy
vāstus, -a, -uī, -um, huge, immense
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wound



V. Among the most beautiful surviving works of ancient art are the Greek vases. Besides their grace of form, they are adorned with artistic designs and pictures drawn from legends of gods and heroes. Often, too, there are scenes from the classic drama. The colors used are chiefly black, red, and white. How absorbed the young Greek is in his painting! Does the girl seem interested? What do you think the artist will do with the vase after he has finished it?

admiror, -āri, -ātus sum, admire
adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth
albus, -a, -um, white
artificium, artifi'ci, *n.*, work of art
āter, ātra, ātrum, black
color, -ōris, *m.*, color
ērudītus, -a, -um, skillful
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door, doorway
lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, praise
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall

patella, -ae, *f.*, saucer
pēnicillus, -i, *m.*, paint brush
pictor, -ōris, *m.*, artist, painter
pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture
pingō, -ere, pinxi, pictus, paint
pōcillum, -i, *n.*, little cup
ruber, -bra, -brum, red
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at
teneō, -ēre, -ui, —, hold the atten-
tion of, interest
vās, vāsis, *n.*, *pl.* vāsa, -ōrum, vase



VI. Many stories are told about Dædalus (*dæd'a-lus*), the Athenian, famed for his skill as an inventor, artist, and builder. Once, accompanied by his son Icarus (*ik'a-rus*), he visited the island of Crete and by his marvelous works won the king's favor. Later the king became angry with him and refused to let him leave the island. All the ships were seized and all the ports guarded. Longing for home, Dædalus and his son seemed without means of escape. But Dædalus had genius and a courage equal to any deed of daring. What did he do?

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing
audāx, -ācis, bold
avis, -is, *f.*, bird
cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax
dēcidō, -ere, *dēcidī*, —, fall down
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for
docēō, -ēre, -ui, -tus, teach
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight
fugiō, -ere, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, flee
incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, begin
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, shut
 off, cut off
irātus, -a, -um, angry
ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bind, tie
liquefaciō, -ere, —, -factus, melt

mare, -is, *n.*, sea
monitum, -i, *n.*, advice
opus, *operis*, *n.*, work
pāreō, -ēre, -ui, —, obey, *w. dat.*
penna, -ae, *f.*, feather
pōnō, -ere, *posui*, *positus*, put
recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refuse
reditus, -ūs, *m.*, return
reperiō, -ire, *repperi*, *repertus*, in-
 vent
sōl, *sōlis*, *m.*, sun
submergō, -ere, -mersi, -mersus,
 drown
umerus, -i, *m.*, shoulder
volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, fly



VII. The Romans were devoted to their children and trained them very carefully. They taught them to be obedient and respectful, to have reverence for all things sacred, to be truthful and honorable, and to be courageous and self-reliant. Every Roman boy was destined to be a soldier, and so from earliest childhood he learned to despise danger and to regard cowardice as worse than death.

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant

collum, -i, *n.*, neck

columna, -ae, *f.*, column

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house

fortis, forte, brave

ignāvia, -ae, *f.*, cowardice

ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly

leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion

ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bind, tie

lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, play

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother

pavimentum, -i, *n.*, pavement

quod, *conj.*, because

restis, -is, *f.*, rope

rideō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, laugh

saevus, -a, -um, savage

scutica, -ae, *f.*, whip

sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, sit

stō, -āre, steti, stāturus, stand

timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, fear

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear

verberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, beat, whip

virtus, -ūtis, *f.*, courage



VIII. This picture might be called "What happened at Lucia's Party." Lucia is having a party on the porch. Refreshments are being served by two maids. But the children in the adjoining room, drawn from their play by the tempting sights and smells, are getting nothing. What do you suppose they did about it?

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant
bibō, -ere, *bibī*, —, drink
callidus, -a, -um, crafty, sly
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hide, conceal
cibus, -i, *m.*, food
conclāve, -is, *n.*, room
conviva, -ae, *m. and f.*, guest
convivium, -i, *n.*, party
convivor, -ārī, -ātus sum, give a party
crūstulum, -i, *n.*, confectionery
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for
edō, -ere, *ēdī*, *ēsus*, eat
ēripiō, -ere, -rīpui, -reptus, snatch away

ēsuriēns, -entis, hungry
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, fruit
lateō, -ēre, *latui*, —, lie hid
liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children
libum, -i, *n.*, cake
mel, *mellis*, *n.*, honey
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table
occultus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
pānis, -is, *m.*, bread
pōculum, -i, *n.*, cup
porticus, -ūs, *f.*, porch
post, *prep. w. acc.*, behind
sella, -ae, *f.*, chair
vinum, -i, *n.*, wine
virgō, -inis, *f.*, young girl



IX. Roman towns had many shops. These resembled our stalls or booths. They were open in front with the exception of a low wall forming the counter, and were closed at night by wooden shutters. The wares stood or hung about the shop or were placed on shelves within easy reach of the shopkeeper as he stood behind the counter. This is a provision shop. There are eatables of different kinds, and jars of wine. Do you see the sign? What does it advertise? Give Latin names to the characters, and tell what they are doing or make up a story about them. Do not forget the donkey.

altilēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, poultry
alveus, -ī, *m.*, trough
amphora, -ae, *f.*, wine jar
asinus, -ī, *m.*, donkey
bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink
cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese
cibāria, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, provisions
dēfessus, -a, -um, weary
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, eat
emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, buy
farcimen, -inis, *n.*, sausage
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour
holus, -eris, *n.*, vegetables

insigne, -is, *n.*, sign
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table, counter
oleum, -ī, *n.*, oil
pendeō, -ēre, pependi, —, hang,
 be suspended
pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup
quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest
recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refresh
sitiō, -īre, -ivī, —, be thirsty
taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop
tabernārius, -ī, *m.*, shopkeeper
vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, sell
vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine



THE RETURN OF PERSEPHONE

From the painting by Sir Frederick Leighton. Used by permission of the Art Gallery Committee of the Corporation of Leeds. (See story of Ceres and Proserpina, page 275)

SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

A BRITISH CHIEF URGES RESISTANCE TO THE ROMAN INVASION

(AFTER LESSON XXIII)

Est fāma belli, Britannī, novī et magnī. Iam Rōmānī agrōs miserōrum Gallōrum tenent. Iam ōrās Galliae proximās nostrae insulae tenent. Nunc Britannia est in periculō. Iam Rōmānī cōpiās suās convocant. Mox ad insulam nostram nāvigābunt et oppida nostra occupābunt. Sed sumus Britannī; Britannī nihil 5 (*nothing*) timent. Numquam Rōmānīs oppida nostra, filiās nostrās, filiōs nostrōs dabimus. Ad arma! Ad arma! Pugnābimus, pugnābimus. Numquam liberī virī erunt s̄ervi. Superābimus Rōmānōs et magna erunt praemia nostra.

A FATHER'S LETTER TO HIS SON

(AFTER LESSON XLIII)

Quam grāta mihi (*to me*), Mārce, erat epistula magistrī tuī! Nam magister diligentiam tuam laudat (*praise*) et dicit: "Filius tuus est bonus et industrius. Numquam officium suum negligit (*neglect*) et semper ēgregium exemplum tardis dat." Māter ad tē 5 (*you*) librum pulchrum, praemium diligentiae tuae, mox mittet. Soror (*sister*) tua hodiē (*today*) sex annōs habet. Saepe rogat (*ask*): "Ubi est frāter Mārcus? Diū āfuit. Quandō (*when*) revertet (*return*)?" Valē.

FABLE — THE LION'S SHARE

(AFTER LESSON LXI)

Animālīa leō, equus, capra (*goat*), ovis (*sheep*), societātem faciunt. Multam praedam capiunt et in ūnum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partēs praedam dividunt. Praedā divisā, leō dixit: "Prima

pars mea est, nam leō est rēx animāliū. Et mea est secunda pars
meis labōribus. Tertiam partem vindicō (*claim*), nam magnam 5
famem habēō. Dēnique quārtam partem rapiam et si quis (*anyone*)
prohibēbit, eum interficiam."

ARI'ON'S GOOD FORTUNE

(AFTER LESSON LXXX)



ARI'ON SAVED BY A DOLPHIN

*Ari'On, the noted singer, after an enthusiastic reception in foreign
lands, embarks for home laden with treasures*

Ōlim Ariōn,¹ vātēs² nōtissimus, domō longissimē aberat ac
patriam petēbat. Eī rēgēs multārum terrārum praemia amplissima
dederant. Ariōn omnēs rēs quās accēperat in nāve posuerat et
domum sēcum portābat. Iam nāvis in mediō marī erat, neque ūlla
terra vidērī poterat.

5

1. In English, *A-ri'on*. 2. vātēs, -is, m. and f., *bard, singer*.

The crew conspire to drown him and seize his wealth

Tum nautae, hominēs pessimī, barbarum cōnsilium cēpērunt atque inter sē¹ dixērunt: "Certē hic vir ex manibus nostris numquam dīmīttētur.² Eum interficiēmus et omnia quae habet nostra erunt." Deinde vātem corpiunt³ et in mare dēiciunt.

He is miraculously saved by a huge dolphin

Arīōn tōtam spem salūtis dēposuerat et mortem certam exspectāvit. Sed dei ipsī vītam eius cōnservāvērunt. Nam subitō⁴ Arīōn in tergō⁵ magnī delphini⁶ sedēre visus est, quī ad ōram proximam eum celeriter vexit.⁷

CERES AND PROSERPINA

(AFTER LESSON LXXXVIII)

This is one of the most beautiful of the Greek myths. Proserpina's abduction signifies the disappearance of vegetation in the autumn, when the vital forces of nature are drawn deep into the earth. Thus Pluto steals Proserpina. When vegetation reappears in the spring, Proserpina is restored to her mother. Read Tennyson's "Deme'ter and Perseph'one."

Pluto, king of the lower world, falls in love with Proserpina and carries her down to his gloomy realm

Vērō, Venus,⁸ tua potestās est maxima. Nam tū docuisti etiam Plūtōnem,⁹ deum inferōrum,¹⁰ amāre. Ōlim deus per insulam Siciliam¹¹ currum¹² agēbat. Ibi Prōserpinam,¹³ filiam pulcherrimam Cereris,¹⁴ deae agricultūrae,¹⁵ vidit et adamāvit.¹⁶ Eam statim rapuit et equōs hortātus ē cōspectū¹⁷ fūgit. 5

1. inter sē, to each other (literally, between themselves). 2. Allowed to escape. 3. corpiō, -ere, seize. 4. Suddenly. 5. tergum, -ī, N., back. 6. delphinus, -ī, M., dolphin. 7. vehō, -ere, carry. 8. Venus, -eris, F., Venus, the goddess of love and beauty. 9. Plūtō, -ōnis, M., Pluto, king of the lower world. 10. inferī, -ōrum, M., the shades, the lower world. 11. Sicilia, -ae, F., Sicily. 12. currus, -ūs, M., chariot. 13. Prōserpina, -ae, F., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres. 14. Cerēs, -eris, F., Ceres, goddess of agriculture. 15. agricultūra, -ae, F., agriculture. 16. adamō, -āre, fall in love with. 17. cōspectus, -ūs, M., sight.

Ceres, after a long search, discovers where her daughter is. Then she goes to Jupiter and demands that her daughter be returned

Tum vērō Cerēs, gravi dolōre ac timōre commōta, filiam diem noctemque sine fine petēbat. Interim Plūtō Prōserpinam in mātrī-
mōnium dūxerat. Iam dea erat rēgīna inferōrum.¹ Dēnique
Cerēs omnia cognōverat, et iniquō animō apud Iovem² causam³
ita dixit: "Filiam meam, quam per omnēs terrās mariaque petē- 10
bam, invēnī. Eam Plūtō rapuit. Etiam nunc ea in manū eius est.
Plūtō mihi magnam iniūriam fēcit. Iubē eum filiam meam reddere.
Sūme dē eō gravissimum supplicium."

Jupiter compromises the matter so that Proserpina spends six months with her mother and six months with her husband

Iuppiter respondit: "Ita, Cerēs, dicere nōn debēs. Hoc factum
meō iūdicīō nōn est iniūria, sed certus (*true*) amor.⁴ Sed tibi petentī 15
hanc veniam⁵ dabō. Sex mēnsēs cuiusque annī Prōserpina in
rēgnō Plūtōnis manēbit atque sex mēnsēs tēcum erit." Itaque
hieme Prōserpina est apud inferōs,¹ et aestāte, inferis relictis, cum
mātre terram incolit.

CINCINNATUS CALLED FROM THE PLOW

(AFTER LESSON CV)

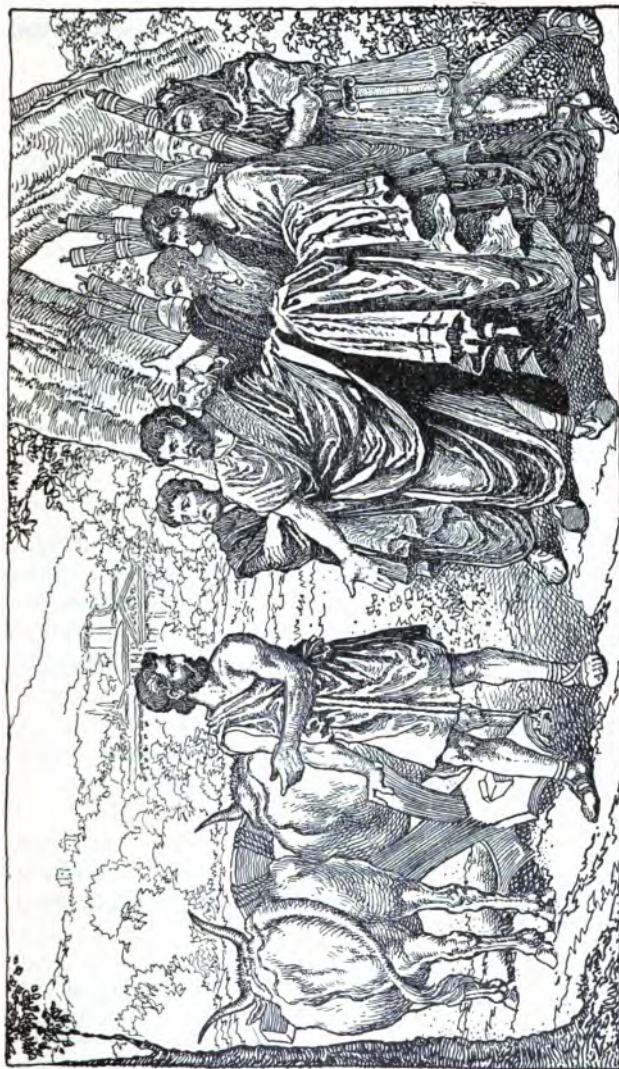
The early Romans were devoted to agriculture

Omnibus temporibus vīta rūstica⁶ summō auxiliō virtūtī ac fir-
missimō praesidiō civitatī fuit.⁷ Hanc rem etiam Rōmānī crēdebant,
et multī eōrum villās habēbant et agrōs suis manibus colēbant.⁸

Cincinnatus was an example of this fine old type

Apud hōs erat Cincinnātus, vir bellō ēgregius et agricola minimē
tardus. Ōlim cum quidam hostēs urbī appropinquārent et iam multī 5
timidī salutē patriae dēspērāre inciperent, mentēs omnium ad
Cincinnātum versae⁹ sunt. Ille autem nōn in urbe sed rūrī erat.

1. See p. 275, n. 10. 2. Iovem, accusative of Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, king of the gods. 3. causam dicere, plead a cause. 4. amor, -ōris, m., love. 5. venia, -ae, f., favor. 6. rūsticus, -a, -um, of the country, rustic. 7. A present perfect, § 312. 8. colō, -ere, till. 9. vertō, -ere, turn.



CINNATUS CALLED FROM THE PLOW

On one occasion the senate, having appointed Cincinnatus dictator, sent lictors to escort him from his farm to the city

Tum senātus Cincinnātum dictatōrem fēcit et mīsit lictōrēs¹ qui eum in urbem dēdūcerent. Lictōrēs rūs contendērunt et ad villam parvam Cincinnāti celeriter pervēnērunt. Ille tunicātus² agrum¹⁰ arābat³ et, cum lictōrēs vidēret, rogāvit quid vellent. Lictōrēs respondērunt senātum eum dictatōrem fēcisse ut patriam ex summō periculō liberāret, et sē vēnisse ut eum in urbem dēdūcerent.

Cincinnatus, though reluctant to leave his work, went with them, but as soon as possible returned to finish his plowing

Agrum relinquere Cincinnātō nōn grātum erat, tamen senātui pārere oportēbat. Itaque pulvere⁴ ac sūdōre abstersō, optimus vir¹⁵ induit⁵ togam quam lictōrēs ferēbant et Rōmam prōcessit. Bellō paucis diēbus cōfectō, Cincinnātus domum properāvit ut arāret.

THE LORD'S PRAYER

Pater noster, qui es in caelis, sanctificetur nōmen tuum. Adveniat rēgnum tuum. Fiat voluntās tua, sicut in caelō, et in terrā. Pānem nostrum cotidiānum dā nōbis hodiē. Et dimitte nōbis dēbita nostra, sicut et nōs dimittimus dēbitōribus nostris. Et nē nōs indūcās in tentātiōnem : sed liberā nōs ā malō. Āmēn.—Matt. 6. 9-13 5

THE GOLDEN RULE

Omnia ergō quaecumque vultis ut faciant vōbis hominēs, et vōs facite illis. Haec est enim lēx et prophētae. — Matt. 7. 12

THE STRAIT GATE

Intrāte per angustam portam : quia lāta porta, et spatiōsa via est quae dūcit ad perditionem, et multi sunt qui intrant per eam. — Matt. 7. 13

1. The lictors were the official attendants of a magistrate and carried a bundle of rods (*fascēs*), sometimes with an ax in the middle standing for the power of the state to punish. Note the fasces on the American dime. 2. *tunicātus*, -a, -um, dressed in his tunic. Compare in his shirtsleeves or in his overalls. 3. *arō*, -āre, plow. 4. *pulvere* . . . *abstersō*, wiping off the dust and sweat. 5. *induo*, -ere, put on.

A LATIN PLAY

PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA

This may be used at any time after Lesson LXXX is finished

CHARACTERS

CEPHEUS, king of Ethiopia	SACERDOS, priestess of the oracle
CASSIOPEIA, queen of Ethiopia	Three citizens of Ethiopia
ANDROMEDA, daughter of Cepheus and Cassiopeia	Friends of the royal family and attendants
PERSEUS, the Greek hero	

SCENE I

A room in the palace. CEPHEUS and CASSIOPEIA are sitting at a table. An ATTENDANT stands at the right near the stage entrance

CEPHEUS. Cūr, Cassiopeia mea, faciem tuam sine fine laudās?
Audācia tua mē terret. Nōnne deōrum invidiam verēris?

CASSIOPEIA. Nōn magis dicō quam vērū est. Spectā mē. Nōnne
sum pulchrior quam ūlla dea? Nē nymphae maris quidem sunt
pulchrīorēs.

CEPHEUS (*raising his hand in solemn protest*). Tacē, mulier, tacē!
Etiam nunc deī supplicium fortasse parant.

CASSIOPEIA. Minimē tacēbō. Supplicia deōrum nōn timeō. Nōn
crēdō . . . (*She is interrupted by a loud rapping on the door.*)

ATTENDANT. Aliquis pulsāt, rēgina.

CASSIOPEIA. Aperī ōstium.

ATTENDANT (*after opening the door*). Trēs cīvēs rēgī dicere cupiunt.

CEPHEUS. Iubē eōs intrāre.

Enter three men in great excitement

CITIZENS (*all speaking at once*). Perimus, rēx! Quid faciēmus?
Quid faciēmus?

CEPHEUS. Quid est, cīvēs? Quis dolor vōs permovet?

FIRST CITIZEN. Ingēns mōnstrum ex mari vēnit atque agrōs meōs vāstāvit.

SECOND CITIZEN. Idem mōnstrum omne pecus meum dēvorāvit.

THIRD CITIZEN. Heu mē miserum! Saevum mōnstrum coniugem liberōsque meōs interfēcit.

CASSIOPEIA (*rising and raising both arms to heaven*). Quid dicitis? Quid audiō? Mea est culpa. Ō verba stultissima! Ō mala superbia!

CEPHEUS. Ūna salūs relicta est. Ad ōrāculum properābō et auxilium petam.

SCENE II

At the seat of the oracle. A veiled PRIESTESS is seated on a high stool

ATTENDANT. Cēpheus, rēx Aethiopiae, sacerdos, aditum petit.

SACERDOS. Dūc eum ante mē. Eum audiam. (*The attendant leads in CEPHEUS, who kneels before the priestess.*) Cūr, rēx, ad mē vēnisti?

CEPHEUS. Tē cōsulere, sacerdos, cupiō. Saevum mōnstrum agrōs nostrōs vāstat et populum meum perterret. Quis hoc mōnstrum misit? Cūr missum est?

SACERDOS. Neptūnus, deus maris, mōnstrum misit. Deus est inimicus propter superbiam rēginae tuae. Illa ausa est sē ante nymphās ipsās pōnere.

CEPHEUS. Obsecrō, sacerdos, quō modō mōnstrum ex patriā agere possum?

SACERDOS. Expiāre culpam rēginae oportet. Dā Andromedam, filiam tuam, mōnstrō et patria tua cōservābitur. Discēde et pārē.

CEPHEUS rises and with bowed head leaves the stage

SCENE III

Room in the palace, as in Scene I. CASSIOPEIA and ANDROMEDA are seated at a table

ANDROMEDA. Quae mora patrem tenet?

CASSIOPEIA. Iam diū eum exspectō. In diēs pericula nostra crēscunt. Pectus meum est plēnum sollicitūdinis et timōris. (*CEPHEUS enters with slow step and sad countenance. The queen and ANDROMEDA rise to greet him.*) Salvē, coniūnx. Vultus tuus mē terret. Quid ōrāculum dixit?

CEPHEUS. Gravissima est fortūna nostra. Neptūnus, inimicus propter superbiam tuam, hoc supplicium dē populō nostrō sūmit. Sī patriam cōservāre cupimus, Andromedam mōnstrō dare oportet.

CASSIOPEIA. Quid! Andromedam dare! (*Clasps ANDROMEDA in her arms.*) Numquam, numquam hoc faciam. (*Buries her face on ANDROMEDA's shoulder and weeps.*)

ANDROMEDA. Audī, māter cārissima, melius est mē perire quam omnēs dare poenās. Parāta sum, pater, pārere ōrāculō.

SCENE IV

On the seashore. ANDROMEDA stands bound to a rock¹ in the center of the background. CEPHEUS and CASSIOPEIA, dressed in black robes, are seated on the ground at the right. Friends of the royal family appear at the left, some sitting and some standing. All exhibit signs of grief

CASSIOPEIA. Perī; hunc dolōrem tolerāre nōn possum. Cūr illa stultissima verba dixi? Ego, nōn Andromeda, mōnstrō dari dēbeō.

CEPHEUS. Vērum dicis, coniūnx; sed verba ōrāculi scis. (*A distant roaring is heard.*) Audisne illum sonitum terribilem? Sine dubiō mōnstrum appropinquat.

FIRST FRIEND. Heu! Heu! Iam mors imminet.

SECOND FRIEND. Etiam Andromeda sonitum audit. Ecce, quam pallidus est vultus eius!

PERSEUS, *wearing helmet and breastplate and grasping a sword, makes a sudden entrance. All look at him in amazement*

CEPHEUS. Quis es, hospes? Quō modō in finēs nostrōs pervēnistī?

PERSEUS. Perseus sum, filius Iovis. Ālis per aurās iter faciō. Unde istae lacrimae? Cūr illa virgō vincula gerit?

CEPHEUS. Illa virgō est filia mea. Imperiō ōrāculi dabitur mōnstrō saevō quod Neptūnus ex marī cotidiē ēmittit. Hōc modō pācātum mōnstrum nobis parcat. Prō patriā Andromeda vitam suam dat.

PERSEUS. Per deōs, rēx, ego ipse hoc mōnstrum interficiam si mihi filiam tuam in mātirimōnium dabis.

¹ A large box, four or five feet high, covered with gray cloth, will serve as a rock.

CEPHEUS (*with great eagerness*). Libenter, hospes, hanc condiçionem accipiō. Sed brevissimum est tempus. Etiam nunc mōnstrum adest. (*A loud roaring is heard.*)

PERSEUS (*calling loudly*). Pelle timōrem ex animō tuō; Andromeda. Tē servābō. (*Rushes from the stage.*)

THIRD FRIEND. Magna spēs mē iam tenet.

FOURTH FRIEND (*pointing to the sky*). Ecce, hospes per aurās altē volat.

FIFTH FRIEND. Iam dēscendit et mōnstrum petit.

All stand gazing toward the scene of combat. The sound of blows is heard mingled with roars of rage and pain. Then PERSEUS reënters and all greet him with shouts of "Iō triumphe." He goes to ANDROMEDA, frees her from her bonds, and, taking her by the hand, leads her to her father

PERSEUS. Ecce, rēx, filia tua. Meā virtūte eam servāvī. Praemium meum postulō.

CEPHEUS. Tua est Andromeda, hospes. Tū es servātor domūs meae.

Curtain falls while all shout "Fēliciter"



PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT

BACULUS THE CENTURION

(Use after completing the Lessons)

Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion, served in Cæsar's army and won his general's highest praise for his courage and fidelity. The incidents here related are partly based on Cæsar's narrative¹ and are partly fiction. They make no claim to historic accuracy.

Baculus on the march

"Venī, māter, celeriter venī! Multitūdō militum appropinquat. Iam primum agmen vidēre possum." Ita magnā vōce clamāvit iuvenis quī ante casam stābat et intentis oculis milites prōcēdentēs spectābat. Verbis auditis, māter ex casā properāvit ac prope filium cōstitit. 5

Iuvenis erat Mārcus Caecilius Metellus,² filius imperātōris nōtissimī quī plūribus ante annis³ vitam prō rē publicā dederat. Iam Mārcus et Livia māter in villā patris habitābant. Illa villa posita erat in viā Flāminiā quae ad Galliam dūcit.

Iam cōpiae multō propius vēnerant. Primum equites prōcēdē- 10 bant, tum peditēs, multa milia hominum, sequēbantur; dēnique magnus numerus equōrum et carrōrum, quī impedimenta ferēbant, agmen claudēbat. Apud centuriōnēs erat quidam corpore magnō, humeris lātis, speciē ēgregiā, quī sē inūsitatā auctōritate gerēbat. Eum⁴ simul atque Livia cōspēxit, vehementer permōta 15 clamāvit, "Obsecrō, quem vidēō? Ecce, mī fili, Baculus centuriō, amicus patrī tuō amīcissimus, quem iam post multōs annōs vidēō. Quam gaudeō! Sine dubiō in Galliam ad castra Caesaris cōpiās dūcit." "Crēdō, māter cārissima," inquit⁵ Mārcus, "deōs

1. See Cæsar's Gallic War, II. 25; III. 5; VI. 38. 2. A Roman regularly had three names: the first, his given name; the second the name of his clan (gēns); and the third the name of his family. 3. See § 452. 4. As soon as Livia perceived him. Eum is placed first as the connecting word. See § 198. a. n. 5. inquit Mārcus, said Marcus. The verb inquit is used with a direct quotation and is followed by its subject.

Baculum ad nōs misisse. Scis mē¹ iam diū cupere nōmen dare et vēstigia patris sequi. Quis melius quam Baculus prima² castrōrum rudimenta docēre potest?" "Bene dicis," inquit Livia. "Castra Baculi nōn longē aberunt. Adī ad eum et dā ei epistulam quam statim scribam."

5

Marcus goes to the Roman camp and is kindly received by Baculus

Plūribus³ post hōris Mārcus ad castra Rōmāna pervēnit. Prō portis castrōrum armātī stābant. Ex hīs ūnus Mārcum rogāvit quid vellet⁴ et quem peteret.⁴ Tum Mārcus, cum respondisset⁶ sē Baculum centuriōnem petere, ad praetōrium⁶ dēductus est.

Baculus, vir rei⁷ militāris peritissimus, propter ēgregiam virtutē 10 ā Caesare saepe laudātus erat et primus pilus creātus erat. Hōc tempore, imperātōre et reliquīs ducibus superiōribus absentibus, tōti legiōni⁸ praeerat. Is, cum Mārcum nōn nōvisset,⁹ tamen eum benignē accēpit. Eī tum Mārcus dedit epistulam mātris. Baculus, epistulā acceptā et apertā, haec verba lēgit.

15

Livia's letter to Baculus

Livia Baculō salūtem¹⁰ dicit. Si¹¹ valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Haec epistula sine dubiō tibi¹² admirātiōnem movēbit; nam post mortem coniugis mei ad tē non scripsi. Sed sciō tē memoriam amicitiae nostrae adhūc tenēre. Iuvenis quī ad tē hanc epistulam adfert est filius meus. Is tibi omnēs fortūnās nostrās nārrābit. 20 Pectus eius studiō rei militāris flagrat. Iam aetatem militārem habet. Tibi eum commendō. Nōmen¹³ dare vult. Valē.

Baculus makes Marcus his aide-de-camp

"Hercle," inquit Baculus, "esne tū filius Mārci Metelli? Certē fuit nēmō nōbilior aut generōsior umquam. Amantissimē tē accipiō.

1. mē . . . dare, that I have long been desiring to enlist (literally, to give my name). 2. prima castrōrum rudimenta, the first principles of military service. 3. plūribus post hōris, several hours later; literally, afterwards by several hours. See § 452. 4. See § 671. 5. For the mood see § 643. 6. See § 221. 7. See § 554. 8. See § 623. 9. In a cum clause of concession. See § 613. 10. salūtem dicit, sends greetings. 11. Roman letters often begin with this sentence. 12. tibi . . . movēbit, will cause you surprise. 13. Cf. note 1 above.

Tū es patri simillimus et corpore et animō. Māter tua, optimā Livia, dicit tē velle cursum militārem sequi." "Vērūm dicis," inquit Mārcus, "et sub tuis signis militāre¹ maximē cupiō." Baculus risit et respondit, "Nihil mihi grātius erit et tē optiōnem² cōstituam."

Baculus resumes the march to Gaul

Proximō diē sonitus tubae Mārcum ex somnō primā lūce susci- 5
tāvit. Baculus iam surrēxerat et iusserat castra sine morā movērī. Celeriter cōpiaē profectae sunt, nec tōtō diē iter intermissum est. Sub occāsum sōlis militēs defessi castra posuērunt. Ita quattuor diēs magnis itineribus contendērunt. Quintō diē intrā finēs Gallōrum ingressi sunt. 10

Gaul and its people³

¶ Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam ei qui ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur. Hi omnes linguā,⁴ institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, quod proximi sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter 15 bellum gerunt.⁵ Quā⁶ de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt. ¶

The Helvetian migration

¶ Hōc ipsō tempore Helvetii, hominēs vagandi⁷ et bellandi⁷ cupidi, de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exire volēbant ut latiorēs 20 agrōs peterent. Molestē ferēbant se naturā loci undique continērī. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus domō exire possent,⁸ unum angustum et difficile per finēs Sēquanōrum, alterum multō facilius per Prōvinciam Rōmānam. Hōc itinere egredi cōstituērunt. ¶

1. The infin. of *militō*. 2. An *optiō* had duties resembling those of an aide-de-camp. The office involved little responsibility or military skill. 3. See map, p. 49. 4. *linguā* and the next two words are ablatives of respect. See § 552. 5. That is, the Belgae have developed their courage by their constant warfare with the Germans. 6. *quā de causā*, for this reason. 7. Gen. of the gerund with *cupidi*. See § 554. 8. See § 723.

Caesar resolves to stop them

His rēbus auditis, Caesar, prōcōsul Galliae, Genāvam, oppidum Helvētiīs proximum, contendit ut eōs prohibēret. Simul Baculō imperāvit ut cōpiās cōgeret et quam¹ celerrimē in Galliam iter faceret. Quā dē causā, ut dictum est, Baculus cursū incitātō/ prō-
cesserat. Iam celerius² omnī opiniōne castris Caesaris appropin- 5
quābat. Interim Helvētīi convēnerant ad ripam Rhodanī, quod flūmen inter prōvinciam et finēs Helvētiōrum fluit. Nē Helvētīi Rhodanum trānsirent, Caesar ripam mūrō fossāque mūnivit et praesidia disposuit. Tum expectāvit³ si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur.

The Helvetii try to cross the Rhone. Baculus brings needed help

Brevi tempore postquam Caesar hās mūnitiōnēs perfēcit, Hel- 10
vētīi perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Primum impetum Caesar facile sustinuit, sed Helvētīi nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, cōnātū⁴ nōn dēstitērunt. Rōmānī, cum⁵ numerō hominū multō infēriōrēs essent, dēfessī proeliis vigiliisque paene cōfectī sunt. In hōc discrimine rērum Baculus cum cōpiīs suis ad castra¹⁵ pervēnit et maximō gaudiō acceptus est. Quem⁶ cum imperātor vidēret, "Peropportūnē," inquit, "Bacule, ades. Sine tuō subsidio diūtius sustinēre vix poterāmus. Quis tandem est iuvenis qui propter⁷ tē adstat?" "Hic iuvenis," inquit Baculus, "est Mārcus Mārci filius Metellus. Ego et pater eius ā pueris amici 20
erāmus. Illum mors abstulit, sed reliquit filium quem in rē militārī exerceō." Caesar manum Mārcō porrigēns, "Salvē," inquit, "Mārce. Dē rēbus gestis patris tui, viri clārissimī, saepe audivi. Laetus tē accipiō. Postea noster eris."

1. quam celerrimē, as quickly as possible. 2. celerius omnī opiniōne, quicker than any one would suppose. 3. expectāvit si etc., he waited to see whether they would try to cross against his will. sē invitō is ablative absolute. On cōnārentur see § 671. 4. Abl. of Separation. See § 296. 5. cum, since. See § 643. 6. quem . . . vidēret, when the general saw him. quem is the object of vidēret; literally, whom when the general saw. This use of the relative is very common in Latin. 7. propter tē adstat, stands near you.

The Helvetii, unable to break through Caesar's lines, follow the other route through the country of the Sequani

Illā ipsā nocte Helvētīi, alīi nāvibus alīi vadis Rhodanī, cum omnibus cōpiis flūmen trānsiērunt et summā vī mūnitiōnēs Rōmānās perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Sed tanta commūtātiō adventū Baculī et novārum cōpiārum facta est ut hostēs facile repellerentur et plūrimī tēlis occiderentur aut in flūmine perirent. Post hanc calamitātem Helvētīi adversā fortūnā superātī illō itinere sē āvertērunt et cōstituērunt alteram viam per finēs Sēquanōrum sequī.

Caesar follows them

Caesar, cum certior factus esset Helvētiōs ab illō locō profectōs esse et iam cōpiās suās per finēs Sēquanōrum trādūxisse, eos cum omnibus cōpiis secūtus est. Interim Helvētīi agrōs vāstābant et oppida expugnābant. Multae gentēs, sociī populi Rōmānī, sē ad Caesarem recipiēbant ut auxilium rogārent. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, mātūrāvit.

The end of the pursuit

Dēnique propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Caesar iter ā Helvētīis āvertit et Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum maximum et cōpiōsissimum, quod nōn longē aberat, ire contendit. Quod cum hostibus nūntiātum esset, Helvētīi exīstimābant Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere. Itaque itinere conversō Rōmānōs ā novissimō agmine lacessere incipiēbant. Baculus, qui cum suis agmen claudēbat, misit Mārcum qui Caesari novam hostium ratiōnem nūntiāret. His rēbus cognitis Caesar in proximō colle aciem instrūxit et cōpiam pugnandi hostibus fēcit.

The Helvetii are defeated in a great battle

Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī confertissimā aciē sub primam aciem

1. quod cum, when this. See p. 286, l. 16, and note. 2. itinere conversō, changing their course. 3. agmen claudēbat, was bringing up the rear. 4. cōpiam . . . fēcit, gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting. 5. sub . . . successērunt, advanced close to the Roman battle front.

Rōmānōrum successērunt. Caesar hortātus suōs proelium com-
misit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre tēlis missis, facile aciem hostium
perfrēgērunt. Tum gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Ab
septimā hōrā ad vesperum ācritēr pugnātum est, et nēmō āversum¹
hostem vidēre potuit. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi pedem rettulē- 5
runt. Hostibus superātis, Rōmānī et impedimenta et castra Helvē-
tiōrum cēpērunt. Helvētiū omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs
ad Caesarem misērunt, et, omnibus armīs trādītis et obsidibus datis,
in dēditiōnem accepti sunt. Praetereā Caesar iussit eōs in finēs
suōs, unde erant profecti, revertī. Dē numerō hōrum Caesar ipse 10
dicit milia CCCLXVIII hominum domō exisse et milia CX revertisse.

Baculus seriously wounded

Hōc proeliō Baculus grave vulnus accēpit. Nam cum iam plūrēs
hōrās pugnātum esset et rēs² esset in periculō, Baculus magnā
vōce clāmāns "Quis sequētur?" in mediōs hostēs sē iniēcit. In-
fēlix autem inīquo locō vestigia³ nōn tenuit et graviter in terram 15
concidit. Eum hostēs statim circumsistunt. Tum vērō cum gemitū
Rōmānī ad eum servandum prōcurrunt. Dēnique, plūribus utrimque
interfectis, Baculus graviter vulnerātus ē manibus hostium ēripitur.

Baculus and Marcus return to Italy

Post proelium, cum Mārcus vulnerātō amicō⁴ adsidēret, imperā-
tor ipse vēnit ut virum fortissimum vidēret. Postquam virtutem 20
eius amplissimis verbis laudāvit, "Brevi tempore," inquit, "mihi est in
animō bellum cum Ariovistō, saevissimō rēge Germānōrum, gerere.
Ille multa milia Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum trādūxit et sociis populi
Rōmānī gravēs iniūriās intulit. Sed sine tē, Bacule, hoc bellum
gerendum erit.⁵ Moneō ut in Italiam revertāris, et operam valē- 25
tūdini dēs. Post paucōs mēnsēs, ut spērō, in armīs rūsus eris."
"Mēcūm itūrus est,⁶ Caesar," inquit Mārcus. "Quis enim melius
quam māter mea, Livia, eum cūrāre potest?" Itaque ūsque ad
proximum annū Baculus cum Mārcō et Liviā erat.

1. *in flight*; literally, *turned away*. 2. *rēs . . . periculō*, *the situation was critical*. 3. *vestigia nōn tenuit*, *did not keep his footing*. 4. Dative with *adsidēret*. See § 623. 5. *gerendum erit*, *will have to be waged*, passive periphrastic. See § 727. 6. *itūrus est*, *he intends to go*, active periphrastic. See § 726.

Baculus receives a letter from Caesar

Initā aestāte Baculus, iam optimā valētūdine, hanc epistolam a Caesare accēpit. "Caesar Baculō salūtem dicit. Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Spērō tē integris viribus parātum esse arma sūmere. Certior factus sum omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre. Veni ad castra et dūc tecum Mārcum. Valē." 5

War with the Belgæ

Cum Baculus et Mārcus in Galliam pervenirent, Caesar cum exercitū iam profectus erat, et, multis gentibus superātis, per Nerviorum finēs iter faciēbat. Omnium Belgārum fortissimī Nervii erant. Incūsābant reliquos Belgās quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderant, et dicēbant sē neque lēgātōs missūrōs¹ neque ūllam condiționem pācis¹⁰ acceptūrōs.¹ Iam cum multis sociis adventum Rōmānōrum expectābant.

The Nervii plan their attack

Cum Baculus et Mārcus exercitum Caesaris cōsequerentur, castra Nerviorum nōn longē aberant. Quidam inimici Galli, cōsuētūdine itineris exercitūs Rōmāni perspectā, Nervios certiōrēs¹⁵ fēcerant inter² singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, et facile futurum esse, cum prima³ legiō castra pōneret reliquaeque legiōnēs longē abessent, in hanc impetum facere. Hoc⁴ cōsiliū Nervii existimāverunt sibi nōn omittendum esse.

A desperate battle is fought

Locus, quem Rōmāni castris dēlēgerant, erat in summō colle²⁰ quī ā quōdam flūmine nāscēbātur. Trāns flūmen hostēs in silvās sē abdiderant. Peropportūnē⁵ accidit quod Caesar ratiōnem agminis mūtāverat, nec ūnam sed sex legiōnēs dūcēbat. Post eās tōtius

1. Future infinitive with *esse* omitted as it often is. 2. *inter . . . intercēdere*, between every two legions a very long baggage train intervened. 3. The first legion that reached the camp site began at once to lay it out and fortify it. 4. *Hoc . . . esse*, this plan the Nervii thought ought not to be left untried by them. See §§ 727, 729. 5. *peropportūnē accidit quod*, etc., very opportunely it happened that, etc.; the change in the order of march gave Caesar six legions with which to meet the attack instead of only one. That fact alone saved the day for Caesar.

exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat. Nervii, cum prima impedimenta Rōmānōrum vidērent, putābant tempus expectātum adesse. Subitō incredibili celeritāte cum omnibus cōpiis ē silvā prōvolāvērunt, et, flūmen trāsgressi, eādē celeritāte adversō¹ colle ad castra Rōmāna contendērunt. Caesari² omnia tūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum³ prōpōnendum, signum tubā⁴ dandum, ab opere⁵ revocandi militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs hortandi, signum⁶ dandum; quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitas et hostium celeritas impediēbant. Diversae legiōnēs aliae⁷ aliā in parte hostibus resistēbant. Undique ācerimē pugnābātur, praesertim ā dextrō¹⁰ cornū. Ibi duodecima legiō, in quā Baculus ascriptus est, ab hostibus urgēbātur. Iam omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerāti aut occisi erant, in his Baculus ipse quī tot et tam gravibus vulneribus est cōfectus ut sē sustinēre nōn posset.

Caesar to the rescue

In hōc discriminē rērum Caesar, scūtō militi⁸ detrāctō, quod ipse sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit. Imperātōris cōspectus militibus spem inferēbat et paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. Interim reliquae legiōnēs, quae aliis in partibus vicerant, cum cognōvissent quō⁹ in locō rēs esset, subsidium ferēbant. Dēnique Nervii magnā caede superāti sunt. Post proelium Mārcus inveniri nōn poterat. Multā autem nocte incolumis ad castra revertit; captus ab hostibus effūgit. Nec Baculus vulneribus mortuus est, sed post breve tempus arma sūmere poterat.

The twelfth legion in the Alps

Belgīs superātis, legiō duodecima in Alpēs in oppidum quod appellābātur Octodūrus¹⁰ hiemandi causā dūcēbātur. Hoc oppidum 25

1. *adversō colle, up the opposite hill.* 2. Dat. of agent with the passive periphrastic *agenda erant*. See § 729. A number of periphrastics follow with omitted auxiliary. 3. This was red in color and the signal for arming. 4. This was the signal to take their places in the ranks. 5. The work of fortifying the camp. 6. The battle signal. 7. *aliae aliā in parte, some in one place, others in another.* See § 505. 8. *militi*, dat. with *detrāctō*. See § 623. *militibus*, in the next line but one, is in the same construction. 9. *quō . . . esset, in what a state the situation was.* See § 671. 10. See p. 49.

altissimis montibus undique continēbatur. Galba lēgātus, qui legiōni praeerat, Baculō¹ negōtium dedit ut hiberna mūnīret. Itaque Baculus negōtium suscipit et iubet² locum mūrō altō mūnīrī. Hōc opere nōndum perfectō, maxima multitudō barbarōrum ex omnibus partibus impetum facit. Cum iam multās hōrās pugnārē-
 5 tur ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent, Baculus et quidam tribūnus militum, vir magnae virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt. "Rēs est in periculō, lēgāte," inquit.³ "Eruptiō est ūna spēs salūtis." Hōc cōnsiliō captō, militēs ex castris subitō erūpērunt. Hāc eruptiōne imprōvisā hostēs ita commōti sunt ut tertiā parte
 10 interfectā reliquī fugerent. Quō proeliō factō Galba, alterum impetum timēns, incolumem legiōnem in finēs Allobrogum dūxit ibique hiemāvit.

A letter from Britain

Illō tempore Britannia erat Rōmānis terra incognita. Nē Gallis quidem erat insula nōta praeter eam partem quae est contrā Galliam. Multis dē causis Caesar insulam adire cupiēbat, et quārtō
 15 annō prōcōnsulātūs profectus est. Et Baculus ad Mārcum hoc iter fecērunt. Dē his rēbus Mārcus hanc epistolam ad Līviam mātrem scripsit: "Mārcus Līviae mātři suae salūtem plūrimam dicit. In Britannā Caesar castra nunc pōnit. Haec insula ā Galliā nōn longē abest. Nacti idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā
 20 ferē vigiliā⁴ solvimus, et quārtā⁴ hōrā diēi Britanniam attigimus. Ibi in omnibus collibus armātās hostium cōpiās cōspēximus. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra ut⁶ mare montibus angustē continērētur. Cum locus ad ēgrediendum idōneus nōn esset, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus imperātor contrā⁶ apertum et
 25 plānum litus nāvēs cōstituit. Sed barbarī secūtī nostrōs⁷ nāvibus ēgredi prohibēre cōnābantur. Nostri autem, altitudine maris

1. Baculō . . . mūnīret, *commissioned Baculus to fortify the winter quarters.*
 ut . . . mūnīret is a clause of purpose. 2. See frontispiece. 3. inquit, *they say.* 4. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours. 5. ut . . . continērētur, *that the sea was closely bounded by mountains, the cliffs of Dover.* See picture, p. 61. 6. contrā . . . cōstituit, *brought the ships to anchor opposite to an open and level beach.*
 7. nostrōs . . . cōnābantur, *attempted to keep our men from disembarking.*

perterriti et illius generis pugnandi imperiti, erant tardiōrēs,¹ cum simul dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus pugnandum esset. Tum aquilifer decimae legiōnis, vir fortissimus, sē ex nāve prōicit. 'Dēsilite,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere,' et in hostēs aquilam ferre 5 incipit. Simul Baculus dēsilit clamāns, 'Venite! Venite, Rōmāni!' Tum vērō nostrī ūniversi ex nāvibus dēsiluērunt. Pugnātum est utrimque ācriter. Dēnique, barbaris in fugam datis, ōram occupāmus et castra pōnimus. Haec insula, remōtissima terrārum, est saevissima et asperrima. Omnia sunt terribilia et periculi plēna. 10 Dēsiderō tē, māter cārissima. Ō quandō ego tē aspiciam! Valē."

Caesar's sixth campaign

Sextō annō bellī Gallici Caesar per primam partem aestātis in Germāniā rem gerēbat. Tum suōs in Galliam redūxit et castra in mediis Eburōnum finibus posuit. Ibi impedimenta omnium legiōnum contulit et praesidiō² impedimentis ūnam legiōnem reliquit. Ipse 15 et reliquae legiones alii³ aliās in partēs profecti sunt. Discēdēns monuit lēgātum ut militēs in castris continēret.

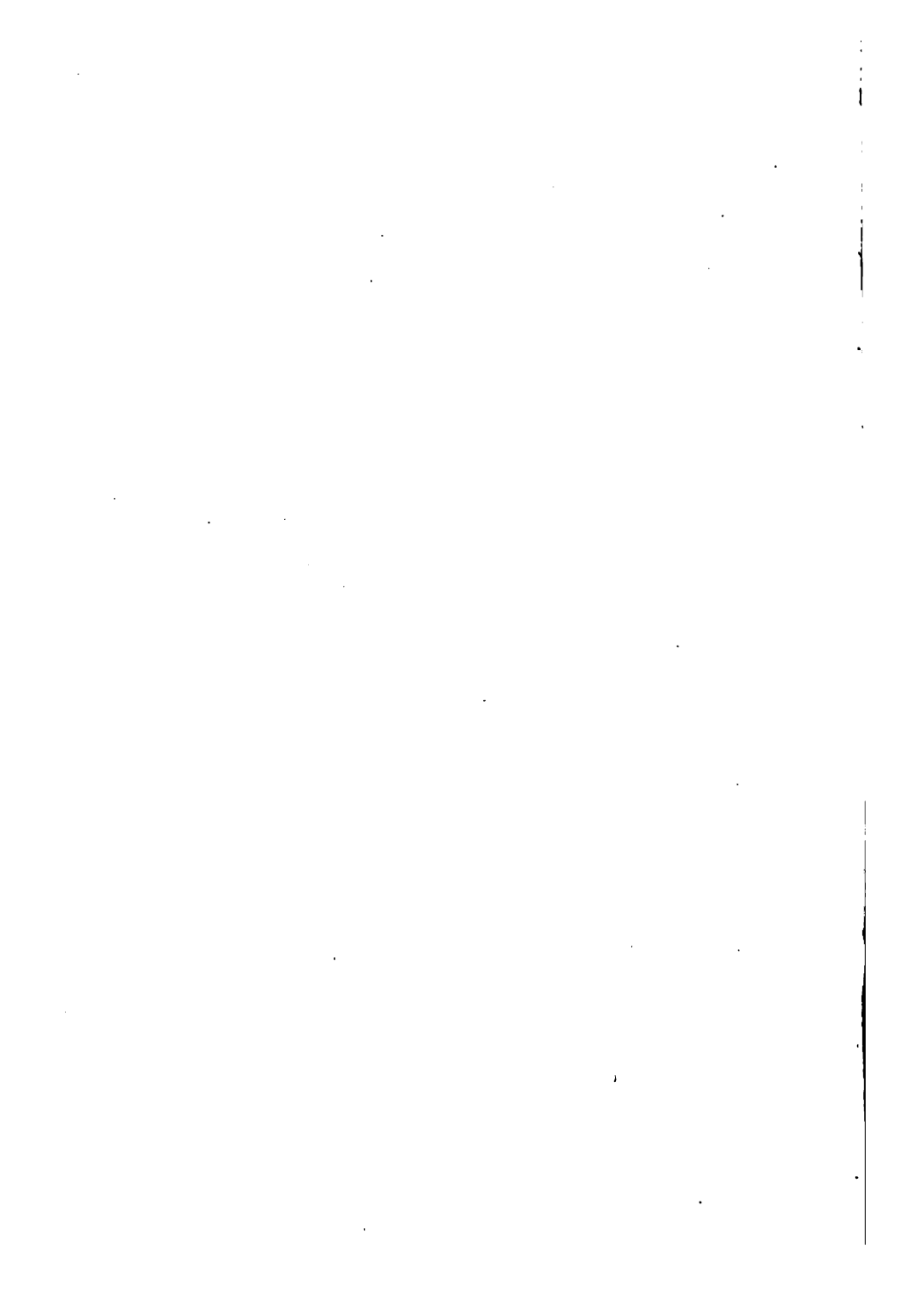
The commanding officer, moved by the murmurs of his men who complain of being confined in camp without good cause, disregards Caesar's advice

Plūrēs diēs post profectiōnem Caesaris lēgātus praeceptis imperatōris summā diligentīā pārui ac nē cālōnem quidem ex vāllō ēgredi passus est. Sed septimō diē, permōtus vōcibus⁴ militū 20 quī molestē ferēbant sē, omnibus Gallis superātis, tam diū continēri, quinque cohortēs et magnam multitudinem cālōnum in agrōs proximōs frūmentandī⁵ causā misit.

1. more backward than usual. 2. praesidiō impedimentis, two datives. See § 686. 3. alii . . . partēs, some in one direction and others in another. alii is masculine because it agrees not only with legiōnēs but also with ipse. An adjective agreeing with two or more nouns denoting persons of different genders is regularly masculine. 4. murmurs. 5. frūmentandī causā, to gather grain.



"VENITE! VENITE, RŌMANÎ!" CLĂMĂVIT BACULUS



A German force unexpectedly attacks the camp. A panic ensues

His absentibus et castris paene sine praesidiō relictis, duo milia Germānōrum imprōvisō perveniunt et castra capere cōnantur. Ex¹ omnibus partibus hostēs castra circumveniunt. Vix Rōmānī primum impetum sustinent et portās dēfendunt. Omnēs perterriti sciunt neque quam in partem auxilium ferre neque quid facere dēbeant. 5 Nullis dēfēnsōribus in vāllō visis, barbarī crēdunt nūllum praesidium intus esse. Quā dē causā ācrius percurrere cōnantur.

Baculus to the rescue

Baculus centuriō, cum aeger esset, cum exercitū nōn profectus est, sed in praesidiō relictus erat. Iam² diem quintum cibō caruerat. Clamōre auditō, surgit et ex tabernāculō prōdit. Videt hostēs 10 imminēre atque rem³ esse summō in discrimine. Capit arma a proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statīōne erat. Paulisper proelium sustinent. Relinquit⁴ animus Baculum, gravibus acceptis vulneribus; vix per⁵ manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō, reliquī animis 15 cōfirmātis in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audent speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebent. Mox milītēs quī ex castris ēgressi erant revertērunt et Germānī trāns Rhēnum sē recēpērunt. Ita virtūte Baculi castra et impedimenta conservāta sunt.

Dē rēbus gestis Baculi hāctenus.

20

1. *ex omnibus partibus, on all sides.* 2. *Iam . . . caruerat, already for five days he had gone without food; on cibō see § 296.* 3. *rem . . . discrimine, that the situation is extremely critical.* 4. *relinquit . . . Baculum, consciousness fails Baculus or Baculus faints.* 5. *per manūs trāditus, passed along from hand to hand.*

LATIN SONGS

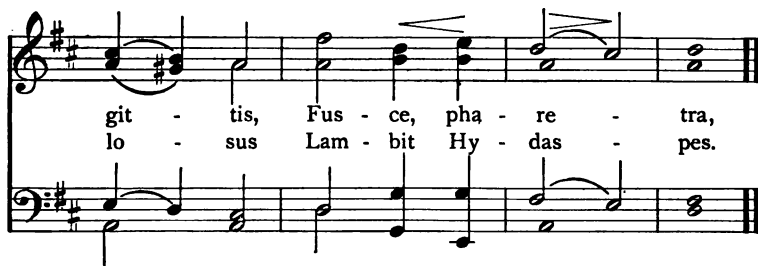
INTEGER VITAE

The words are the first two stanzas of the twenty-second ode in Book I of the "Odes" of Horace (65-8 B.C.). The music is by Dr. F. F. Flemming (about 1811).

First system of musical notation for "Integer Vitae". It consists of a treble and a bass staff in G major (one sharp) and common time (C). The melody is in the treble staff, and the bass staff provides harmonic support. The lyrics are: In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter aes - tu-

Second system of musical notation for "Integer Vitae". It continues the melody and harmony from the first system. The lyrics are: pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ia - cu - lis, nec o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi -

Third system of musical notation for "Integer Vitae". It concludes the piece. The lyrics are: ar - cu, Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa - ta - lem Cau - ca - sum, vel quae lo - ca fa - bu -



Fuscus, the man of life upright and pure
Needeth nor javelin nor bow of Moor,
Nor arrows tipped with venom deadly sure,
Loading his quiver;

Whether o'er Afric's burning sands he rides,
Or frosty Caucasus' bleak mountain sides,
Or wanders lonely, where Hydaspes glides,
That storied river.

THEODORE MARTIN

ADESTE FIDELES

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

The words are by an unknown author of the seventeenth century. The tune, which is found in most of our hymnals, is generally ascribed to John Reading, who died in 1692. The name "Portuguese Hymn" comes from the melody's having been first used in the chapel of the Portuguese embassy in London. A translation under the title "O come, all ye Faithful" was made by F. Oakeley (1841).





ni - te, ve - ni - te in Beth - le - hem;
Can - tet nunc au - la cae - les - ti - um,
Le - su, ti - bi sit glo - ri - a;



Na - tum vi - de - te Re - gem an - ge - lo - rum: Ve -
Glo - ri - a, glo - ria In ex - cel - sis De - o! Ve -
Pa - tris ae - ter - ni Ver - bum ca - ro fac - tum! Ve -



ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve - ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve -



ni - te a - do - re - mus Do - mi - num.

GAUDEAMUS

The second and third stanzas of this famous student song were known as early as 1267. The melody in its present form dates back to about the middle of the eighteenth century.

Gau-de-a-mus i - gi-tur, Iu-ve-nes dum su - mus;
 U - bisunt,qui an - te nos In mun-do fu - e - re?
 Vi - ta nos-tra bre-vis est, Bre-vi fi - ni - e - tur;

Post iu-cun-dam iu-ven-tu-tem, Post mo-les-tam se - nec-tu-tem,
 Tran-se-as ad su - pe - ros, A - be-as ad in - fe - ros,
 Ve-nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter,

Nos ha-be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha-be - bit hu - mus.
 Quos si vis vi - de - re, Quos si vis vi - de - re.
 Ne-mi-ni par - ce - tur, Ne-mi-ni par - ce - tur.

Let us now in youth rejoice,
None can justly blame us;
For when golden youth has fled,
And in age our joys are dead,
Then the dust doth claim us,
Then the dust doth claim us.

Where have all our fathers gone?
Here we'll see them never;
Seek the gods' serene abode —
Cross the dolorous Stygian flood —
There they dwell forever,
There they dwell forever.

Brief is this our life on earth,
Brief — nor will it tarry —
Swiftly death runs to and fro,
All must feel his cruel blow,
None the dart can parry,
None the dart can parry.

A ROUND FOR THREE PARTS

A - mor vin - cit om - ni - a, A - mor vin - cit
om - ni - a, A - mor vin - cit om - ni - a, om - ni - a.

A ROUND FOR FOUR PARTS

From Professor R. C. Flickinger's "Carmina Latina" and used by permission of the University of Chicago Press. The English words and music are by F. O. Lyte. The Latin version is by Professor Flickinger.

Duc, duc, re - mos duc Flu - mi - ne se - cun - do;
Vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur Ve - lut in som - ni - o.

Row, row, row your boat, gently down the stream.
Merrily, merrily, merrily, merrily, life is but a dream.

John Holbrook

REVIEWS¹

I. REVIEW OF LESSONS I-VII

732. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

agricola	fābula	nauta	puella	terra
aqua	filia	pecūnia	rēgina	<i>regina</i>

VERBS

amat	properat
dat	sunt
est	vocat
nārrat	

PREPOSITIONS

ā or ab	in <i>with acc.</i>
ad	in <i>with abl.</i>
cum	per

733. Give the Latin of the following words. Go through the entire list, checking the words you do not remember. Then drill on the words you have checked.

from	water	daughter	money	are	through
loves	gives	tells	hastens	calls	land
farmer	story	sailor	in <i>or</i> on	is	queen
to	with	into	girl		

734. Review Questions. What English letters does the Latin alphabet lack? When is *i* a consonant? What is the sound of *c* and of *g*? How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? When is a syllable long? Give the rules of Latin accent. Name the parts of speech and give an English example of each. Define the subject, the predicate. What is a transitive verb? an intransitive verb? the copula? Define the direct object. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the possessor? the indirect object? the direct

¹ It is suggested that each of the reviews be assigned for a written test.

object? Translate *filia reginae pecuniam Lesbiae dat.* What is the ending of the verb in the third person, singular and plural? Give the rule for the agreement of the verb. What relations are expressed by the dative case? by the ablative case? Where does the verb generally stand? the subject? the possessive genitive? the direct object? the indirect object? What is a predicate noun? How many declensions are there? How is the declension to which a noun belongs determined? Decline *regina, fabula, filia*. What cases are always alike? How is the ablative singular distinguished from the nominative? What Latin cases may be used with prepositions?

735. Derivation. Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 732. Define these and illustrate each by an English sentence.

736. Fill out the following summary of the first declension :

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Case terminations : *a.* Singular
b. Plural
3. Irregular nouns

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS VIII-XV

737. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

<i>casa</i>	<i>fāma</i>	<i>īnsula</i>	<i>via</i>
-------------	-------------	---------------	------------

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

<i>ager</i>	<i>auxilium</i>	<i>filius</i>	<i>populus</i>	<i>socius</i>
<i>amicus</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>frūmentum</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>tēlum</i>
<i>arma</i>	<i>equus</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>vir</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<i>altus, -a, -um</i>	<i>liber, libera, liberum</i>	<i>novus, -a, -um</i>
<i>amicus, -a, -um</i>	<i>longus, -a, -um</i>	<i>parvus, -a, -um</i>
<i>bonus, -a, -um</i>	<i>magnus, -a, -um</i>	<i>proximus, -a, -um</i>
<i>grātus, -a, -um</i>	<i>multus, -a, -um</i>	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i>
<i>inimicus, -a, -um</i>	<i>nōtus, -a, -um</i>	

VERBS		INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS		ADVERBS	
convocat	parat	quid		cūr	saepe
habitat	portat	quis		nōn	ubi
labōrat	nāvigat			quō	
CONJUNCTIONS					
et		sed			

738. Give the Latin of the following words :

where	rumor	war	free (<i>adj.</i>)
but	friend	horse	well-known
who	nearest	small	why
sail (<i>verb</i>)	whither	call together	much, many
toil (<i>verb</i>)	prepare	not	slave
cottage	road	pleasing	man
field	aid (<i>noun</i>)	son	spear, missile
high <i>or</i> deep	friendly	people	great
often	live (<i>verb</i>)	ally	long
and	island	new	grain
what	good	hostile	town
carry	pretty	boy	arms

739. Review Questions. What is meant by grammatical gender? Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Decline **terra**, **filia**. What nouns belong to the second declension? Give the rule for gender in the second declension. Decline **amicus**, **puer**, **ager**, **vir**, **oppidum**. Decline **socius** and **auxilium**, and explain the peculiarity in the genitive of nouns like these. When is the vocative not like the nominative? Give the general rules of declension. What is an adjective? Decline **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**; **liber**, **libera**, **liberum**; **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. Decline **agricola bonus**. Why is it not correct to say **agricola bona**? What is the position of adjectives? What is the position of vocatives? What are adverbs? Where do they stand? How are questions introduced in Latin? How are questions answered in the affirmative? How are questions answered in the negative? Name the possessive adjectives. What is the vocative singular masculine of **meus**? Why is **suus** called a reflexive possessive? Where are possessive adjectives placed when they are unemphatic? when they are emphatic?

740. Give the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence :

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Agreement of adjectives | 3. Dative with adjectives |
| 2. Apposition | 4. Agreement of possessives |

741. Derivation. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 737. Define these and illustrate each by an English sentence.

742. Fill out the following summary of the second declension :

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns in **-us**

{	<i>a.</i> Singular <i>b.</i> Plural <i>c.</i> Vocative singular
---	---
4. Case terminations of nouns in **-um**

{	<i>a.</i> Singular <i>b.</i> Plural
---	--
5. Peculiarities of nouns in **-er**
6. Peculiarity of the genitive of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVI-XXIII

743. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

amīcītia	dīligentia	Germānia	silva
Britannia	Gallia	ōra	victōria
cōpia			

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

barbarus	castrum	Germānus	praemium
Britannī	Gallus	perīculum	proelium

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

barbarus, -a, -um	miser, misera, miserum	suus, -a, -um
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum	noster, nostra, nostrum	tuus, -a, -um
meus, -a, -um	Rōmānus, -a, -um	vester, vestra, vestrum

VERBS

First Conjugation

occupō, -ā're
 pugnō, -ā're
 superō, -ā're

Second Conjugation

habeō, -ē're timeō, -ē're
 moneō, -ē're videō, -ē're
 teneō, -ē're

ADVERBS

iam numquam semper
 mox nunc tum

PREPOSITIONS

ē or ex
 sine

CONJUNCTION

itaque

744. Give the Latin of the following words :

therefore	danger	seize	conquer, overcome
Gaul	my, mine	our, ours	then
out of	thick, frequent	already	reward, prize
plenty, forces	Roman	a savage	have
without	friendship	always	presently
a Gaul	never	fight (<i>verb</i>)	fear (<i>verb</i>)
his, her, its	thy, thine	forest	shore
industry	savage (<i>adj.</i>)	Britons	advise, warn
fort, camp	Britain	your, yours	a German
now	wretched	battle	victory
Germany	see	hold	

745. Review Questions. Define the active voice and the passive voice, and illustrate each by an English sentence. Name the moods. Name the English tenses and give an example of each. Define the three persons. Give the personal endings. What is their office? Define the indicative mood. Inflect the present, past, and future of **sum**. How many regular conjugations has Latin? What are the four distinguishing, or characteristic, vowels? What is the present stem and how may it be found? What is the tense sign of the past tense? of the future? What verbs belong to the first conjugation? to the second conjugation? Inflect **nārrō** and **nāvigō** in the present, past, and future. In what respect is the verb **dō** irregular? Inflect **habeō** and **videō** in the present, past, and future. What are the three meanings of the Latin present? What are the two uses of the Latin past tense? How does the meaning of **ē** (**ex**) differ from that of **ā** (**ab**)? Give the rules for the shortening of vowels. What are the general principles of Latin order?

746. Give the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Predicate Genitive of Possession | 3. Ablative of Means |
| 2. Ablative of Cause | 4. Ablative of Manner |
| 5. Ablative of Accompaniment | |

747. Derivation. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 743. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

748. Make a blank scheme, as shown here, of the first three tenses of the indicative, and, pointing rapidly with your pencil to the different spaces and using a variety of verbs, give the form required for each space. Drill until you can give the forms instantly. You do not know these three tenses well enough until you can give them complete, of any verb, in less than fifteen seconds.

INDICATIVE	INFINITIVE
Verb
Present stem	
PRESENT	
1.
2.
3.
PAST (TENSE SIGN -bā-)	
1.
2.
3.
FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bī-)	
1.
2.
3.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXIV-XXXII

749. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

dea	iniūria	poena	sapientia
fossa	patria	poēta	vīta

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

animus	deus	liber	nāvigium	vāllum
cōnsilium	finitimī	mūrus	numerus	

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

clārus, -a, -um	lātus, -a, -um	medius, -a, -um
finitimus, -a, -um	malus, -a, -um	

VERBS

<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>	<i>Third Conj.</i>	<i>Fourth Conj.</i>
nūntiō, -ā're	pateō, -ē're	capiō, -ere	audiō, -ī're
servō, -ā're	respondeō, -ē're	dicō, -ere	mūniō, -ī're
		dūcō, -ere	veniō, -ī're
		faciō, -ere	
		regō, -ere	
		gerō, -ere	
		vincō, -ere	

RELATIVE PRONOUN	PREPOSITION	CONJUNCTION	ADVERBS
quī	dē	cum	celeriter
			postea

750. Give the Latin of the following words :

afterwards	conquer	lead into	take, seize
quickly	number (<i>noun</i>)	announce	say, speak
come	boat	goddess	adjoining, neighboring
fortify	life	plan (<i>noun</i>)	lead (<i>verb</i>)
answer	wide	famous	god
middle of	evil	wall	neighbors

rampart, wall	rule (<i>verb</i>)	make, do	down from, concerning
wisdom	seek	who	wrong, insult (<i>noun</i>)
hear	book	lie open, extend	wage, carry on
mind, heart	poet	save	send
when	punishment	ditch	country, native land

751. Review Questions. Define demonstrative pronouns and adjectives. Decline **is, ea, id**. Where do demonstrative adjectives stand? Explain the use of **is** in the sentence **videō eum**. Explain the difference in meaning between **Mārcus filium suum vocat** and **Mārcus filium eius vocat**. What verbs belong to the third conjugation? Inflect **dūcō, mittō, and gerō** in the present, past, and future. What is the tense sign in the future of the first and second conjugations? of the third and fourth conjugations? What verbs belong to the fourth conjugation? Inflect **faciō, veniō, and mūniō** in the present, past, and future. What are verbs like **faciō** called? What are the tenses of the imperative? How is the present imperative formed? Give the present imperative of **servō, respondeō, vincō, mittō, dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and veniō**.

752. Give the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence:

1. Agreement of a demonstrative with its noun
2. Dative with special intransitive verbs

753. Derivation. What is the force of the Latin prefix **re-**? Illustrate by English or Latin words. What is the meaning of the Latin prepositions **ā (ab), ad, dē, ē (ex), in**, when used as prefixes? Illustrate by English or Latin words. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 749. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

754. Continue to use the scheme of § 748, and drill with verbs of all four conjugations.

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXIII-XL

755. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST
DECLENSION

Graecia memoria

NOUNS OF THE SECOND
DECLENSION

captivus factum praesidium

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

firmus, -a, -um

tardus, -a, -um

VERBS

First Conjugation *Second Conjugation* *Third Conjugation*

oppugnō spectō

sedeō

agō ēdūcō rapiō

CONJUNCTIONS

nam neque (nec)

ADVERBS

certē dēnique diū fortiter ibi

756. Give the Latin of the following words :

attack (*verb*)

bravely

a long time

memory

for

and not, neither

slow

lead out

certainly

finally, at last

Greece

deed

garrison

seize

strong, trusty

drive

there

look at

sit

captive

757. Review Questions. Define the active voice and the passive voice. Illustrate each by a Latin sentence. Name the personal endings of the passive. Do the tense signs differ from those used in the active? What are the tense signs of the past and future? Define the infinitive. Explain the formation of the present infinitive, active and passive. Explain the formation of the present imperative, active and passive. Inflect the verb **sum** through the first three tenses of the indicative, the present infinitive, and the imperative. Give the complete inflection, active and passive, as far as we have gone, of **portō**, **habeō**, **vincō**, **rapiō**, and **mūniō**. Give the synopsis of the active of **spectō**, **sedeō**, **agō**, **faciō**, and **veniō**, and also the synopsis of the passive of **servō**, **teneō**, **petō**, **rapiō**, and **audiō**.

758. Give the rules for the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence.

759. Derivation. Define the following English words, giving the Latin root word and the force of the prefix in each case :

conserve	remit	convoke	comport	abduct
detain	evoke	deport	report	deduce
emit	invoke	export	adduce	reduce
admit	revoke	import	induce	conduce

760. Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 755. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

761. Extend the scheme of § 748 so as to include all the verb inflection you have had, and use it as suggested with verbs of all four conjugations.

VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLI-XLVIII

762. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

nātūra
villa

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

annus imperium locus
exemplum lēgātus officium

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

amplus, -a, -um integer, -gra, -grum timidus, -a, -um
ēgregius, -a, -um pūblicus, -a, -um vērus, -a, -um

VERBS

First Conj.

comparō locō
cōfirmō pācō
liberō

Second Conj.

prohibeō

Third Conj.

abdūcō discēdō
dēfendō dimittō

Fourth Conj.

inveniō

Irregular

absum

ADVERBS

longē minimē quam

PREPOSITION

ante

763. Give the Latin of the following words :

far away	farm	set free	hinder	how
nature	place (<i>noun</i>)	ambassador	defend	send away
year	put	lead away	find	ample
get together	subdue	cowardly	depart	public
remarkable	before	power	not at all	whole
example	duty	strengthen	be away	true

764. Review Questions. What are the principal parts of an English verb? of a Latin verb? What are the three verb stems? How is the present stem formed? the perfect stem? the participial stem? What tenses are formed from the perfect stem? Give the endings of the perfect. What is the tense sign of the past perfect? of the future perfect? Give the principal parts of *sum* and inflect it in all the moods and tenses you have learned. How is the perfect translated as perfect definite? as past absolute? How are the Latin past and Latin perfect used? Give the principal parts and the inflection in full of the indicative of *dō*, *nūntiō*, *habēō*, *gerō*, *rapīō*, *mūniō*. Give also the present imperative active and the present and perfect infinitives of these verbs.

765. Give the rules for the ablative of the personal agent, the place from which, and separation, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence.

766. Derivation. Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 762. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

767. Extend the scheme of §§ 748 and 761, and continue its use.

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLIX-LVI

768. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST

DECLENSION

fortūna
inopia

NOUNS OF THE SECOND

DECLENSION

impedīmentum negōtium Rhēnus
iūdicium rēgnum

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

inīquus, -a, -um

paucī, -ae, -a

reliquus, -a, -um

VERBS

<i>First Conj.</i>		<i>Second Conj.</i>		<i>Third Conj.</i>	
appellō	putō	iubeō	ascendō	incipiō	prōdūcō
cōservō	vāstō	moveō	cupiō	interficiō	remittō
ēvocō	vetō	obtineō	fugiō	prōcēdō	suscipiō
expugnō		perterreō	iaciō		

Irregular

possum

ADVERBS		PREPOSITIONS	CONJUNCTIONS	
anteā	magnopere	post	ac	atque
ita	statim	prō	sī	
		trāns		

769. Give the Latin of the following words :

across	desire, wish	kingdom	preserve
and	baggage	Rhine	advance
hindrance	storm (<i>verb</i>)	want, lack	kill
greatly	climb up	business, affair	lead forward
unfavorable	hurl	judgment	call, name
fortune	command	send back	possess, gain
be able, can	after, behind	undertake	forbid
move	at once	flee	for, in behalf of
think	thus, so	terrify	few, only a few
begin	remaining, rest	lay waste	heretofore
power	if	call out	

770. Review Questions. Give the principal parts of the verbs of the second and third conjugations used in § 768. Define a participle. What participles are lacking in Latin? What Latin forms are made from the participial stem? Why is **vir vocātae sunt** incorrect? Give the complete inflection in the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of the following verbs: **moveō, iaciō, iubeō, dūcō**. Give the complete inflection of **possum**. Give the list of prepositions that take the ablative. Decline the relative **qui** and the interrogative **quis**.

771. Define an infinitive. Give an example in Latin of an infinitive object clause, of a complementary infinitive, of the infinitive used as a noun. Define a simple sentence, a complex sentence, a compound sentence. What are the different kinds of clauses? Give the rule for the agreement of the relative pronoun, and illustrate by a Latin sentence. Give the rule for the ablative absolute, and illustrate by a Latin sentence. How is an ablative absolute best translated?

772. Derivation. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 768. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. Give the force of the prefixes *ab*, *ad*, *con-*, *dē*, *ē*, *in*, *prō*, *re-*, *trāns*. What is the force of *in-* prefixed to an adjective or adverb? What is meant by assimilation? What changes of spelling occur in words like *caplō* when compounded with a prefix?

773. Extend the scheme of §§ 748 and 761, so as to include all you have had of the passive, and continue to use it for drill.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LVII-LXIV

774. Give the English of the following words :

NOUN OF THE FIRST DECL.

lingua

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECL.

mātrīmōnium

signum

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

animal	cohors	homō	mīles	pāx	soror
caedēs	cōsul	iter	mors	prīnceps	urbs
calcar	eques	legiō	mulier	rēx	virtūs
caput	flūmen	mare	nōmen	salūs	vīs
cīvītās	frāter	māter	pater		

ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

aequus, -a, -um

VERBS

Second Conjugation

audeō
contineō

Third Conjugation

accipiō dēiciō pōnō reducō
committō pellō reddō relinquō

CONJUNCTIONS

autem

et . . . et

etiam

tamen

775. Give the Latin of the following words :

equal, fair	drive, banish	father	cohort
even, also	put	peace	enemy
dare	return	chief	bound, restrain
tongue	nevertheless	king	city
man	however	head	woman
journey, march	both . . . and	river	spur (<i>noun</i>)
valor	intrust	brother	state (<i>noun</i>)
strength	consul	leave	animal
death	legion	time	horseman
safety	mother	sister	sea
receive	soldier	name (<i>noun</i>)	marriage
throw down	lead back	slaughter	signal (<i>noun</i>)

776. Review Questions. Define base and stem. Into what two classes are nouns of the third declension divided? Decline **caput, civitās, eques, flūmen, legiō, pater, tempus**. What masculine and feminine nouns have i-stems? In what cases do i-stems differ from consonant stems? What neuter nouns have i-stems? Decline **caedēs, hostis, cohors, mors, mare, animal**. Decline the irregular nouns **homō, iter, vis**.

777. Derivation. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 774. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How many Latin prefixes can you name? What is the force of each? Write all the English derivatives you can from the verb **mittō, -ere, misi, missus**, using both prefixes and suffixes.

IX. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXV-LXXII

778. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECL.

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECL.

fuga

grātia

beneficium

spatium

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECL.

INDECLINABLE NOUN

auctōritās dux ignis lēx pēs

nihil

ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

certus, -a, -um

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

acer, ācris, ācre	equester, equestris,	omnis, omne
brevis, breve	equestre	pār
celer, celeris, celere	facilis, facile	pedester, pedestris,
commūnis, commūne	fortis, forte	pedestre
difficilis, difficile	gravis, grave	similis, simile
dissimilis, dissimile	levis, leve	

VERBS

First Conjugation

expectō
vulnerō

Second Conjugation

maneō

Third Conjugation

addūcō
cognōscō
cōgō

ADVERBS

bene plūrimum
deinde prīmō
facile primum
maximē

PREPOSITION

inter

CONJUNCTIONS

aut
quod

779. Give the Latin of the following words :

because	fire	brave	favor
between, among	slavery	easy	authority
certain	wound (<i>verb</i>)	short	easily
sharp	lead to	difficult	most of all
very much	nothing	well	equal
or	swift	next	common
flight	unlike	leader	all, every
kindness	on foot	foot	heavy
wait for	light	compel, collect	similar
remain	first	liberty	of cavalry
learn, know	at first	law	space
body			

780. Review Questions. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? How can you tell to which class an adjective belongs? Decline *equester*, *gravis*, and *pār*. What is meant by comparison of adjectives? Compare the adjectives *longus*, *fortis*, *celer*, *crēber*, *bonus*, *magnus*, *malus*, *multus*, *parvus*, *facilis*, *similis*. Decline *melior* and *plūs*. Define an adverb. Give an English sentence containing an adjective and an adverb. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? of the third declension? Form adverbs from *altus*, *integer*, *celer*, *levis*, and compare them. What case forms are sometimes used adverbially? Illustrate. Compare *bene*, *diū*, *magnopere*, *saepe*.

781. Give an example in Latin of a comparative followed by *quam*; of the ablative of measure of difference.

782. Derivation. Give fifteen English derivatives from the words in § 778.

X. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXIII-LXXXI

783. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

<i>Second Declension</i>	<i>Third Declension</i>		<i>Fourth Declension</i>	
modus	aestās	hiems	nox	adventus
	Caesar	imperātor	pars	exercitus
	celeritās	lūx	pedes	cornū
	cīvis	mōns	rūs	impetus
	fīnis	nāvis	timor	domus
				manus
				equitātus
<i>Fifth Declension</i>				
diēs		rēs		spēs

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

alius, -a, -ud	nūllus, -a, -um	ūllus, -a, -um
alter, -a, -um	sinister, -tra, -trum	ūnus, -a, -um
dexter, -tra, -trum	sōlus, -a, -um	uter, -tra, -trum
neuter, -tra, -trum	tōtus, -a, -um	

VERBS

First Conjugation

dēmōnstrō
existimō

Second Conjugation

commoveō retineō
dēbeō sustineō

Third Conjugation

contendō incolō
dēpōnō

PRONOUNS

aliquis
ego
hic

īdem
ille
ipse

iste
quīdam
quisque

suī
tū

784. Give the Latin of the following words :

I	hope (<i>noun</i>)	a certain	home, house
inhabit	no	that (<i>of yours</i>)	right
someone	light	alarm (<i>verb</i>)	point out
this (<i>of mine</i>)	general	hold up	army
hasten, strive	thou, you	self	that (<i>yonder</i>)
any	each	whole, all	attack (<i>noun</i>)
one	lay down	another	think, regard
which (<i>of two</i>)	left	the other	end, territory
fear (<i>noun</i>)	alone	ship	hand
country	thing	night	citizen
foot soldier	hold back	neither	same
part (<i>noun</i>)	mountain	owe, ought	of himself
summer	manner	speed	day
winter	arrival	horn	Cæsar

785. Review Questions. What nouns belong to the fourth declension? What is their gender? Decline **manus** and **cornū**. What nouns belong to the fifth declension? What is their gender? Decline **diēs** and **rēs**. Give the ending of the genitive singular in each of the five declensions. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Name the nine irregular adjectives and decline **nūllus**. Name the classes of pronouns. Decline **ego**, **tū**, and **suī**. Explain the use of **ipse** and decline it. How do **hic**, **iste**, and **ille** differ in meaning? Decline them. Define an indefinite pronoun. What general rule can you give for the declension of indefinites?

786. Give the rules for the expression of the place to which, in which, and from which. What important exception do these rules have? Give the

Latin for *at Rome, at home, in the country*. What are these forms called? Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of time. Translate **alii terram alii mare amant** and **alii aliam in partem fugiunt**.

787. Derivation. Give fifteen English derivatives from the words in § 783. What is the force of the prefixes **inter**, **per**, **prae**, and **sub**? Give Latin and English words having these prefixes.

XI. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXXII-LXXXVIII

788. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

<i>First Decl.</i>		<i>Third Decl.</i>		<i>Fourth Decl.</i>	<i>Fifth Decl.</i>
causa	altitūdō	laus	multitūdō	passus	aciēs
hōra	dolor	magnitūdō	pōns		
	explōrātor	mīlia	potestās		

ADJECTIVES

<i>First and Second Declensions</i>				<i>Third Declension</i>
cupidus	idōneus	prīmus	sextus	militāris
decimus	imperītus	quārtus	tertius	trēs
ducentī	nōnus	quīntus	ūndecimus	
duo	octāvus	secundus	ūnus	
duodecimus	perītus	septimus		

Indeclinable

centum	mīlle	octō	quinque	sex
decem	novem	quattuor	septem	ūndecim
duodecim				

VERBS

<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>		<i>Third Conj.</i>		
hortor	doceō	cōficiō	expellō	patior	sequor
	permaneō	dēligō	instruō	praemittō	sūmō
	vereor	excēdō	intermittō	scribō	trādūcō

PREPOSITION

apud

ADVERBS

interim vērō

789. Give the Latin of the following words :

pace	eleventh	draw up	cause (<i>noun</i>)
line of battle	third	leave off	hour
military	sixth	suffer	desirous
three	power	send ahead	tenth
seven	bridge	drive out	two hundred
six	crowd	go out from	two
eleven	praise (<i>noun</i>)	choose	twelfth
meanwhile	size	complete	hundred
truly	thousand	twelve	ten
take up, assume	first	skilled	height
lead across	fourth	eighth	among
follow	fifth	ninth	urge
write	second	unskilled	teach
five	seventh	suitable	last (<i>verb</i>)
four	nine	scout	fear (<i>verb</i>)
one	eight	pain (<i>noun</i>)	

790. Review Questions. Give the first twelve cardinals and decline the first three. Give the first twelve ordinals. How are ordinals declined? Decline *millia*. Define a deponent verb. Give the synopsis of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *sequor* in the indicative and subjunctive. Give the four participles of *veniō* and explain the formation of each. What participles that are found in English are lacking in Latin? Decline *portāns*, present participle of *portō*. Give the four participles of *hortor*. What important fact can you state concerning the meaning of the past participle of deponent verbs?

791. Give the rule for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence :

Genitive of the whole	Genitive with adjectives
Ablative of respect	Genitive or ablative of description
Accusative of duration of time and extent of space	

Give the Latin for *a thousand soldiers, ten thousand soldiers, five of the soldiers*. Translate "While the Helvetii were going forth from their boundaries, Cæsar was hastening from Rome," using the ablative absolute for the first clause.

792. Derivation. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 788. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How can you generally tell whether a word should end in *-ant* or *-ent*? What can you say about the formation and meaning of Latin nouns like **victor**, **rēctor**, etc., and their appearance in English?

XII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXXIX-XCVI

793. Give the English of the following words :

NOUNS

Third Declension

condiciō	difficultās	mēns	ōrātiō	turris
cōnsuētūdō	iūs	nēmō	raziō	vulnus

Fourth Declension

senātus

Fifth Declension

rēs pūblica

ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declensions

frūmentārius summus tantus

Third Declension

nōbilis tālis

VERBS

<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>	<i>Third Conj.</i>	<i>Fourth Conj.</i>
appropinquō	permoveō	āmittō	interclūdō
imperō	prōvideō	coniciō	perducō
postulō		cōnscribō	praefficiō
rogō		cōsistō	premō
temptō		cōnsulō	prōpōnō
		incendō	quaerō

Irregular

dēsum praesum

PREPOSITION

propter

ADVERBS

diligenter quidem

794. Give the Latin of the following words :

draw near	condition	mind (<i>noun</i>)	hurl
command	custom	no one	wound (<i>noun</i>)
move deeply	of grain	consult	seek
look out for	highest	set on fire	senate
enroll	so great	cut off	commonwealth
stand still	well-known	lead through	assemble
press hard	such	set over	hinder
set forth	difficulty	speech	arrive
be lacking	right (<i>noun</i>)	method	demand (<i>verb</i>)
on account of	be before <i>or</i> over	tower	ask
carefully	indeed	lose	try

795. Review Questions. Name the three moods and the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive. Inflect in full the indicative and subjunctive of **västō**, **moveō**, **agō**, **rapīō**, and **mūniō**. Inflect the indicative and subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**. How may the past and past perfect active subjunctive of any verb be formed?

796. Name the primary and secondary tenses, and give the rule for the sequence of tenses. In what expressions is the indicative used? In what the subjunctive? How is purpose often expressed in English? How is it usually expressed in Latin? Give an example of each. What is a noun clause? Give the rule for noun clauses of purpose, and illustrate by an example. Name five verbs that are regularly followed by **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive. Give the rule for the subjunctive of result, and illustrate by an example. Translate "Many things caused the slave to fear," and explain the construction of the dependent clause. Give the rule for the dative with compounds, and illustrate by an example.

797. Derivation. Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 793. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

XIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS XCVII-CIII

798. Give the English of the following words :

circummūniō	genus	negō	ostendō	sciō
enim	intelligō	nōlō	pertineō	sentiō
eō	iūdicō	oportet	recipiō	spērō
ferō	mālō	ōrdō	satis	volō
fidēs				

799. Give the Latin of the following words :

kind (<i>noun</i>)	perceive	for	faith
be unwilling	be necessary	deny	reach, pertain
sufficient	know	prefer	take back
wish (<i>verb</i>)	feel	bear	judge
fortify around	rank	hope (<i>verb</i>)	go

800. Give the Latin of the following idioms :

To make war upon	To remember	To be eager for a revolution
To be annoyed	For the future	To give satisfaction

801. Inflect the verbs *eō*, *ferō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *volō*.

802. Review Questions. What constructions are used after *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*? Give the rule for the constructions with *cum*. Write sentences illustrating (a) *cum* = *when*, (b) *cum* = *since*, (c) *cum* = *although*. What is an indirect statement? How are indirect statements introduced in English? What can you say about the mood and tense of the English verb in an indirect statement? What are the three marked differences between an English and a Latin indirect statement? What kind of verbs are followed by indirect statements? Give an English indirect statement and translate it into Latin. What is an indirect question? Give an example of an English indirect question and translate it into Latin.

803. Derivation. Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 798. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How are abstract nouns formed from adjectives? Illustrate. Explain the meaning and formation of *cupidus*. What is the force of the suffix *-sus*? of the suffixes *-ilis*, *-bilis*? What rule can you give for the spelling of English words ending in *-able* or *-ible*? in *-tion* or *-sion*?

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

FIRST HALF YEAR

Agreement

1. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number (§ 48).
2. A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case (§ 61).
3. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (§ 104).
4. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (§ 91).
5. The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause (§ 390).

Nominative Case

6. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative (§ 33).

Genitive Case

7. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive (§ 34).
8. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate and is connected with its noun by a form of the verb *sum* (§ 150).

Dative Case

9. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative (§ 58).
10. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs *crēdō*, *faveō*, *noceō*, *pāreō*, *persuādeō*, *resistō*, *studeō*, and others of like meaning (§ 224).
11. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites (§ 130).

Accusative Case

12. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative (§ 35).
13. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (§ 368).

Ablative Case

14. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative, usually without a preposition (§ 165).
15. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition (§ 166).
16. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with **cum** (§ 167).
17. *Manner* is denoted by the ablative with **cum**. **Cum** may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative (§ 168).
18. The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (§ 295).
19. Words expressing separation or taking away are followed by the ablative, often with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (§ 296).
20. The ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the act is performed (§ 261).
21. The ablative of a noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be used in the absolute construction to denote attendant circumstances (§ 400).

Infinitive used as in English

22. The verbs **iubeō**, *command*; **cupiō**, *wish*; **vetō**, *forbid*, and the like are often followed by an infinitive clause as object (§ 367).
23. Verbs of incomplete predication are often followed by an infinitive (§ 369).

SECOND HALF YEAR

Genitive Case

1. A genitive denoting the whole is used with words denoting a part, and is known as the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive (§ 541).
2. The adjectives **cupidus**, *desirous*; **peritus**, *skilled*; **imperitus**, *ignorant*, and others of similar character are followed by the objective genitive (§ 554).
3. The genitive or the ablative, with a modifying adjective, is used in expressions of quality or description (§ 562).

Dative Case

4. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super** take the dative of the indirect object (§ 623).
5. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 686).

Accusative Case

6. The place to which is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative (§ 481).
7. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative (§ 547).
8. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling*, and the like may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives (§ 684).

Ablative Case

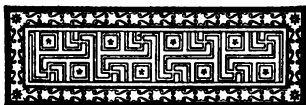
9. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference (§ 452).
10. The place from which is expressed by **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex**, with the ablative (§ 482; cf. § 295).
11. The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with **in** (§ 483).
12. The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 493).
13. The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true (§ 552).

Moods and Tenses of Verbs

14. In a complex sentence a primary tense of the indicative in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary by a secondary (§ 595).
15. A clause expressing purpose takes the subjunctive (§ 588).
16. Verbs denoting a purpose or desire that something be done are followed by a subjunctive clause as object, introduced by **ut** or **nē** (§ 602).
17. Clauses of result are introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) and have the verb in the subjunctive (§ 616).
18. Object clauses of result introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about (§ 618).
19. **Cum** means *when, since, or although*, and takes the subjunctive except in a temporal or descriptive clause of present or future time (§ 643).

Moods and Tenses of Verbs (Continued)

20. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive (§ 654).
21. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive (§ 656).
22. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving* (§ 657).
23. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive, and its tense is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 671).



ROMAN MOSAIC

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

804. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular.

805. FIRST DECLENSION

aqua (base *aqu-*), *water*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
NOM.	aqua	-a	aquae	-ae
GEN.	aquae	-ae	aquarum	-arum
DAT.	aquae	-ae	aquis	-is
ACC.	aquam	-am	aquas	-as
ABL.	aquā	-ā	aquis	-is

a. Dea and *filia* have the termination *-abus* in the dative and ablative plural.

806. SECOND DECLENSION

a. MASCULINES IN -us

servus (base *serv-*), *slave*

NOM.	servus	-us	servī	-ī
GEN.	servī	-ī	servōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs
ACC.	servum	-um	servōs	-ōs
ABL.	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs

1. Nouns in *-us* of the second declension have the termination *-e* in the vocative singular: as, *serve*.

2. Proper names in *-ius*, and *filius*, end in *-ī* in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult: as, *Vergi'li*, *filī*.

b. NEUTERS IN -um

oppidum (base oppid-), *town*

NOM.	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
GEN.	oppidi	-i	oppidōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	oppidō	-ō	oppidis	-is
ACC.	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
ABL.	oppidō	-ō	oppidis	-is

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -i in the genitive singular, *not* in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

puer (base puer-), *boy*; ager (base agr-), *field*; vir (base vir-), *man*

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	—
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	pueris	agris	viris	-is
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
ABL.	pueris	agris	viris	-is

THIRD DECLENSION

807. Nouns of the third declension are classified as consonant stems or i-stems.

808.

I. CONSONANT STEMS

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

cōnsul (base cōnsul-), M., *consul*; legiō (base legiōn-), F., *legion*;pater (base patr-), M., *father*

NOM.	cōnsul	legiō	pater	—
GEN.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	patris	-is
DAT.	cōnsulī	legiōni	patri	-i
ACC.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	patrem	-em
ABL.	cōnsule	legiōne	patre	-e

NOM.	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	patrēs.	-ēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	legiōnūm	patrum	-um
DAT.	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	patribus	-ibus
ACC.	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	patrēs	-ēs
ABL.	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	patribus	-ibus

prīnceps (base **prīncip-**), M., *chief*; **mīles** (base **mīlit-**), M., *soldier*;
rēx (base **rēg-**), M., *king*

NOM.	prīnceps	mīles	rēx	-s
GEN.	prīncipis	mīlitis	rēgis	-is
DAT.	prīncipī	mīlitī	rēgī	-ī
ACC.	prīncipem	mīlitem	rēgem	-em
ABL.	prīncipe	mīlite	rēge	-e
NOM.	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	rēgēs	-ēs
GEN.	prīncipum	mīlitum	rēgum	-um
DAT.	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	rēgibus	-ibus
ACC.	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	rēgēs	-ēs
ABL.	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	rēgibus	-ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular
 cf. § 405. a.

b. NEUTERS

flūmen (base **flūmin-**), N., *river*; **tempus** (base **tempor-**), N., *time*;
caput (base **capit-**), N., *head*

NOM.	flūmen	tempus	caput	—
GEN.	flūminis	temporis	capitis	-is
DAT.	flūminī	temporī	capitī	-ī
ACC.	flūmen	tempus	caput	—
ABL.	flūmine	tempore	capite	-e
NOM.	flūmina	tempora	capita	-a
GEN.	flūminum	temporum	capitum	-um
DAT.	flūminibus	temporibus	capitibus	-ibus
ACC.	flūmina	tempora	capita	-a
ABL.	flūminibus	temporibus	capitibus	-ibus

809.

II. *I*-STEMS*a.* MASCULINES AND FEMININES

caedēs (base *caed-*), F., *slaughter*; **hostis** (base *host-*), M., *enemy*; **urbs** (base *urb-*), F., *city*; **cliēns** (base *client-*), M., *retainer*

NOM.	caedēs	hostis	urbs	cliēns	-s, -is, or -ēs
GEN.	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis	-is
DAT.	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
ACC.	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
ABL.	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
NOM.	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
GEN.	caedum	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
DAT.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
ACC.	caedis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	-is, -ēs
ABL.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

b. NEUTERS

mare (base *mar-*), N., *sea*; **animal** (base *animāl-*), N., *animal*;

calcar (base *calcār-*), N., *spur*

NOM.	mare	animal	calcar	— or -e
GEN.	maris	animālis	calcāris	-is
DAT.	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
ACC.	mare	animal	calcar	— or -e
ABL.	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
NOM.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
GEN.	—	animālium	calcārium	-ium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
ACC.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

810.

FOURTH DECLENSION

adventus (base *advent-*), M., *arrival*; **cornū** (base *corn-*), N., *horn*

			MASC.	NEUT.
NOM.	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN.	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT.	adventuī (-ū)	cornū	-uī (-ū)	-ū
ACC.	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL.	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū

NOM.	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN.	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

811.

FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs (base di-), M., *day*; rēs (base r-), F., *thing*

NOM.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī	rei	-ēī
DAT.	diēī	rei	-ēī
ACC.	diem	rem	-em
ABL.	diē	rē	-ē
NOM.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum	-ērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
ACC.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

812.

CONSPECTUS OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS

	DECL. I	DECL. II	DECL. III	DECL. IV	DECL. V
NOM.	aqua	servus	prīnceps	adventus	diēs
GEN.	aquae	servī	prīncipis	adventūs	diēī
DAT.	aquae	servō	prīncipī	adventuī (-ū)	diēī
ACC.	aquam	servum	prīncipem	adventum	diem
ABL.	aquā	servō	prīncipe	adventū	diē
NOM.	aquae	servī	prīncipēs	adventūs	diēs
GEN.	aquārum	servōrum	prīncipum	adventuum	diērum
DAT.	aquīs	servīs	prīncipibus	adventibus	diēbus
ACC.	aquās	servōs	prīncipēs	adventūs	diēs
ABL.	aquīs	servīs	prīncipibus	adventibus	diēbus

813.

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

homō, M., *man*; domus, F., *house*; vīs, F., *strength*; iter, N., *way*

NOM.	homō	domus	vīs	iter
GEN.	hominis	domūs (loc. domī)	vīs (rare)	itineris
DAT.	hominī	domuī, -ō	vī (rare)	itinerī
ACC.	hominem	domum	vim	iter
ABL.	homine	domō, -ū	vī	itinere
NOM.	hominēs	domūs	vīrēs	itinerā
GEN.	hominum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium	itinerum
DAT.	hominibus	domibus	vīribus	itineribus
ACC.	hominēs	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs	itinerā
ABL.	hominibus	domibus	vīribus	itineribus

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

814.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus (base bon-), *good*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

liber (base liber-), *free*

NOM.	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

pulcher (base pulchr-), *pretty*

NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

815. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius (base *ali-*), *another*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
GEN.	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>
ACC.	<i>aliūm</i>	<i>aliām</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
ABL.	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>

ūnus (base *ūn-*), *one, only*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>
GEN.	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>
ACC.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
ABL.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>

816. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, *I*-STEMS*ācer, ācris, ācre* (base *ācr-*), *keen, eager*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācris, -ēs</i>	<i>ācris, -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

omnis, omne (base *omn-*), *every, all*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
GEN.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
DAT.	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
ACC.	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnis, -ēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
ABL.	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

pār (base **par-**), *equal*

NOM.	pār	pār	parēs	paria
GEN.	paris	paris	parium	parium
DAT.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
ACC.	parem	pār	paris, -ēs	paria
ABL.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

817.**PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES****vocāns** (base **vocant-**), *calling*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia
GEN.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium
DAT.	vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus
ACC.	vocantem	vocāns	vocantis, -ēs	vocantia
ABL.	vocante, -ī	vocante, -ī	vocantibus	vocantibus

iēns (base **ient-**, **eunt-**), *going*

NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
DAT.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntis, -ēs	euntia
ABL.	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

818.**REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE	
MASC.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
clārus, <i>clear</i>	clārior	clārius	clārissimus	-a	-um
brevis, <i>short</i>	brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a	-um
vēlōx, <i>swift</i>	vēlōcior	vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus	-a	-um
ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	-a	-um
pulcher, <i>pretty</i>	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a	-um
liber, <i>free</i>	liberior	liberius	liberrimus	-a	-um

819. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

clārior, clearer

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	clārior	clārius	clāriōrēs	clāriōra
GEN.	clāriōris	clāriōris	clāriōrum	clāriōrum
DAT.	clāriōrī	clāriōrī	clāriōribus	clāriōribus
ACC.	clāriōrem	clārius	clāriōrēs	clāriōra
ABL.	clāriōre	clāriōre	clāriōribus	clāriōribus

plūs, more

NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

820. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, <i>easier</i>	facillimus, <i>easiest</i>
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilior, <i>harder</i>	difficillimus, <i>hardest</i>
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similior, <i>more like</i>	simillimus, <i>most like</i>
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, <i>more unlike</i>	dissimillimus, <i>most unlike</i>
inferus, -a, -um, <i>below</i>	inferior, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus } { imus } <i>lowest</i>
superus, -a, -um, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus } { summus } <i>highest</i>
	prior, <i>former</i>	primus, <i>first</i>
	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>
	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>

821. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
liberē, <i>freely</i>	liberius	liberrimē
ācritē, <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
similiter, <i>similarly</i>	similius	simillimē

822. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius, <i>longer</i>	diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
prope, <i>nearly, near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē, <i>nearest</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i>

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

823. The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*.

CARDINALS (<i>How many</i>)		ORDINALS (<i>In what order</i>)	
1, <i>ūnus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>primus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i>	<i>first</i>
2, <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>two</i>	<i>secundus</i> (<i>or alter</i>)	<i>second</i>
3, <i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i>	<i>three</i>	<i>tertius</i>	<i>third</i>
4, <i>quattuor</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	<i>etc.</i>
5, <i>quīnque</i>		<i>quintus</i>	
6, <i>sex</i>		<i>sextus</i>	
7, <i>septem</i>		<i>septimus</i>	
8, <i>octō</i>		<i>octāvus</i>	
9, <i>novem</i>		<i>nōnus</i>	
10, <i>decem</i>		<i>decimus</i>	
11, <i>ūndecim</i>		<i>ūndecimus</i>	
12, <i>duodecim</i>		<i>duodecimus</i>	
13, <i>tredecim</i> (<i>decem</i> (<i>et</i>) <i>trēs</i>)		<i>tertius decimus</i>	
14, <i>quattuordecim</i>		<i>quārtus decimus</i>	

15, quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16, sēdecim	sextus decimus
17, septendecim	septimus decimus
18, duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimus
19, ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimus
20, vīgintī	vicēsimus <i>or</i> vicēsimum
21, { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	{ vicēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.
30, trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40, quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50, quinquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60, sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70, septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80, octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90, nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100, centum	centēsimus
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300, trecentī	trecentēsimus
400, quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500, quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600, sescentī	sescentēsimus
700, septingentī	septingentēsimus
800, octingentī	octingentēsimus
900, nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000, mille	millēsimus

824. Declension of *duo*, *two*; *trēs*, *three*; and *mille*, *thousand*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mille	mīlium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus
ACC.	duōs <i>or</i> duo	duās	duo	trīs <i>or</i> trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus

NOTE. *Mille* is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of *ūnus* cf. § 534.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

825.

PERSONAL

	<i>ego, I</i>		<i>tū, you</i>		<i>suī, of himself, etc.</i>	
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	mei	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

826.

POSSESSIVE

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
meus	mea	meum	<i>my, mine</i>
tuus	tua	tuum	<i>your, yours</i>
suus	sua	suum	<i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>
noster	nostra	nostrum	<i>our, ours</i>
vester	vestra	vestrum	<i>your, yours</i>
suus	sua	suum	<i>their (own), theirs</i>

NOTE. The vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mi**.

827.

INTENSIVE

ipse, self

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

828.

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, this (here), he

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

iste, this, that (of yours), he

NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

ille, that (yonder), he

NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, this, that, he

NOM.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	cae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

idem, the same

NOM.	idem	e'adem	idem	{ iī'dem eī'dem	cae'dem	e'adem
GEN.	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
DAT.	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem
ACC.	eun'dem	ean'dem	idem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
ABL.	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem

829.

RELATIVE

quī, who, which, that

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

830.

INTERROGATIVE

quis, substantive, who, what

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative.

INDEFINITE

831. **Quis** and **quī**, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of **quis** and **quī**.

quisque, each

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
GEN.	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que
DAT.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
ABL.	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

¹ *Qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

quīdam, a certain one, a certain

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	{ quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
GEN.	cuius'dam	cuius'dam	cuius'dam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	{ quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
DAT.	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

aliquis, substantive, someone, something; aliquī, adjective, some

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
GEN.	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua		
GEN.	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum		
DAT.	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus		
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua		
ABL.	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus		

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS

832. FIRST CONJUGATION. *Ā-VERBS. VOCŌ, I CALL*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**Pres. stem **vocā-**; perf. stem **vocāv-**; part. stem **vocāt-**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT			
<i>I call, am calling, do call, etc.</i>		<i>I am called, etc.</i>	
vocō	vocāmus	vocor	vocāmur
vocās	vocātis	vocāris, -re	vocāmini
vocat	vocant	vocātur	vocantur
PAST			
<i>I called, was calling, did call, etc.</i>		<i>I was called, etc.</i>	
vocābam	vocābāmus	vocābar	vocābāmur
vocābās	vocābātis	vocābāris, -re	vocābāmini
vocābat	vocābant	vocābātur	vocābantur
FUTURE			
<i>I shall call, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be called, etc.</i>	
vocābō	vocābimus	vocābor	vocābimur
vocābis	vocābitis	vocāberis, -re	vocābimini
vocābit	vocābunt	vocābitur	vocābuntur
PERFECT			
<i>I have called, called, did call, etc.</i>		<i>I have been (was) called, etc.</i>	
vocāvī	vocāvimus	vocātus, {	vocātī, {
vocāvistī	vocāvistis	sum	sumus
vocāvit	vocāverunt, -re	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
		es	estis
		est	sunt
PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had called, etc.</i>		<i>I had been called, etc.</i>	
vocāveram	vocāverāmus	vocātus, {	vocātī, {
vocāverās	vocāverātis	eram	erāmus
vocāverat	vocāverant	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
		erās	erātis
		erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have called, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been called, etc.</i>	
vocāverō	vocāverimus	vocātus, {	vocātī, {
vocāveris	vocāveritis	erō	erimus
vocāverit	vocāverint	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
		eris	eritis
		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

vocem	vocēmus	vocer	vocēmur
vocēs	vocētis	voceris, -re	vocēminī
vocet	vocent	vocētur	vocentur

PAST

vocārem	vocārēmus	vocārer	vocārēmur
vocārēs	vocārētis	vocārēris, -re	vocārēminī
vocāret	vocārent	vocārētur	vocārentur

PERFECT

vocāverim	vocāverimus	vocātus, { sim	vocātī, { simus
vocāveris	vocāveritis	-a, -um { sis	-ae, -a { sitis
vocāverit	vocāverint	{ sit	{ sint

PAST PERFECT

vocāvissem	vocāvissēmus	essem	vocātī, { essēmus
vocāvissēs	vocāvissētis	-a, -um { essēs	-ae, -a { essētis
vocāvisset	vocāvissent	{ esset	{ essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

vocā, <i>call thou</i>	vocāre, <i>be thou called</i>
vocāte, <i>call ye</i>	vocāminī, <i>be ye called</i>

FUTURE

[vocātō, <i>thou shalt call</i>	vocātor, <i>thou shalt be called</i>
vocātō, <i>he shall call</i>	vocātor, <i>he shall be called</i>
vocātōte, <i>you shall call</i>	_____
vocantō, <i>they shall call</i>	vocantor, <i>they shall be called</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. vocāre, <i>to call</i>	vocārī, <i>to be called</i> [<i>called</i>]
PERF. vocāvisse, <i>to have called</i>	vocātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been</i>
FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be</i>	[vocātum irī, <i>to be about to be</i>
<i>about to call</i>	<i>called</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. vocāns, -antis, <i>calling</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to</i>	GERUNDIVE ¹ vocandus, -a, -um, <i>to</i>
<i>call</i>	<i>be called</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. vocātus, -a, -um, <i>having been</i>
	<i>called</i>

GERUND

NOM. _____
GEN. vocandī, <i>of calling</i>
DAT. vocandō, <i>for calling</i>
ACC. vocandum, <i>calling</i>
ABL. vocandō, <i>by calling</i>

SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

ACC. vocātum, <i>to call</i>
ABL. vocātū, <i>to call, in the</i>
<i>calling</i>

¹ Sometimes called the future passive participle.

833. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē-VERBS. MONEŌ, I ADVISE*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneŏ, monēre, monui, monitus**Pres. stem **monē-**; perf. stem **monu-**; part. stem **monit-**

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I advise, etc.

moneŏ	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

I am advised, etc.

moneor	monēmur
monēris, -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

PAST

I was advising, etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

I was advised, etc.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, -re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

I shall be advised, etc.

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, I advised, etc.

monui	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, -re

I have been (was) advised, etc.

monitus, {	sum	moniti, {	sumus
-a, -um	es	-ae, -a	estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

I had advised, etc.

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

I had been advised, etc.

monitus, {	eram	moniti, {	erāmus
-a, -um	erās	-ae, -a	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

I shall have been advised, etc.

monitus, {	erō	moniti, {	erimus
-a, -um	eris	-ae, -a	eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

mon ^{eam}	mon ^{eamus}	mon ^{ear}	mon ^{eamur}
mon ^{ēas}	mon ^{ēatis}	mon ^{ēaris, -re}	mon ^{ēamini}
mon ^{eat}	mon ^{eant}	mon ^{ēatur}	mon ^{eantur}

PAST

mon ^{ērem}	mon ^{ērēmus}	mon ^{ērer}	mon ^{ērēmur}
mon ^{ērēs}	mon ^{ērētis}	mon ^{ērēris, -re}	mon ^{ērēmini}
mon ^{eret}	mon ^{erent}	mon ^{ērētur}	mon ^{erentur}

PERFECT

mon ^{uerim}	mon ^{uerimus}	mon ^{itus, -a, -um}	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$ </div>	mon ^{iti, -ae, -a}	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$ </div>
mon ^{ueris}	mon ^{ueritis}				
mon ^{uerit}	mon ^{uerint}				

PAST PERFECT

mon ^{uissem}	mon ^{uissemus}	mon ^{itus, -a, -um}	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$ </div>	mon ^{iti, -ae, -a}	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$ </div>
mon ^{uisēs}	mon ^{uisētis}				
mon ^{uisset}	mon ^{uisset}				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

mon ^{ē, advise thou}	mon ^{ēre, be thou advised}
mon ^{ēte, advise ye}	mon ^{ēmini, be ye advised}

FUTURE

mon ^{ētō, thou shalt advise}	mon ^{ētor, thou shalt be advised}
mon ^{ētō, he shall advise}	mon ^{ētor, he shall be advised}
mon ^{ētōte, you shall advise}	_____
mon ^{entō, they shall advise}	mon ^{entor, they shall be advised}

INFINITIVE

PRES. mon ^{ēre, to advise}	mon ^{ērī, to be advised}
PERF. mon ^{uisse, to have advised}	mon ^{itus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised}
FUT. mon ^{itūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise}	[mon ^{itum irī, to be about to be advised}]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. mon ^{ēns, -entis, advising}	PRES. _____
FUT. mon ^{itūrus, -a, -um, about to advise}	GER. mon ^{endus, -a, -um, to be advised}
PERF. _____	PERF. mon ^{itus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised}

GERUND

NOM. _____
GEN. mon ^{endī, of advising}
DAT. mon ^{endō, for advising}
ACC. mon ^{endum, advising}
ABL. mon ^{endō, by advising}

SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

ACC. mon ^{itum, to advise}
ABL. mon ^{itū, to advise, in the advising}

834. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS. REGŌ, 1 RULE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus

Pres. stem rego-; perf. stem rēx-; part. stem rēct-

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

regor	regimur
regeris, -re	regimini
regitur	reguntur

PAST

*I was ruling, etc.**I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, -re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

regar	regēmur
regēris, -re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled, etc.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxisti	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxerunt, -re

rēctus, {	sum	rēctī, {	sumus
-a, -um {	es	-ae, -a {	estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

rēctus, {	eram	rēctī, {	erāmus
-a, -um {	erās	-ae, -a {	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

rēctus, {	erō	rēctī, {	erimus
-a, -um {	eris	-ae, -a {	eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

PAST

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus, { sim	rēctī, { sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	-a, -um { sis	-ae, -a { sitis
rēxerit	rēxerint	sit	sint

PAST PERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissemus	rēctus, { essem	rēctī, { essēmus
rēxisseās	rēxisseātis	-a, -um { essēs	-ae, -a { essētis
rēxisset	rēxisissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, <i>rule thou</i>	regere, <i>be thou ruled</i>
regite, <i>rule ye</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled</i>

FUTURE

[regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. regere, <i>to rule</i>	regi, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēctus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	[rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. regēns, -entis, <i>ruling</i>	PRES. ———
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	GER. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. ———	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>having been ruled, ruled</i>

GERUND

NOM. ———
GEN. regendī, <i>of ruling</i>
DAT. regendō, <i>for ruling</i>
ACC. regendum, <i>ruling</i>
ABL. regendō, <i>by ruling</i>

SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

ACC. rēctum, <i>to rule</i>
ABL. rēctū, <i>to rule, in the ruling</i>

835. FOURTH CONJUGATION. *Ī-VERBS. AUDIŌ, I HEAR*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiŏ, audire, audivī, auditus*Pres. stem *audi-*; perf. stem *audiv-*; part. stem *audīt-*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I hear, etc.</i>				<i>I am heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiŏ</i>	<i>audimur</i>	<i>audior</i>		<i>audimur</i>	
<i>audis</i>	<i>auditis</i>	<i>audiris, -re</i>		<i>audimini</i>	
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>auditur</i>		<i>audiuntur</i>	
		PAST			
<i>I was hearing, etc.</i>				<i>I was heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>		<i>audiēbāmur</i>	
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbāris, -re</i>		<i>audiēbāmini</i>	
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>		<i>audiēbantur</i>	
		FUTURE			
<i>I shall hear, etc.</i>				<i>I shall be heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>		<i>audiēmur</i>	
<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiētis</i>	<i>audiēris, -re</i>		<i>audiēmini</i>	
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audient</i>	<i>audiētur</i>		<i>audientur</i>	
		PERFECT			
<i>I have heard, etc.</i>				<i>I have been heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audivī</i>	<i>audivimus</i>	<i>auditus, {</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>audītī, {</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>audivistī</i>	<i>audivistis</i>	<i>-a, -um {</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>-ae, -a {</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>audivit</i>	<i>audiverunt, -re</i>		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>
		PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had heard, etc.</i>				<i>I had been heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiveram</i>	<i>audiverāmus</i>	<i>auditus, {</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>audītī, {</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>audiverās</i>	<i>audiverātis</i>	<i>-a, -um {</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>-ae, -a {</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>audiverat</i>	<i>audiverant</i>		<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>
		FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have heard, etc.</i>				<i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i>	
<i>audiverō</i>	<i>audiverimus</i>	<i>auditus, {</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>audītī, {</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>audiveris</i>	<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>-a, -um {</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>-ae, -a {</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>audiverit</i>	<i>audiverint</i>		<i>erit</i>		<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

PAST

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus, {	sim	audītī, {	simus
audiveris	audiveritis	-a, -um	sis	-ae, -a	sitis
audiverit	audiverint		sit		sint

PAST PERFECT

audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus, {	essem	audītī, {	essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis	-a, -um	essēs	-ae, -a	essētis
audivisset	audivissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audi, <i>hear thou</i>	audire, <i>be thou heard</i>
audite, <i>hear ye</i>	audimini, <i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE

[audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>	auditor, <i>he shall be heard</i>
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>	
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. audire, <i>to hear</i>	audiri, <i>to be heard</i>
PERF. audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>	auditus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	[auditum iri, <i>to be about to be heard</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns, -entis, <i>hearing</i>	PRES. ———
FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	GER. audiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard</i>
PERF. ———	PERF. auditus, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i>

GERUND

NOM. ———
GEN. audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>
DAT. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>
ACC. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
ABL. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

ACC. auditum, <i>to hear</i>
ABL. auditū, <i>to hear, in the hearing</i>

836. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *-ĭō*. *CAPĪŌ*, I TAKEPRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captus*Pres. stem *capē-*; perf. stem *cēp-*; part. stem *capt-*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE	PASSIVE
		PRESENT	
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis, -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>
		PAST	
<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāris, -re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>
		FUTURE	
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris, -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>
		PERFECT	
<i>cēpi</i>	<i>cēpimus</i>	<i>captus, { sum</i>	<i>capti, { sumus</i>
<i>cēpisti</i>	<i>cēpistis</i>	<i>-a, -um { es</i>	<i>-ae, -a { estis</i>
<i>cēpit</i>	<i>cēperunt, -re</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>
		PAST PERFECT	
<i>cēperam</i>	<i>cēperāmus</i>	<i>captus, { eram</i>	<i>capti, { erāmus</i>
<i>cēperās</i>	<i>cēperātis</i>	<i>-a, -um { erās</i>	<i>-ae, -a { erātis</i>
<i>cēperat</i>	<i>cēperant</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>
		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>cēperō</i>	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>captus, { erō</i>	<i>capti, { erimus</i>
<i>cēperis</i>	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>-a, -um { eris</i>	<i>-ae, -a { eritis</i>
<i>cēperit</i>	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris, -re	capiāmini
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

PAST

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris, -re	caperēmini
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

PERFECT

cēperim	cēperimus	captus, { -a, -um { sim sis sit	capti, { -ae, -a { simus sitis sint
cēperis	cēperitis		
cēperit	cēperint		

PAST PERFECT

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus, { -a, -um { essem essēs esset	capti, { -ae, -a { essēmus essētis essent
cēpissēs	cēpissētis		
cēpisset	cēpissent		

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2D PERS.	cape	capite	capere	capimini
----------	------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE

[2D PERS.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	_____]
[3D PERS.	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor]

INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere	capī
PERF.	cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um esse	[captum iri]

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns, -entis	PRES.	_____
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um	GER.	capiendus, -a, -um
PERF.	_____	PERF.	captus, -a, -um

GERUND

NOM.	_____
GEN.	capiendī
DAT.	capiendō
ACC.	capiendum
ABL.	capiendō

[SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)]	
ACC.	captum
ABL.	captū

837.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS	{	I. hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>
		II. vereor, verēri, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
		III. { sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
		IV. { patior, pati, passus sum (-iō verb), <i>suffer</i>
		partior, partiri, partitus sum, <i>share, divide</i>

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	patior	partior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	pateris, -re	partīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	patitur	partitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	patimur	partimur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	patiminī	partiminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	partiuntur
PAST	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	partiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	partiar
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	partitus
	sum	sum	sum	sum	sum
P. PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	partitus
	eram	eram	eram	eram	eram
F. PERF.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	partitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	patiar	partiar
PAST	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	partirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	partitus sim
P. PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	partitus
	essem	essem	essem	essem	essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	patere	partire
[FUT.]	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	patitor	partitor]

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	patī	partīrī
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus esse	partītus
	esse	esse	esse		esse
FUT.	*hortātūrus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*passūrus	*partitūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	*hortāns	*verēns	*sequēns	*patiēns	*partiēns
FUT.	*hortātūrus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*passūrus	*partitūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	partītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	partiendus

GERUND

*hortandī	*verendī	*sequendī	*patiendī	*partiendī
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

[*hortātum	*veritum	*secūtum	*passum	*partitum]
[*hortātū	*veritū	*secūtū	*passū	*partitū]

CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS

838.

John 13:13 sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fui, futūrus

Pres. stem es-; perf. stem fu-; part. stem fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

sum, I am
es, thou art
est, he (she, it) is

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

PAST

eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
eritis, *you will be*
erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*
fuisti, *thou hast been, wast*
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, were*
fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuērunt } *they have been, were*
fuēre }

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*
fuerat, *he had been*

fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim simus
sis sitis
sit sint

PAST

essem essēmus
essēs essētis
esset essent

PERFECT

fuerim fuerimus
fueris fueritis
fuerit fuerint

PAST PERFECT

fuissem fuissēmus
fuissēs fuissētis
fuisset fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2D PERS. SING. es, *be thou*
2D PERS. PLUR. este, *be ye*

FUTURE

[2D PERS. SING. estō, *thou shalt be*
3D PERS. SING. estō, *he shall be*
2D PERS. PLUR. estōte, *ye shall be*
3D PERS. PLUR. suntō, *they shall be*]

INFINITIVE

PRES. esse, *to be*
PERF. fuisse, *to have been*
FUT. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,
 to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

 futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

839.

possum, be able, canPRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	possum	pos'sumus	possim	possí'mus
	potes	potes'tis	possis	possí'tis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
PAST	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possē'mus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus	_____	_____
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
P. PERF.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. PERF.	potuerō	potuerimus	_____	_____

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns, -entis (adjective), *powerful*

840.

PRINCIPAL PARTS { **volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish**
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be unwilling, will not
mālō, mälle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer

Nōlō and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne** (*not*) + **volō**, and **mālō** for **mā** (from *magis, more*) + **volō**.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvul'tis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
PAST	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōlui	mālui
P. PERF.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velī'mus	nōlī'mus	mālī'mus
	velī'tis	nōlī'tis	mālī'tis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
PAST	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
P. PERF.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	————	2D PERS. SING.	nōlī	————
		2D PERS. PLUR.	nōlite	————
[FUT.	————	2D PERS. SING.	nōlitō, etc.	————]

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis
-------	----------------	----------------

841.

*ferō, bear, carry, endure*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*Pres. stem *fer-*; perf. stem *tul-*; part. stem *lāt-*

	ACTIVE		INDICATIVE	PASSIVE	
PRES.	ferō	ferimus		feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis		ferris, -re	ferimini
	ferit	ferunt		fertur	feruntur
PAST	ferēbam			ferēbar	
FUT.	feram, ferēs, etc.			ferar, ferēris, etc.	
PERF.	tulī			lātus, -a, -um sum	
P. PERF.	tuleram			lātus, -a, -um eram	
F. PERF.	tulerō			lātus, -a, -um erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
PAST	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim
P. PERF.	tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES. 2D PERS.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
[FUT. 2D PERS.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	_____]
3D PERS.	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor]

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	lāturus, -a, -um esse	[lātum 𐌺𐌹]

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns, -entis	PRES. _____
FUT.	lāturus, -a, -um	GER. ferendus, -a, -um
PERF.	_____	PERF. lātus, -a, -um

GERUND

GEN.	ferendī	ACC.	ferendum
DAT.	ferendō	ABL.	ferendō

[SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)]	
ACC.	lātum
ABL.	lātū

842.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus (fut. part.)

Pres. stem I-; perf. stem I- or IV-; part. stem it-

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
PRES.	eō īmus is itis it eunt	eam	2D PERS. ī ite
PAST	ibam	irem	
FUT.	ibō	_____	[2D PERS. itō itōte 3D PERS. itō euntō]
PERF.	ii (ivī)	ierim (iverim)	
P. PERF.	ieram (iveram)	issem (ivissem)	
F. PERF.	ierō (iverō)	_____	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	ire	PRES.	iēns, euntis (§ 817)
PERF.	isse (ivisse)	FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um esse	GER.	eundum
GERUND		[SUPINE]	
GEN.	eundī	ACC.	eundum
DAT.	eundō	ABL.	eundō
		ACC.	itum
		ABL.	itū

a. The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: as, **itur, itum est**, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with **v** are rare.

843. fiō (passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fiō, fieri, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	fiō _____ fis _____ fit fiunt	fiam	2D PERS.	fī fite
PAST	fiēbam	fierem		
FUT.	fiam	_____		
PERF.	factus, -a, -um sum	factus, -a, -um sim		
P. PERF.	factus, -a, -um eram	factus, -a, -um essem		
F. PERF.	factus, -a, -um erō	_____		
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	fieri	PERF.	factus, -a, -um	
PERF.	factus, -a, -um esse	GER.	faciendus, -a, -um	
[FUT.	factum iri]			

WORD LIST FOR FIRST HALF YEAR

Proper nouns and adjectives are omitted

VERBS

abdūcō	discēdō	iubeō	parō	respondeō
absum	dō	labōrō	pateō	sedeō
agō	dūcō	liberō	persuādeō	servō
amō	ēdūcō	locō	perterreō	spectō
appellō	ēvocō	mittō	petō	studeō
ascendō	expugnō	moneō	portō	sum
audiō	faciō	moveō	possum	superō
capiō	faveō	mūniō	prōcēdō	suscipiō
comparō	fugiō	nārrō	prōdūcō	teneō
cōnfirmō	gerō	nāvigō	prohibeō	timēō
cōnservō	habeō	noceō	properō	vāstō
convocō	habitō	nūntiō	pugnō	veniō
crēdō	iaciō	obtimeō	putō	vetō
cupiō	incipiō	occupō	rapiō	videō
dēfendō	indūcō	oppugnō	regō	vincō
dicō	interficiō	pācō	remittō	vocō
dimittō	inveniō	pāreō	resistō	

NOUNS

ager	arma	cōnsilium	fābula	fossa
agricola	auxilium	cōpia	factum	frūmentum
amicitia	barbarus	dea	fāma	impedimentum
amicus	bellum	deus	filia	imperium
animus	captivus	diligentia	filius	iniūria
annus	casa	equus	finitimī	inopia
aqua	castrum	exemplum	fortūna	īnsula

iūdicium	nāvigium	periculum	puer	terra
lēgātus	negōtium	poena	rēgina	vāllum
liber	numerus	poēta	rēgnum	vīa
locus	officiū	populus	sapientia	victōria
memoria	oppidum	praemium	servus	villa
mūrus	ōra	praesidium	silva	vir
nātūra	patria	proelium	socius	vita
nauta	pecūnia	puella	tēlum	

PRONOUNS

is	ea	id	quī	quid	quis
----	----	----	-----	------	------

ADJECTIVES

altus	finitimus	longus	nōtus	sacer
amicus	firmus	magnus	novus	suus
amplius	grātus	malus	parvus	tardus
barbarus	inimicus	medius	paucī	timidus
bonus	inīquus	meus	proximus	tuus
clārus	integer	miser	pūblicus	vērus
crēber	lātus	multus	pulcher	vester
ēgregius	liber	noster	reliquus	

ADVERBS

anteā	diū	longē	numquam	saepe
celeriter	fortiter	magnopere	nunc	semper
certē	iam	minimē	postea	statim
cūr	ibi	mox	quam	tum
dēnique	ita	nōn	quō	ubi

CONJUNCTIONS

ac <i>or</i> atque	et	nam	nec . . . nec	sed
cum	itaque	nec <i>or</i> neque	que	sī

PREPOSITIONS

ā <i>or</i> ab	ante	dē	in	post	sine
ad	cum	ē <i>or</i> ex	per	prō	trāns

WORD LIST FOR SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

accipiō	conveniō	impediō	pellō	reducō
adducō	dēbeō	imperō	perducō	relinquō
āmittō	dēiciō	incendō	permaneō	retineō
appropinquō	dēligō	incolō	permovereō	rogō
audeō	dēmōnstrō	inferō	pertineō	sciō
circummuniō	dēpōnō	instruō	perveniō	scribō
cognōscō	dēsum	intellegō	pōnō	sentiō
cōgō	dicō	intercludō	postulō	sequor
committō	doceō	intermittō	praeficiō	spērō
commoveō	eō	iūdicō	praemittō	sūmō
cōnficiō	excēdō	mālō	praesum	sustineō
coniciō	existimō	maneō	premō	temptō
cōnscribō	expellō	negō	prōpōnō	trādūcō
cōnsistō	exspectō	nōlō	prōvideō	vereor
cōnsulō	ferō	oportet	quaerō	volō
contendō	fīō	ostendō	recipiō	vulnerō
contineō	hortor	patior	reddō	

NOUNS

aciēs	causa	difficultās	frāter	iter
adventus	celeritās	dolor	fuga	iūs
aestās	cīvis	domus	genus	laus
altitūdō	cīvitās	dux	grātia	legiō
animal	cohors	eques	hiems	lēx
auctōritās	condiciō	equitātus	homō	libertās
beneficium	cōnsuētūdō	exercitus	hōra	lingua
caedēs	cōnsul	explōrātor	hostis	lūx
Caesar	cornū	fidēs	ignis	magnitūdō
calcar	corpus	finis	imperātor	manus
caput	diēs	flūmen	impetus	mare

māter	nāvis	pater	rēs frūmentāria	spatium
mātrimōnium	nēmō	pāx	rēs pūblica	spēs
mēns	nihil	pedes	rēx	tempus
miles	nōmen	pēs	rūs	timor
modus	nox	pōns	salūs	turris
mōns	ōrātiō	potestās	senātus	urbs
mors	ōrdō	prīnceps	servitūs	virtūs
mulier	pars	ratio	signum	vis
multitūdō	passus	rēs	soror	vulnus

PRONOUNS

aliquis	hic	ille	is	quidam	sui
ego	idem	ipse	iste	quisque	tū

ADJECTIVES

ācer	dissimilis	levis	primus	sinister
aequus	ducenti	militāris	quārtus	summus
brevis	duo	mille	quattuor	tālis
celer	duodecim	nōbilis	quinque	tantus
centum	duodecim	nōnus	quintus	tertius
certus	equester	novem	satis	trēs
commūnis	facilis	octāvus	secundus	ūndecim
cupidus	fortis	octō	septem	ūndecimus
decem	frūmentārius	omnis	septimus	ūnus
decimus	gravis	pār	sex	
dexter	idōneus	pedester	sextus	
difficilis	imperitus	peritus	similis	

ADVERBS

bene	molestē
deinde	plūrimum
diligenter	primō
etiam	primum
facile	quidem
interim	tam
maximē	vērō

CONJUNCTIONS

aut	nē
aut . . . aut	quam
autem	quod
enim	tamen
et . . . et	ut

PREPOSITIONS

apud
inter
propter

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The related English words that are given will often suggest others. Always try to add to them and so increase your English vocabulary. Latin is the key to the mastery of English. If the meaning of any of the related words is unknown to you, consult the English dictionary.

LESSON V, § 63

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
dat	he (she, it) gives, is giving	data, dative
est	he (she, it) is	essence, essential
fā'bula	story	fable, fabulous
nār'rat	he (she, it) tells	narrate, narrative
pecū'nia	money	pecuniary
sunt	they are	

LESSON VII, § 81

ā, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	from	
ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	to, <i>expressing motion</i>	
a'qua	water	aquarium, aqueduct
cum, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	with	
in, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	into	
in, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	in, on	
nau'ta	sailor	nautical
per, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	through	
ter'ra	earth, land	terrace, terrestrial

LESSON VIII, § 94

NOTE. Learn the three essential facts about each Latin noun: its nominative, its genitive, and its gender. When reciting the vocabularies, give all three: as, "aqua, aquae, *feminine*, water."

bo'na	good, kind	bonus, bounty
ca'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i>	hut, cottage	
et	and	
ha'bitat	he (she, it) lives	habitation, inhabitant
par'va	small, little	
pul'chra	pretty, beautiful	pulchritude

LESSON IX, § 100

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
ami'cus, -i, <i>m.</i>	friend	amicable, amiable
e'quus, -i, <i>m.</i>	horse	equine
Mār'cus, -i, <i>m.</i>	Marcus	Mark
quō, <i>interrog. adv. with verbs of motion</i>	whither	
ser'vus, -i, <i>m.</i>	slave	servant, serf
u'bi, <i>interrog. adv. with verbs of rest</i>	where	

LESSON X, § 105

a'ger, a'grī, <i>m.</i>	field	acre, agrarian
labō'rat	he (she, it) toils	labor, laboratory
por'tat	he (she, it) carries	porter, portable
pu'er, pu'eri, <i>m.</i>	boy	puerile
quid, <i>interrog. pron.</i>	what	
quis, <i>interrog. pron.</i>	who	
vir, vi'ri, <i>m.</i>	man	virile, virtue

LESSON XI, § 113

ar'ma, -ō'rum, <i>n. plur.</i>	arms	armament
con'vocat	he (she, it) calls together	convoke, convocation
cūr, <i>interrog. adv.</i>	why	
nōn, <i>neg. adv.</i>	not	non- in many compounds: as, non-essential, nonsense
op'pidum, -i, <i>n.</i>	town	
po'pulus, -i, <i>m.</i>	people	population, popular

LESSON XII, § 118

auxi'lium, auxi'li, <i>n.</i>	aid	auxiliary
bel'lum, -i, <i>n.</i>	war	belligerent
fi'lius, fi'li, <i>m.</i>	son	filial, affiliate
frūmen'tum, -i, <i>n.</i>	grain	
mag'nus, -a, -um	great, large	magnitude, magnify
no'vus, -a, -um	new	novel, novelty
pa'rat	he (she, it) prepares	compare, repair
so'cius, so'ci, <i>m.</i>	ally, companion	society, associate

LESSON XIII, § 124

fā'ma, -ae, <i>f.</i>	rumor, report, reputation	fame, famous
lon'gus, -a, -um	long	longitude, prolong

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
mul'tus, -a, -um	much, many	multitude, multiply
nō'tus, -a, -um	known, well-known, famous	noted, notable
sae'pe, <i>adv.</i>	often	
tē'lum, -i, <i>n.</i>	weapon, missile, spear	
vi'a, -ae, <i>f.</i>	way, road	via (by way of) <i>in</i> <i>time-tables, on guide-</i> <i>boards, etc.</i>

LESSON XIV, § 131

al'tus, -a, -um	high, deep, lofty	altitude, exalt
ami'cus, -a, -um	friendly	<i>See the noun</i> amicus, Lesson IX
grā'tus, -a, -um	pleasing	grateful
inimī'cus, -a, -um	unfriendly, hostile	inimical, enemy
in'sula, -ae, <i>f.</i>	island	insulate, peninsula
li'ber, li'bera, li'berum	free	liberal, liberate
nā'vigat	he (she, it) sails	navigate, navigation
pro'ximus, -a, -um	nearest, very near	approximate, proximity
sed, <i>conj.</i>	but	

LESSON XVI, § 151

Gal'lia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	Gaul (modern France)	
Gal'lus, -i, <i>m.</i>	a Gaul	
Germā'nus, -i, <i>m.</i>	a German	
oc'cupat	he (she, it) seizes	occupy, occupation
pug'nat	he (she, it) fights	pugnacious, pugilist
sem'per, <i>adv.</i>	ever, always	
tum, <i>adv.</i>	then, at that time	
victō'ria, -ae, <i>f.</i>	victory	victor

LESSON XIX, § 172

cas'trum, -i, <i>n.</i>	fort; <i>plur.</i> camp	<i>Appears as</i> -cester, -chester, <i>or</i> -caster <i>in names of English</i> <i>towns founded by</i> <i>the Romans:</i> Wor- cester, Winchester, Lancaster, <i>etc.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------	--

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
cō'pia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	plenty, abundance; <i>plur.</i> forces	copious
crē'ber, -bra, -brum	thick, frequent, crowded	
diligen'tia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	industry	diligence
Germā'nia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	Germany	
mox, <i>adv.</i>	soon, presently	
perī'culum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	danger	peril, perilous
Rōmā'nus, -a, -um	Roman. <i>As a noun in the masc. or fem., a Roman</i>	
LESSON XX, § 181		
amici'tia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	friendship	amity. <i>See also amīcus,</i> Lesson IX
bar'barus, -a, -um	savage, uncivilized. <i>As a noun in the masc. or fem., a savage</i>	barbarous, barbarian
Britan'ni, -ōrum, <i>m.</i>	the Britons	
Britan'nia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	Britain, England	
iam, <i>adv.</i>	already, immediately, presently, now	
i'taque, <i>conj.</i>	and so, therefore	
sil'va, -ae, <i>f.</i>	forest	silvan, Pennsylvania (Penn's Forest)
LESSON XXI, § 185		
mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum	wretched	miserable, miser
ō'ra, -ae, <i>f.</i>	shore, coast	
prae'mium, prae'mi, <i>n.</i>	prize, reward	premium
proe'lium, proe'li, <i>n.</i>	battle	
su'perō, -ā're	overcome, conquer	superable, insuperable
LESSON XXII, § 195		
numquam, <i>adv.</i>	never	
nunc, <i>adv.</i>	now, the present time	
sine, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	without	sinecure
LESSON XXIV, § 206		
cōnsi'lium, cōnsi'li, <i>n.</i>	plan, advice	counsel
iniū'ria, -ae, <i>f.</i>	wrong	injury, injustice

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
nūntiō, -ā're	announce	enunciate, pronunciation
servō, -ā're	save	preserve, conserve
vīta, -ae, f.	life	vital, vitality
LESSON XXV, § 210		
clārus, -a, -um	clear, bright; famous	Clara
finitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.	neighbors	
finitimus, -a, -um	adjoining, neighboring	
lātus, -a, -um	wide, broad	latitude
mūrus, -i, m.	wall	mural
patria, -ae, f.	native land	patriot, patriotism
LESSON XXVI, § 216		
dē, prep. with abl.	down from, concerning	
dicō, -ere	say, speak	diction, dictionary
dūcō, -ere	lead	conduct, aqueduct
Italia, -ae, f.	Italy	
liber, libri, m.	book	library, librarian
pateō, -ē're	lie open, extend, stretch	patent (<i>adj.</i>)
regō, -ere	rule	regulate, regal
Rōma, -ae, f.	Rome	
LESSON XXVII, § 221		
audiō, -ī're	hear	audible, audience
fossa, -ae, f.	ditch	fosse, fossil
medius, -a, -um	middle, middle part of	medium, mediocre
mūniō, -ī're	fortify	munition, ammunition
quī, rel. pron.	who	
vāllum, -ī, n.	palisade, wall (<i>of a camp</i>)	
veniō, -ī're	come	advent, convention
LESSON XXIX, § 233		
dea, -ae, f. (<i>dat. and abl. plur. deābus</i>)	goddess	deity, deify
deus, -ī, m.	god	
malus, -a, -um	evil, bad	malice, malicious, malefactor
numerus, -ī, m.	number	numerous, numerator
poēta, -ae, m.	poet	
sapientia, -ae, f.	wisdom	sapient

LESSON XXX, § 239

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
animus, -i, m.	mind, spirit, heart	animate, unanimous
gerō, -ere	wage, carry on, wear	belligerent
inducō, -ere	lead in <i>or</i> against	induce, inductive
mittō, -ere	send	mission, remit
poena, -ae, f.	punishment; poenam dare , suffer punishment, pay a penalty	penalty, penalize, subpoena

LESSON XXXI, § 244

capiō, -ere	take, seize	capture
cele'riter, adv.	quickly	celerity, accelerate
faciō, -ere	make, do, form; proellum facere , fight a battle	fact, affect, defect, infect, infect, perfect
postea, adv.	thereafter, afterwards	
vincō, -ere	conquer	vanquish, invincible

LESSON XXXII, § 254

cum, conj.	when	
nāvi'gium, nāvi'gi, n.	boat	navigable
petō, -ere	seek, ask, beg, make for	petition, compete
respondeō, -ē're	reply	respond, responsive

LESSON XXXIII, § 259

dēnique, adv.	at last, finally	
diū, adv.	a long time	
ēducō, -ere	lead out	educate
fortiter, adv.	bravely	fortitude
Graecia, -ae, f.	Greece	
nec or neque, conj.	and not, nor; nec (neque) ... nec (neque) , neither ... nor	

LESSON XXXVI, § 275

captivus, -i, m.	captive	captivate
firmus, -a, -um	strong, trusty, loyal	firm
ibi, adv.	there, in that place	
praesi'dium, praesi'di, n.	garrison, guard	

LESSON XXXVIII, § 283

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
<i>certē, adv.</i>	certainly, surely	certify
<i>memoria, -ae, f.</i>	memory	memorable
<i>sedeō, -ē're</i>	sit	sedentary
<i>spectō, -ā're</i>	look at	spectacle, spectator
<i>tardus, -a, -um</i>	slow, dull, stupid	tardy

LESSON XL, § 292

<i>agō, -ere</i>	drive, lead, do	agitate, act
<i>factum, -i, n.</i>	deed, act	fact
<i>nam, conj.</i>	for	
<i>oppugnō, -ā're</i>	attack, assault	
<i>rapiō, -ere</i>	seize	rapture, rapacious

LESSON XLI, § 297

<i>abducō, -ere</i>	lead away	abduct
<i>absum, abesse, irreg. verb</i>	be away, be off	absent, absence
<i>dimittō, -ere</i>	send away, let go	dismiss
<i>discēdō, -ere</i>	depart, go away	
<i>liberō, -ā're</i>	set free	liberate
<i>locus, -i, m., plur.</i>	place, spot	local, locality
<i>loca, -ō'rūm, n.</i>		
<i>longē, adv.</i>	far away, distant	
<i>prohibeō, -ē're</i>	hinder, prevent	prohibit

LESSON XLII, § 306

<i>amplus, -a, -um</i>	large, abundant; famous	ample
<i>comparō, -ā're</i>	get together, provide	compare
<i>cōnfirmō, -ā're</i>	strengthen, encourage	confirm
<i>dēfendō, -ere</i>	defend	defensive
<i>locō, -ā're</i>	put, set	locate, locative
<i>quam, adv.</i>	how	
<i>timidus, -a, -um</i>	fearful, cowardly	timid

LESSON XLIII, § 309

<i>annus, -i, m.</i>	year	annual, perennial
<i>ēgregius, -a, -um</i>	remarkable, marvelous	egregious, congregate
<i>exemplum, -i, n.</i>	example, specimen	exemplary
<i>officiū, offici, n.</i>	duty, service	office
<i>pācō, -ā're</i>	subdue, pacify	pacific
<i>villa, -ae, f.</i>	farm, villa, countryseat	village

LESSON XLIV, § 320

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
in'teger, in'tegra, in'tegrum	whole, fresh, pure	integer, integrity
lĕgātus, -i, <i>m.</i>	ambassador, lieutenant	legate
pūblicus, -a, -um	public, official	publicity
vĕrus, -a, -um	true, genuine	veracious, verity

LESSON XLV, § 324

ante, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	before	<i>In English compounds, as, anteroom, antebellum</i>
impe'rium, impe'ri, <i>n.</i>	command, supreme power, realm	empire, imperial
inveniō, -i're	find, come upon	invent
minimē, <i>adv.</i>	not at all, least of all	minimum
nātūra, -ae, <i>f.</i>	nature	natural

LESSON XLIX, § 343

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus	climb	ascend, ascension, descend
expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus	take by storm, capture; distinguish from oppugnō; assault	
fu'giō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus	flee, run	fugitive, refuge
ia'ciō, ia'cere, iēcī, iactus	throw, hurl	inject, eject, and many other compounds
magnō'pere, <i>adv.</i>	greatly	
perter'reō, -ē're, -ui, -itus	terrify, alarm	terror, terrible
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred	
vāstō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus	lay waste	waste, devastate

LESSON LI, § 359

ac (<i>before cons.</i>), atque (<i>before either vowels or cons.</i>), conj.	and, and what is more	
anteā, <i>adv.</i>	heretofore, previously, formerly	

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
ē'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	call out, summon	evoke
fortūna, -ae, f.	fortune	
ini'quus, -a, -um	uneven, unequal, unfavorable	iniquity
post, prep. with acc.	after, behind	postpone, postscript
prō, prep. with abl.	for, in behalf of; rarely, in front of	proceed, procure
rēgnum, -ī, n.	realm, kingdom; sovereignty	interregnum, reign
Rhēnus, -ī, m.	the Rhine	
trāns, prep. with acc.	across	transport, transpose

LESSON LII, § 363

inopia, -ae, f.	want, need, scarcity	
interf'ciō, -ere, -fē'ci, -fec'tus	put out of the way, kill	
negō'tium, negō'ti, n.	business, affair, matter	negotiate
obti'neō, -ē're, * -ui, -ten'tus	possess, keep, gain	obtain
prōcē'dō, -ere, -ces'si, -cessū'rus	go forward, advance	proceed
prōdū'cō, -ere, -dū'xi, -duc'tus	lead forward	produce
susci'piō, -ere, -cē'pi, -cep'tus	undertake, assume	

LESSON LIII, § 371

cu'piō, -ere, -ī'vī, -ī'tus	wish, desire	cupidity
inci'piō, -ere, -cē'pi, -cep'tus	begin	incipient, inceptive
iu'beō, -ē're, iussi, iussus	command	
possum, posse, po'tui	be able, can	possible, posse, potent
vetō, -ā're, -ui, -itus	forbid	veto

LESSON LIV, § 379

appel'lō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	call, name	appellation, appeal
---------------------------------------	------------	---------------------

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	preserve, keep safe	conserve, conservation
ita, <i>adv.</i>	thus, so	
iūdi'cium, iūdi'ci, <i>n.</i>	judgment, trial	judicial
remit'tō, -ere, -mi'si, -mis'sus	send back	remit, remiss, remission
si, <i>conj.</i>	if	
statim, <i>adv.</i>	at once, instantly	

LESSON LV, § 391

impedimentum, -i, <i>n.</i>	hindrance; <i>plur.</i> baggage	impediment
mo'veō, -ē're, mōvī, mōtus	move	
pauci, -ae, -a	few, only a few	paucity
putō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	think	repute, impute, compute
re'liquus, -a, -um	the rest, remaining, remainder of	relic, relinquish, derelict

LESSON LVII, § 406

cōsul, -is, <i>m.</i>	consul	
le'giō, -ō'nis, <i>f.</i>	legion	
miles, -itis, <i>m.</i>	soldier	military, militia
pater, patris, <i>m.</i>	father	paternal
pāx, pācis, <i>f.</i>	peace	pacify
princeps, -ipis, <i>m.</i>	chief, leader	prince
rēx, rēgis, <i>m.</i>	king	regal, regent

LESSON LVIII, § 409

accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus	receive	accept
caput, capitis, <i>n.</i>	head, capital	decapitate, chapter
et . . . et, <i>conj.</i>	both . . . and	
flūmen, flūminis, <i>n.</i>	river	flume
frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	brother	fraternal
māter, mātris, <i>f.</i>	mother	maternal
soror, -ō'ris, <i>f.</i>	sister	sorority
tempus, -oris, <i>n.</i>	time	temporal

LESSON LIX, § 411

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
autem, conj., never stands first	however, but, moreover	
dēiciō, -ere, -iē'ci, -iectus (dē + iaciō)	throw down	dejected
nōmen, -inis, n.	name	nomenclature, noun
pellō, -ere, pe'puli, pulsus	drive, banish	repel, compel
pōnō, -ere, posui, positus	place, set, build; castra pōnere, pitch camp	position, positive, propose, expose
reddō, -ere, red'didi, red'ditus	give back, return	render

LESSON LX, § 414

caedēs, -is (-ium), f.	slaughter, carnage	-cide <i>in</i> suicide, homicide, etc.
cohors, cohortis (-ium), f.	cohort, company (consisting of one tenth of a legion, or about 360 men)	
hostis, hostis (-ium), m.	enemy (in war)	hostile
mātrimō'nium, -ō'ni, n.	marriage; in mātrimō'nium dūcere , marry	matrimony
mul'ier, mul'ieris, f.	woman	
signum, -i, n.	sign, signal, standard	signify, design
urbs, urbis (-ium), f.	city	urban, suburbs, urbane

LESSON LXI, § 417

animal, animālis (-ium), n.	animal	animate, inanimate
calcar, calcāris (-ium), n.	spur	
cī'vitās, -ā'tis, f.	state	civic
contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus	hold together, bound, restrain, keep	contain, continent
e'ques, e'quitis, m.	horseman	equestrian
lingua, -ae, f.	language, tongue	linguist
mare, -is (-ium), n.	sea	marine

LESSON LXII, § 420

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
committō, -ere, -misi, -missus	join together; intrust; proelium committere , join battle, begin an engagement	commit, commission
homō, -inis, m. and f. iter, itineris, n.	human being, man journey, march, route; iter dare , give a right of way; iter facere , march	homicide, human itinerary, itinerant
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	lead back	reduce, reduction
tamen, conj.	nevertheless	
virtūs, virtū'tis, f.	manliness; courage, valor; worth, virtue	virtuous
vis, (vis), f.	strength, power, violence	vim, violent

LESSON LXIII, § 422

aequus, -a, -um	even, level, equal; fair, just	equal, equation, equator
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum ¹	dare	audacity
etiam, adv., standing before the emphatic word	even, also	
mors, mortis (-ium), f.	death	mortal
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus	leave behind, desert	relinquish
salūs, -ū'tis, f.	safety	salutary, salvation, save

LESSON LXV, § 432

ācer, ācris, ācre	keen, sharp, eager, courageous	acrid, acrimonious
aut, conj.	or; aut . . . aut , either . . . or	
celer, celeris, celere	swift	celerity
equester, -tris, -tre	of cavalry	equestrian

¹ **Audeō** is a semi-deponent verb. These verbs will be explained later.

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
fuga, -ae, <i>f.</i>	flight; in <i>fugam dare</i> , put to flight	fugitive
pedester, -tris, -tre	on foot; with <i>cōplae</i> , infantry	pedestrian
LESSON LXVI, § 436		
certus, -a, -um	sure, certain	ascertain, certify
cōgō, -ere, cōg'gī, cōac- tus	collect; compel, force	
commūnis, -e	common	commune, community
gravis, -e	heavy; severe; weighty	grave, gravity
omnis, -e	all, every	omnibus, omnipotent
similis, -e	similar, like	simile, simulate
LESSON LXVII, § 439		
benef'cium, benef'ci, <i>n.</i>	favor, kindness	benefit
corpus, -oris, <i>n.</i>	body	corporal, corpse, incor- porate
grātia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	favor, thanks; <i>grātiās</i> <i>agere</i> , with <i>dat.</i> , thank	gratitude, gratis, ingra- tiate
maximē, <i>adv.</i>	most of all, especially	maximum
pār	equal	par, peer, parity, pair
LESSON LXVIII, § 447		
brevis, -e	short	brief, brevity
difficilis, -e	hard	difficult
facilis, -e	easy	facility
fortis, -e	brave, courageous, strong	fortitude, fort, fortify
ignis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i>	fire	ignite, ignition
LESSON LXIX, § 453		
dux, ducis, <i>m.</i>	leader, commander	duke
inter, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	between, among	interim, intervene
levis, -e	light, trivial, fickle	levity
nihil, <i>n., indecl.</i>	nothing. <i>An abl. nihilō</i> , <i>from a nom. nihilum</i> , <i>occurs as an abl. of</i> <i>measure of difference</i>	nihilist, annihilate

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
pēs, pedis, <i>m.</i>	foot	pedal, pedestal, pedestrian
spatium, spatī, <i>n.</i>	space, distance	spacious, expatiate
LESSON LXX, § 459		
auctōritās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	authority	author
dissimilis, -e	unlike, dissimilar	dissimulate, dissemble
lēx, lēgis, <i>f.</i>	law	legal, legislate
liber'tās, -ā'tis, <i>f.</i>	freedom, liberty	liberal
servitūs, -ūtis, <i>f.</i>	slavery	servitude
LESSON LXXI, § 468		
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus	lead to, bring to, influence	adduce
cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus	learn, find out; <i>in perf. tenses</i> , know	recognize
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	await, expect, wait for	expectation
quod, <i>conj.</i>	because	
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	wound	vulnerable, invulnerable
LESSON LXXII, § 473		
bene, <i>adv.</i>, from bonus	well	benediction, benefit
deinde, <i>adv.</i>	next, then, thereafter	
facile, <i>adv.</i>	easily	facile
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus	remain, abide, stay	mansion
plūrimum, <i>adv.</i>	very much, most; <i>with posse</i> , be most powerful	plural, plurality
primō, <i>adv.</i>, referring to time	at first, <i>as opposed to</i> afterwards; in the beginning	prime, primary, primeval
primum, <i>adv.</i>, referring to order	first, in the first place	primitive
LESSON LXXIII, § 478		
adventus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	arrival	advent
Cæsar, -aris, <i>m.</i>	Cæsar	kaiser, czar
celeritās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	speed, swiftness	celerity

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
cornū, -ūs, <i>n.</i>	horn	cornucopia
dexter, -tra, -trum	right	dexterity, dexterous
equitātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	cavalry	equine
exercitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	army	exercise
impetus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	attack; impetum facere in, make an attack on	impetus, impetuous
sinister, -tra, -trum	left	sinister

LESSON LXXIV, § 486

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus	hasten; strive, fight	contend, contention
domus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>	home; domi , at home	domesticate, domicile
nāvis, -is (-ium), <i>f.</i>	ship	navy, naval
pedes, -itis, <i>m.</i>	foot soldier; <i>plur.</i> in- fantry	pedestrian
rūs, rūris, <i>n.</i>; <i>plur.</i> only <i>nom.</i> and <i>acc.</i>, rūra	country; rūrī , in the country	rural, rustic

LESSON LXXV, § 494

aestās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer	
diēs, diēi, <i>m.</i>	day	diary, dial
hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i>	winter	
lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	light; prima lūx , day- light	lucid, elucidate
nox, noctis (-ium), <i>f.</i>	night	nocturnal, equinox
rēs, rei, <i>f.</i>	thing, matter	real, reality

LESSON LXXVIII, § 514

civis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	citizen	civic, civil
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	alarm, excite, move	commotion
ego, mei	I; <i>plur.</i> we	egotism
imperātor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	general	emperor
sui, <i>gen.</i>	of himself (herself, itself, themselves); in fugam esse dare, flee	suicide
timor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	fear	timorous
tū, tui	thou, you	

LESSON LXXIX, § 519

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	put down, lay down, lay aside	deponent, deposit
idem, eadem, idem	same	identity, identical, identify
incolō, -ere, -uī, —	inhabit, <i>trans.</i> ; also <i>intrans.</i> , dwell	
ipse, ipsa, ipsum	self, himself, herself, itself; very	
manus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>	hand; group, force	manual, manufacture, manuscript
pars, partis (-ium), <i>f.</i>	part, share; side, direc- tion	party, particle, partner, partial
spēs, spē, <i>f.</i>	hope	

LESSON LXXX, § 525

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	owe, ought	debt, debit
dēmōstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	point out, show	demonstrate
finis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i>	end, limit; <i>plur.</i> terri- tory, country	finish, final, finite, in- finite
hic, haec, hoc	this; <i>as pers. pron.</i> , he, she, it	
ille, illa, illud	that; <i>as pers. pron.</i> , he, she, it	
iste, ista, istud	that; <i>as pers. pron.</i> , he, she, it	
modus, -i, <i>m.</i>	measure; manner	mode, model, mood
mōns, montis(-ium), <i>m.</i>	mountain	mount, amount

LESSON LXXXI, § 530

aliquis, aliquid	someone, something	
aliqui, aliqua, aliquod	some	
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	think, consider	estimate
quidam, quaedam,	a certain one, a certain	
quiddam (quoddam)		
quisque, quidque	each one	

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
quisque, quaeque, quodque	each	
retineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus	hold back, retain	retention
sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus	hold up, maintain; endure	sustain

LESSON LXXXIII, § 544

causa, -ae, f.	cause, reason; quā dē causā , for this reason	because
expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus	drive out, expel	expulsion
permaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, -mānsūrus	last, endure, continue	permanent

LESSON LXXXIV, § 549

aciēs, aciēi, f.	line of battle	
cōficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus	do completely, finish	
instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus	draw up, arrange	instruct, instructor
passus, -ūs, m.	step, pace; mille passūs , a thousand paces, a mile	
pōns, pontis (-ium), m.	bridge	pontoon
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus	lead across	traduce

LESSON LXXXV, § 555

cupidus, -a, -um	desirous of, eager for, <i>with gen.</i>	cupidity
imperitus, -a, -um	unskilled, inexperienced, <i>with gen.</i>	
intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	leave off, suspend, suffer to elapse, leave vacant	intermittent, intermission
laus, laudis, f.	praise	laud, laudatory
militāris, -e	military; rēs militāris , art of war	militia, militant
peritus, -a, -um	skilled, experienced, <i>with gen.</i>	experience

LESSON LXXXVI, § 563

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
altitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	height, depth	altitude
dolor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	pain, grief	dolorous, doleful
excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus	go out, depart	exceed, excessive
hortor, -āri, hortātus sum, <i>dep. verb</i>	urge, encourage	exhort
patior, pati, passus sum, <i>dep. verb</i>	suffer, allow, permit	patient, passion
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, <i>dep. verb</i>	follow	sequence, execute
vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, <i>dep. verb</i>	fear, respect	reverence

LESSON LXXXVII, § 571

dēligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus	choose, select	
explōrātor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	spy, scout	explorer
hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i>	hour	
idōneus, -a, -um	suitable, fitting	
magnitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	size, greatness	magnitude
multitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	crowd, throng, multitude	
praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	send ahead, send forward	premise
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus	write	scribble, scribe, script
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus	take up, assume; <i>supplicium sūmere dē</i> , inflict punishment on	presume, consume

LESSON LXXXVIII, § 575

apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	among, in the presence of	
doceō, -ēre, -ui, -tus	teach	docile
interim, <i>adv.</i>	meanwhile, in the meantime	interim
potestās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	power	potent
vērō, <i>adv.</i>	in truth, verily	veracity, verity

LESSON XC, § 590

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	send away, lose	
condiciō, -ōnis, f.	terms, agreement	condition
cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tus	ask for advice, consult, counsel with, <i>with acc.</i>	consultation
quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus	seek for, ask, inquire for	question
ratio, -ōnis, f.	method, arrangement, plan	rational
summus, -a, -um	(<i>superl. of the adj. superus</i> , high) highest, supreme	sum, summit

LESSON XCI, § 597

nēmō, gen. nūllius, dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem, abl. nūllō, m. and f.	no one	
perducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus	lead through, bring; construct (a wall)	
permovē, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtus	move deeply, arouse, influence	
pervenī, -ire, -vēni, -ventus	arrive, <i>with ad or in and acc.</i>	
propter, prep. with acc.	on account of, because of	
rēs publica, rei pūblīcae, f.	commonwealth, republic, state	republican
vulnus, -eris, n.	wound	vulnerable

LESSON XCII, § 604

frūmentārius, -a, -um	of grain; rēs frūmentāria , grain supply	
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	command, <i>with dat. and a subjv. clause</i>	imperative, imperious
postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	demand, require	expostulate
prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus	look out for, foresee	provide

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	ask, request	interrogate
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	try, attempt	temptation
LESSON XCIII, § 608		
appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	draw near, approach, <i>with dat.</i>	propinquity
cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus	enroll	conscript
impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itus	hinder, obstruct	impede
intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus	cut off, block up	<i>The root word, claudō,</i> close, <i>appears in in-</i> clude, exclude, etc.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>	speech, oration; <i>ōrātiō-</i> <i>nem habēre</i> , make a speech	oratory
quidem, <i>adv., never</i> <i>stands first</i>	indeed, in fact. <i>Nē . . .</i> <i>quidem</i> , not even, <i>the emphatic word</i> <i>standing between</i>	
LESSON XCIV, § 613		
difficultās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	difficulty	difficult
diligenter, <i>adv.</i>	carefully, industriously, attentively	diligently
nōbillis, -e	well-known, famous, noble	nobility
turris, -is (-ium; <i>abl.</i> <i>turri or turre</i>), <i>f.</i>	tower	turret
LESSON XCV, § 620		
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus	hurl	<i>The root word, iaciō,</i> throw, <i>appears in in-</i> inject, object, etc.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus	stand still, take a stand, halt, be at rest	consist, consistent
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	custom	
mēns, mentis (-ium), <i>f.</i>	mind	mental
premō, -ere, pressi, pressus	press hard	compress, express, im- press, oppress
tālis, -e	such	
tantus, -a, -um	so great	

LESSON XCVI, § 624

LATIN WORD	MEANING	RELATED WORDS
conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus	come together, assemble	convene, convention
dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus	be lacking, be wanting, <i>with dat.</i>	
incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēsus	set on fire, burn	incendiary, incense
iūs, iūris, <i>n.</i> ; <i>plur.</i> <i>only nom. and acc.,</i> iūra	law, right	justice, judge
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	set over, place in com- mand, <i>with acc. and</i> <i>dat.</i>	prefect
praesum, -esse, -fui, —	be before, be over, be in command, <i>with dat.</i>	present
prōponō, -ere, -posui, -positus	set forth, offer	propose, proposition
senātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	senate	senator

LESSON XCVIII, § 636

circummūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus	wall around, fortify all about	
enim, <i>conj.</i> , <i>never</i> <i>stands first</i>	for	
fidēs, fidei, <i>f.</i>	good faith, protection	fidelity
genus, -eris, <i>n.</i>	race, kind	generic, genus
oportet, -ēre, oportuit	it is fitting, is necessary; <i>an impers. verb,</i> <i>often used with an</i> <i>infin. and subj. acc.</i>	
ōrdō, -inis, <i>m.</i>	rank, class, order	ordinary
ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus	show, display	ostensible, ostentation
pertineō, -ēre, -ui, —	reach, extend, pertain	pertinacity
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	take back; receive; <i>with sē, withdraw</i>	recipient, reception
satis, <i>indecl. adj.</i> ; <i>also</i> <i>used as a neut. noun</i> <i>and as an adv.</i>	enough, sufficient; suf- ficiently	satisfy, satisfactory

DERIVATION NOTEBOOK ¹

TYPE I (WITHOUT DEFINITIONS)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus, place	locate, location, locative, local, locality, localize, locally, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, locomotive, locomotor
---	---

TYPE II (WITH DEFINITIONS)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, call	vocation : <i>a calling, occupation</i> vocal : <i>pertaining to a vocation or calling</i> vocal : <i>pertaining to voice</i> evoked : <i>call out</i> convoke : <i>call together</i> vocate : <i>case of calling, case of address</i> revoke : <i>call back, rescind</i> invoke : <i>call upon, ask for</i> vociferous : <i>with large calling power, with loud tones</i> invocation : <i>a calling upon, a prayer</i>
--	--

TYPE III (WITH EXAMPLES OF USE IN ENGLISH)

mittō, mittere, misi, missus, send	mission : <i>He was sent on a mission to Europe</i> missionary : <i>He was sent as a missionary to China</i> missive : <i>The letter was a formidable missive</i> missile : <i>Stones were the missiles of early warfare</i> transmit : <i>They will transmit the message to us</i> remission : <i>He preached the remission of sins</i> commit : <i>She was committed to his care</i> submit : <i>They submitted to the inevitable</i> submissive : <i>The slave was not submissive</i> omit : <i>Omit the nonessential</i>
---	---

¹ This is a specimen page based on the Latin syllabus for secondary schools published by the University of the State of New York.

COMMON LATIN ABBREVIATIONS

A.B. or B.A. = Artium Baccalaureus, *Bachelor of Arts*

A.D. = annō Dominī, *in the year of our Lord*

ad lib. = ad libitum, *at pleasure*

a.m. = ante merīdiem, *before noon*

A.M. or M.A. = Artium Magister, *Master of Arts*

A.U.C. = ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city, that is, of Rome,*
753 B.C.

cf. = cōfer, *compare*

e.g. = exemplī grātiā, *for example*

etc. = et cētera, *and the rest, and so forth*

ib. or ibid. = ibidem, *in the same place*

i.e. = id est, *that is*

I H S = first three letters of the Greek for *Jesus*, but often taken as the abbreviation for the Latin "Iēsus Hominum Salvātor," *Jesus, the Saviour of Men*

I.N.R.I. = Iēsus Nazarēnus, Rēx Iūdæōrum, *Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews*

lb. = libra, *pound*; lbs. = librae, *pounds*

LL.D. = Lēgum Doctor, *Doctor of Laws*

M.D. = Medicīnae Doctor, *Doctor of Medicine*

N.B. = notā bene, *note well, take notice*

no. = numerō (plural nos.), *by number*

Ph.D. = Philosophiae Doctor, *Doctor of Philosophy*

p.m. = post merīdiem, *after noon*

P.S. = post scriptum, *postscript*

Q.E.D. = quod erat dēmōnstrandum, *which was to be demonstrated*

R. = recipe, *take* (placed before a doctor's prescription)

R.I.P. = requiēscat in pāce, *may he (or she) rest in peace*

sc. = scilicet, *namely*

S.P.Q.R. = Senātus Populusque Rōmānus, *the Senate and Roman People*

st. = stet, *let it stand*

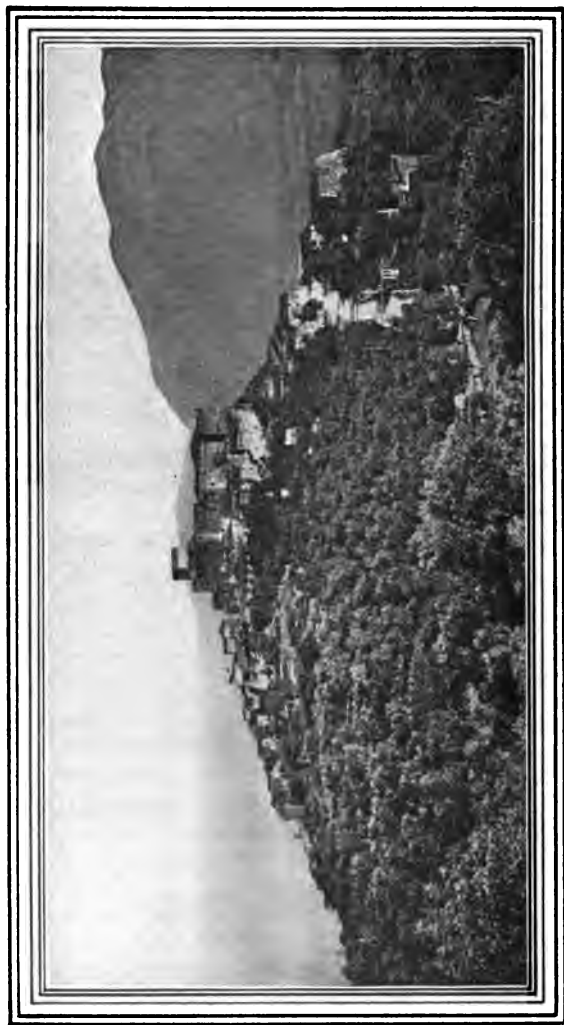
s.v. = sub voce, *under the word*

ult. = ultimō, *of last month*

v. or vid. = vidē, *see*

viz. = videlicet, *namely*

vs. = versus, *against*



SERMONETA

Sermoneta is a characteristic hill town of Italy. The picture gives a good idea of Italian scenery. The country is very mountainous, and south of the valley of the Po there are few large plains. Note the great grove of olive trees covering the slopes below Sermoneta. Olives were as important to ancient as they are to modern Italy; but the Romans of Cæsar's time had neither oranges nor lemons

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

ā, ab, prep. *with abl.*, from, by
abdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, hide; *with*
ae, conceal one's self, hide
addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead
 away
absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, irreg.,
 be away, be off, be distant; *with*
ā or **ab** and *abl.* (§ 838)
Abūdus, -i, m., Abydus
ac (*before consonants*), **atque** (*before*
either vowels or consonants),
conj., and, and what is more;
 simul **atque**, as soon as
accidō, -cidere, -cidi, happen
accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, receive
accurrō, -ere, accurri, —, run to,
 run up
ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp; eager,
 courageous
aciēs, aciēs, f., line of battle; **prīma**
aciēs, the front line
ācritēr, adv., sharply, fiercely
ad, prep. with acc., to, towards,
 near, by; at, on
adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fall in love
 with
addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead to,
 bring to, influence
adeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go to
adferō, -ferre, attuli, adlātus, bring,
 carry to (§ 841)
adhūc, adv., until now, as yet, still

aditus, -ūs, m., privilege of admit-
 tance
admirātiō, -ōnis, f., wonder, sur-
 prise; **tibi admirātiōnem movēre**,
 cause you surprise
adsidō, -ere, -ēdi, —, sit by (*es-*
pecially a sick person)
adstō, -āre, astiti or adstiti, —,
 stand by, stand near
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be
 present, be at hand, *with dat.*
 (§ 838)
adulēscēns, -entis, m., youth
adveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, come,
 arrive
adventus, -ūs, m., arrival
adversus, -a, -um, ill, unfavorable;
 opposite
aeger, -gra, -grum, sick
aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal;
 fair, just
aestās, -ātis, f., summer; **initā aes-**
tātē, at the beginning of summer
aetās, -tātis, f., age
Aethiopia, -ae, f., Ethiopia
ager, agri, m., field
agmen, agminis, n., an army (*on the*
march), column; **primum agmen**,
 the van; **novissimum agmen**, the
 rear; **agmen claudere**, bring up
 the rear
agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, drive, lead; do

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer
 agricultūra, -ae, *f.*, agriculture
 āla, -ae, *f.*, wing
 Albāni, -ōrum, *m.*, the Albans
 aliquandō, *adv.*, some day
 aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod),
indef. pron., someone, anyone,
 some, any (§ 831)
 alius, alia, aliud (*gen.* -ius, *dat.* -ī),
 other, another (*of several*); alius
 . . . alius, one . . . another; alii
 . . . alii, some . . . others (§ 815)
 Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, the Allobroges
 Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps
 altē, *adv.*, high, on high
 alter, -era, -erum (*gen.* -ius, *dat.* -ī),
 the one, the other (*of two*); alter
 . . . alter, the one . . . the other;
 alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . .
 the other party (§ 502)
 altitūdō, -inis, *f.*, height; depth
 altus, -a, -um, high, deep, lofty
 amanter, *adv.*, lovingly, affection-
 ately
 amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship
 amicus, -a, -um, friendly, affection-
 ate
 amicus, -i, *m.*, friend
 amittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send
 away; lose
 amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love
 amor, -ōris, *m.*, love
 amplus, -a, -um, large, abundant;
 famous, distinguished; copious
 Amūlius, Amūli, *m.*, Amulius
 Andromeda, -ae, *f.*, Andromeda
 angustē, *adv.*, narrowly, closely
 angustus, -a, -um, narrow
 animal, -alis (-ium), *n.*, animal

animus, -i, *m.*, mind, spirit, heart;
 in animō esse, *with dat.*, intend;
 animum tenēre, hold attention;
in plur. often courage
 annus, -i, *m.*, year
 anser, -eris, *m.*, goose
 ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in
 front of; *adv.*, before, previously
 antea, *adv.*, heretofore, previously,
 formerly
 antiquus, -a, -um, ancient
 aperīō, -ire, -ui, -pertus, open
 apertus, -a, -um, open
 appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, name
 Appius, -a, -um, Appian
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, draw
 near, approach, *with dat.*
 apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the
 presence of
 aqua, -ae, *f.*, water
 aquilifer, -eri, *m.*, standard-bearer
(of the eagle)
 Aquitāni, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aquitani
 arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree
 arca, -ae, *f.*, chest
 ardeō, -ēre, -ārsi, -ārsurus, be afire,
 glow, burn
 Ariadnē, -ēs, *f.* (*Greek noun*), Ariadne
 Ariōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Arion
 Ariovistus, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus
 arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms
 armātus, -a, -um, armed; *as a noun*
in the masc. plur., armed men
 armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arm
 arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, plow
 ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus,
 climb
 ascribō, -ere, -ipsi, -iptus, enroll
 asper, -era, -erum, rough, wild

Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*, Athens
ātramentum, -ī, *n.*, ink
attingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactus, touch upon, reach
aspiciō, -ere, -ēxi, -ectus, behold, see
auctoritās, -ātis, *f.*, authority
audācia, -ae, *f.*, daring, boldness, presumption
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep. verb.*, dare
audiō, -ire, -īvi, -itus, hear
auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablatus, remove (§ 841)
aura, -ae, *f.*, air
aureus, -a, -um, golden
aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or
autem, *conj.* (*never stands first*), however, but, moreover
auxilium, auxili, *n.*, aid
āvertō, -ere, -ti, -sus, turn away, withdraw

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus
Baculus, -ī, *m.*, Baculus
barbarus, -a, -um, savage, uncivilized; *as a noun in the masc. or fem.*, a savage
Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgæ
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wage war
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war; **bellum inferre**, *with dat.*, make war upon
bene, *adv. from bonus*, well
beneficium, benefici, *n.*, favor, kindness
benignē, *adv.*, kindly
benignus, -a, -um, kind
Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte

bonus, -a, -um, good, kind (§ 820)
brevis, -e, short
brevitās, -ātis, *f.*, shortness; **brevitās temporis**, want of time
breviter, *adv.*, briefly
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, England
Britanni, -ōrum, *m.*, the Britons
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Brutus

Caecilius, -ī, *m.*, Cæcilius
caedēs, -is (*ium*), *f.*, slaughter, carnage
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven
Caesar, -is, *m.*, Cæsar
calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, loss, disaster
calcar, -āris (*ium*), *n.*, spur
cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, camp follower
Camillus, -ī, *m.*, Camillus
canō, -ere, cecini, —, sing
capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus, take, seize
Capitōlium, -tōli, *n.*, the Capitolium
capra, -ae, *f.*, goat
captivus, -ī, *m.*, captive
caput, capitis, *n.*, head; capital
careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, go without, be without, *with abl.*
carrus, -ī, *m.*, baggage wagon
cārus, -a, -um, dear
casa, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage
Cassiopēia, -ae, *f.*, Cassiopeia
castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *plur.*, camp; **castra movēre**, break camp; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **quā dē causā**, for this reason; **causam dicere**, plead a case; **causā**, *with preceding genitive*, for the sake of, in order to
celer, celeris, celere, swift

celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness
 celeriter, *adv.*, quickly
 cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, conceal
 Celtæ, -ārum, *m.*, the Celts
 cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner
 centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, one hundred
 centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion
 Cēpheus, -i, *m.*, Cepheus
 Cerēs, -eris, *f.* (*Greek noun*), Ceres
 certāmen, -inis, *n.*, contest
 certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely
 certus, -a, -um, sure, certain; true;
 certiōrem facere, inform; certior
 fierī, be informed
 cibus, -i, *m.*, food
 Cīcerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero
 Cincinnātus, -i, *m.*, Cincinnatus
 circummūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, wall
 around, fortify all about
 circumsistō, -ere, -steti, —, sur-
 round
 circumveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus,
 surround
 cīvis, -is (-ium), *m. and f.*, citizen
 civitās, -ātis, *f.*, state
 clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cry out,
 shout
 clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, cry
 clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; famous
 claudō, -ere, -si, -sus, close, end;
 agmen claudere, bring up the rear
 cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitus, find
 out, learn; *in perf. tenses*, know
 cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactus, collect;
 compel, force
 cohors, cohortis (-ium), *f.*, cohort,
 company (*consisting of one tenth*
 of a legion, or about 360 men)

collis, collis (-ium), *m.*, hill; sum-
 mus collis, the top of the hill
 colō, -ere, colui, cultus, till; cherish,
 foster
 commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrust,
 commit
 commilitō, -ōnis, *m.*, fellow soldier,
 comrade
 committō, -ere, -misi, -missus, com-
 mit, intrust; proelium committere,
 join battle
 commoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, ex-
 cite, alarm, move
 communis, -e, common
 commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change
 comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, get to-
 gether, provide
 comportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, collect
 cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, undertaking, at-
 tempt
 concidō, -ere, -cidi, —, fall down, fall
 condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, agreement,
 condition
 cōnfectus, -a, -um, exhausted
 cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring
 together, collect (§ 841)
 cōnfertus, -a, -um, dense, closely
 crowded
 cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, do com-
 pletely, finish; subdue, overcome,
 exhaust
 cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, encour-
 age, strengthen
 coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (con +
 iaciō), hurl
 coniūnx, -iugis, *m. and f.*, husband,
 wife
 coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, conspire,
 plot

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place
 cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, *dep. verb.*,
 attempt, try
 cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus,
 enroll
 cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum,
dep. verb., follow, overtake
 cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, preserve,
 keep safe
 cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.*, plan, advice,
 resource; cōnsilium capere, form
 a plan; cōnsilium omittere, leave
 a plan untried
 cōnsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, stand still,
 take a stand; halt, be at rest
 cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight
 cōspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, get
 sight of, see
 cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, appoint;
 determine, decide; station
 cōnsuetūdō, -inis, *f.*, custom, habit
 cōnsul, -is, *m.*, consul
 cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, ask for ad-
 vice, consult, counsel with, *with*
acc.
 contendō, -ere, -di, -tus, hasten;
 strive, fight
 continenter, *adv.*, continuously
 continēō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, hold
 together, bound; restrain, keep;
 hem in
 contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against;
 opposite to
 conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, come
 together, assemble
 convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call to-
 gether
 coōrior, -iri, -ortus sum, *dep. verb.*,
 rise

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance;
plur., forces; cōpiam facere, give
 an opportunity
 cōpiōsus, -a, -um, wealthy, well sup-
 plied
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an*
army); ā dextrō cornū, on the
 right wing
 corpus, -oris, *n.*, body
 corripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, seize
 cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily
 cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, everyday
 crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent,
 crowded
 crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, believe, trust
 cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn, consume
 creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make
 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, increase
 Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete
 culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault
 cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
 cum, *conj.*, when, since, although
 cupidus, -a, -um, desirous of, eager
 for, *with gen.*
 cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, wish, desire
 cūr, *interrog. adv.*, why
 Curiātius, Curiāti, *m.*, Curiatius
 Curius, Curi, *m.*, Curius
 cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, care for, take
 care of; cure
 currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot
 cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course; march,
 journey
 dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from;
 concerning, about
 dea, -ae, *f. (dat. and abl. plur.*
deābus), goddess
 dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, owe, ought

dēbitor, -ōris, *m.*, debtor
dēbitum, -ī, *n.*, debt
decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten
December, -bris, -bre, of December
decimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, tenth
dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender; in **dēditiōnem accipere**, receive in surrender
dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, surrender; *with sē*, surrender one's self
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead down *or* from; escort
dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, defend
dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*, defender
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, weary
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, fail, be wanting
dēficiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**dē** + **iaciō**), throw down
deinde, *adv.*, next, then, thereafter
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select
delphinus, -ī, *m.*, dolphin
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, point out, show
dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally
Dentātus, -ī, *m.*, Dentatus
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put down, lay down, lay aside; **memoriam dēpōnere**, forget
dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -scēnsus, climb down, descend
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for
dēsiliō, -ire, -siluī, -sultus, leap down
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, desist from
dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, despair of
dēstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, draw

dēsūm, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be lacking, be wanting, *with dat.* (§ 838)
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, snatch, *with acc. and dat.*
dētrimentum, -ī, *n.*, loss; disaster
deus, -ī, *m.*, god
dēvorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, devour, consume
dexter, -tra, -trum, right
dextra, -ae, *f.*, right hand
Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, say, speak, tell
dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator
diēs, -ēī, *m.*, day; in **diēs**, every day
differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātus, *irreg.*, be different, differ (§ 841)
difficilis, -e, hard, difficult (§ 820)
difficultās, -ātis, *f.*, difficulty
dīiudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, decide
diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, industriously, attentively
diligentia, -ae, *f.*, industry
dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send away; let go
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, depart from, leave, withdraw, go away
discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil
discrīmen, -īnis, *n.*, turning point; **discrīmen rerum**, crisis
dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, station
dissimilis, -e, unlike, dissimilar (§ 820)
diū, *adv.* (*compared diūtius, diūtissimē*), for a long time, long (§ 822)
diurnus, -a, -um, of the day, daily; **nocturnō diurnōque** (*itinere*), by night and day
diversus, -a, -um, different

dividō, -ere, -visi, -visus, divide
dō, dare, dedi, datus, give
doceō, -ēre, -ui, -tus, teach
dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief
domus, -ūs, f., house, home; **domī**,
 at home (§ 813)
dōnum, -i, n., gift
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain;
sine dubiō, certainly
ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead
dulcis, -e, sweet
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., two
 (§ 824)
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
 twelfth
dux, ducis, m., leader, commander

ē or **ex, prep.** with *abl.*, out of, from,
 off, of
ecce, adv., lo! see! behold! look!
edō, -ere, ēdi, ēsus, eat
Eburōnēs, -um, m. plur., the Ebu-
 rōnes
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead out
effugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, es-
 cape
ego, mei, per. pron., I; *in plur.*, we
ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum, dep. verb.,
 go out, march out; *with nāve*,
 disembark
ēgregius, -a, -um, remarkable, mar-
 velous, distinguished, fine
ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send
 out, send forth
enim, conj., for, *never stands first*
eō, ire, ii (ivi), itūrus, go (§ 842)
epistula, -ae, f., letter

eques, equitis, m., horseman
equester, -tris, -tre, of cavalry
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry
equus, -i, m., horse
ergō, adv., therefore
ēripiō, -ere, -ripiui, -reptus, snatch
 away, rescue
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally
et, conj., and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus, burst
 out, make a sally
etiam, adv., *standing before the*
emphatic word even, also
Etrūsci, -ōrum, m. plur., the Etrus-
 cans
Eurydicē, -ēs, f. (Greek noun),
 Eurydice
ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call out, sum-
 mon
excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus, go
 out, depart
excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arouse
exemplum, -i, n., example, specimen
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, go forth (§ 842)
exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, train
exercitus, -ūs, m., army
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think,
 consider
expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive
 out, expel
expiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, atone for
explōrātor, -ōris, m., spy, scout
expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, take by
 storm, capture; *distinguish from*
oppūgnō, assault
expectātus, -a, -um, expected, ap-
 pointed
expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, await, ex-
 pect, wait for

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story

faciēs, **faciēs**, *f.*, beauty

facile, *adv.*, easily

facilis, -e, easy (§ 820)

faciō, -ere, **fēci**, **factus**, make, do, form, cause; **proelium facere**, fight a battle; **aliquem certiōrem facere**, inform someone; **cōpiam facere**, give an opportunity

factum, -i, *n.*, deed, act

fāma, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report, reputation, fame

famēs, -is (-ium), *f.*, hunger

faveō, -ēre, **fāvi**, **fautūrus**, be favorable to, favor, *with dat.*

Februārius, -a, -um, of February

ferē, *adv.*, nearly, almost, about

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, bear, carry; **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, *with acc. and inf.*, be annoyed; **subsidiū ferre**, go to the rescue (§ 841)

fidēs, **fidēi**, *f.*, good faith, protection; **fidēs publica**, the promise given by the state

filia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. plur. filiabus*), daughter

filius, **fili**, *m.*, son (§ 806.2)

filum, -i, *n.*, string

finis, -is (-ium), *m.*, end, limit; *in the plur.*, territory, country

finitimī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, neighbors

finitimus, -a, -um, adjoining, neighboring

fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *used as the passive of faciō*, be done, be made, happen; **certiō fieri**, be informed (§ 843)

firmus, -a, -um, strong, trusty, loyal

flagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, burn, be on fire; glow, be stirred

Flāminius, -a, -um, Flaminian

flūmen, **flūminis**, *n.*, river

fluō, -ere, **fluxi**, **fluxūrus**, flow

fortasse, perhaps, possibly

fortis, -e, brave, courageous, strong

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, circumstances

fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch

frāter, **frātris**, *m.*, brother

frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *dep. verb.*, gather grain

frūmentum, -i, *n.*, grain

frustrā, *adv.*, in vain

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; *in fugam dare*, put to flight; *in fugam sēsē dare*, flee

fugiō, -ere, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus**, flee, run

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (modern France)

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic

Gallus, -i, *m.*, Gaul

Garumna, -ae, *m.*, the Garonne

gaudeō, -ēre, **gāvīsus sum**, *semi-dep. verb.*, rejoice

gaudium, **gaudi**, *n.*, joy, gladness

gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, groan

Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva

generōsus, -a, -um, honorable, noble

gēns, **gentis** (-ium), *f.*, tribe, nation

genus, -eris, *n.*, race, tribe; kind, method

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany

Germānus, -i, *m.*, a German

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, wage, carry on, wear, have; bear, wear; *rēs gestae*, exploits

glōria, -ae, f., glory, praise, thirst for glory

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus, -i, m.**, a Greek

grātia, -ae, f., influence, favor, thanks; *grātiās agere, with dat.*, thank

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing

gravis, -e, heavy; severe; weighty, serious

graviter, adv., heavily; **graviter ferre**, bear ill, take ill

habēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, have

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, live

hāctenus, adv., thus far

Haedui, -ōrum, m., the Haedui

harēna, -ae, f., sand

Hellēspontus, -i, m., the Hellespont

Helvetii, -ōrum, m. plur., the Helvetii

hercle, interj., by Hercules, assuredly, indeed

Hērō, -ūs, f. (*Greek noun*), Hero

hērōs, -ōis, m. (*Greek noun*), hero

heu! interj. of grief or pain, oh! ah! alas! followed by the acc. of exclamation

hiberna, -ōrum, m. plur., winter quarters

hic, haec, hoc, demon. adj. and pron., this; as *per. pron.*, he, she, it (§ 828)

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pass the winter

hiems, hiemis, f., winter

hodiē, adv., today

homō, -inis, m. and f., human being, man (§ 813)

Horātius, Horāti, m., Horatius

hōra, -ae, f., hour

hortor, -āri, hortātus sum, dep. verb, urge, encourage

hospes, -itis, m., stranger

hostis, hostis (-ium), m., enemy (*in war*)

humerus, -i, m., shoulder

iacō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl

iam, adv., already, immediately; presently, soon, now

Iānuārius, -a, -um, of January

ibi, adv., there, in that place

idem, eadem, idem, demon. adj. and pron., same (§ 828)

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fitting

ignis, -is (-ium), m., fire

ille, illa, illud, demon. adj. and pron., that; as *per. pron.*, he, she, it (§ 828)

immineō, -ēre, —, —, threaten; be at hand

impedimentum, -i, n., hindrance; *plur.* baggage; **magnum numerum impedimentōrum**, a very long baggage train

impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, hinder, obstruct, prevent

imperātor, -ōris, m., general

imperitus, -a, -um, unskilled, inexperienced, *with gen.*

imperium, imperi, n., command, supreme power, realm

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, command, *with dat. and a subj. clause*

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack; **facere impetum in**, make an attack upon
improbus, -a, -um, evil
imprōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly
imprōvisus, -a, -um, unforeseen, unexpected
in, *prep.* with *acc.*, into, against, to; *in*, *prep.* with *abl.*, in, on; among
incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, set on fire, burn
incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, begin
incitātus, -a, -um, aroused
incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten, arouse
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
incolō, -ere, -uī, —, *trans.* with *acc.*, inhabit; also *intrans.*, dwell
incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible, extraordinary
incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, rebuke, chide
inducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead in or against
induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, put on
industrius, -a, -um, diligent
ineō, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itus, enter upon; **initā aestate**, at the beginning of summer (§ 842)
infelix, -icis, unfortunate, ill-fated
inferi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, shades, lower world
inferior, -ius, inferior (§ 820)
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; bring in, inflict; **spem inferre**, with *dat.*, inspire hope (§ 841)
ingēns, -entis, huge
ingredior, **ingredi**, **ingressus sum**, *dep. verb.* proceed, advance, march; enter

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (*in* + *iaciō*), thrust
inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile
iniquus, -a, -um, uneven, unequal; unfavorable, hostile; steep, dangerous
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury; **iniūriās alicui inferre**, inflict injuries on someone
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, need, scarcity
inquit, said he, said she; **inquunt**, said they. *Inserted in a direct quotation*
institūtum, -ī, *n.*, custom
instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, draw up, arrange
insula, -ae, *f.*, island
integer, **integra**, **integrum**, whole, fresh, pure; unharmed
intellegō, **intellegere**, **intellēxi**, **intellēctus**, understand
intentus, -a, -um, attentive, eager
inter, *prep.* with *acc.*, between, among
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come between, intervene
interclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsus, cut off, block up
interdiū, *adv.*, during the day, by day
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put out of the way, kill
interfluō, -ere, —, —, flow between
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meanwhile
intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, leave off, discontinue, stop, cease, omit
interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put between, interpose

intersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be between (§ 838)

intrā, prep. with *acc.*, within, in, into

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter

intus, adv., within

inūsītātus, -a, -um, unusual, extraordinary

inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, find, come upon

invidia, -ae, f., envy, jealousy

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite

invitus, -a, -um, against the will; **sē invitō**, against his will

iō, interj. (*expressing joy*), hurra! common in the phrase **iō triumphe**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intens. adj. and pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; very (§ 827)

is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron., this, that; he, she, it (§ 828)

iste, ista, istud, dem. adj. and pron., that; he, she, it (§ 828)

ita, adv., thus, so

Italia, -ae, f., Italy

itaque, conj., and so, therefore

iter, itineris, n., journey, march, route; **iter dare**, give a right of way; **iter facere**, march; **iter magnum**, forced march; **itinere prohibēre**, keep from passing; **itinere conversō**, changing their course (§ 813)

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus, command, order, with *acc. and infin.*

iūdicium, iūdicī, n., judgment, trial

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, judge, decide

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., Juno

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter

iūs, iūris, n. (*plur. only nom. and acc. iūra*), law, right

iuvenis, -is, young; *as subst.*, **iuvenis, -is (-ium), m. or f.**, youth

labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, toil; suffer

labyrinthus, -ī, m., labyrinth

laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, attack, assail,

lacrima, -ae, f., tear

laetus, -a, -um, glad

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise

laus, laudis, f., praise

lavō, -ere, -āvī, lautus or lōtus, wash

Lēander, -drī, m., Leander

lēgātus, -ī, m., ambassador; lieutenant

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion

legō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, read

leō, -ōnis, m., lion

Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia

levis, -e, light, trivial, fickle

lēx, -lēgis, f., law

libenter, adv., willingly, gladly

liber, librī, m., book

liber, libera, liberum, free

liberī, liberōrum, m. plur., children

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set free

libertās, -ātis, f., freedom, liberty

licitor, licitoris, m., lictor

ligneus, -a, -um, wooden

ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind

lingua, -ae, f., language, tongue

litterae, -arum, f. plur., letter

lītus, -oris, n., shore, beach

Livia, -ae, f., Livia

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, put, set

locus, -ī, m. (plur. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, spot

longē, *adv.*, far away, distant
longus, -a, -um, long
lucerna, -ae, *f.*, lamp
lūdus, -i, *m.*, elementary school
lupa, -ae, *f.*, wolf
lūx, **lūcis**, *f.*, light; **prima lūx**, day-light
lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury

magis, *adv.* (*in comp. degree*), more (§ 822)

magister, -tri, *m.*, teacher

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*, size, greatness

magnoperē, *adv.*, greatly (§ 822)

magnus, -a, -um, great, large (§ 820)

maior, **maius** (*gen. -ōris*), *adj.* (*comp.* of **magnus**, compared **magnus**, **maior**, **maximus**), greater, larger (§ 820)

mālō, **mälle**, **mālui**, —, *irreg. verb.*, prefer (§ 840)

malus, -a, -um, evil, bad (§ 820)

manēō, -ēre, **mānsi**, **mānsūrus**, remain, abide, stay

Mānlius, **Mānli**, *m.*, Manlius

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; group, force; **manūs cōnserere**, join in a hand to hand struggle

Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus

mare, -is (-ium), *n.*, sea

Marius, **Marī**, *m.*, Marius

Mārs, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars

Mārtius, -a, -um, of March

māter, **mātris**, *f.*, mother

mātrimōnium, -ōni, *n.*, marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry; in **mātrimōnium dare**, give in marriage

Mātrona, -ae, *m.*, the Marne

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten

maximē, *adv.* (*in superl. degree, compared magnoperē, magis, maximē*), most of all, especially (§ 822)

maximus, -a, -um (*superl. of magnus, compared magnus, maior, maximus*), greatest, extreme (§ 820)

medius, -a, -um, middle, middle part of

melior, -ius (*gen. -ōris*), *adj.* (*comp. of bonus, compared bonus, melior, optimus*), better (§ 820)

melius, *adv.* (*in comp. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē*), better (§ 822)

memorābilis, -e, noteworthy, memorable

memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory; **habēre in memoriā**, remember; **memoriā tenēre**, remember; **memoriam dēponere**, forget

mēns, **mentis** (-ium), *f.*, mind

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table

mēnsis, -is (-ium), *m.*, month

Metellus, -i, *m.*, Metellus

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. and pron.*, my, mine

Midās, -ae, *m.* (*Greek noun*), Midas

miles, **militis**, *m.*, soldier

militāris, -e, military; **rēs militāris**, art of war; **aetās militāris**, age of military service

militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, serve as a soldier

mille (*plur. milia, -ium*), *num. adj. and subst.*, thousand (§ 820)

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva

minimē, *adv.*, not at all, least of all (§ 822)

minimus, -a, -um (*superl. of parvus, compared parvus, minor, minimus*), least, smallest (§ 820)

minor, minus (*gen. -ōris*) (*comp. of parvus, compared parvus, minor, minimus*), smaller, less (§ 820)

Minōs, -ōis, *m.* (*Greek noun*), Minos

Minōtaurus, -i, *m.*, the Minotaur

miser, misera, miserum, wretched

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send

modus, -i, *m.*, measure; manner

molestē, *adv.*, ill, with trouble;

molestē ferre, bear ill, be vexed

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise; warn

mōns, montis (-ium), *m.*, mountain

mōnstrum, -i, *n.*, monster

mōra, -ae, *f.*, delay

moriōr, mori, mortuus sum, *dep.*

verb., die

mors, mortis (-ium), *f.*, death

moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, move

mox, *adv.*, soon, presently

Mūcius, Mūci, *m.*, Mucius

mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman

multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, crowd, throng, multitude

multus, -a, -um, much, many; **multā nocte**, late at night (§ 820)

mūniō, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itus, fortify

mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification

mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, change

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *dep. verb.*, find, light upon

nam, *conj.*, for

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tell

nāscor, nāsci, natus sum, *dep. verb.*, be born; rise

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor

nāvigium, nāvigi, *n.*, boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sail

nāvis, -is (-ium), *f.*, ship

nē, *conj. and adv.*, in order that not, lest; not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even

-ne, *interrog. adv.*, *enclitic*

nec or neque, *conj.*, and not, nor;

nec (neque) . . . nec (neque),

neither . . . nor

neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, disregard, neglect

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deny, say not

negōtium, negōti, *n.*, business, affair,

matter; **negōtium dare**, give a

commission, employ

nēmo (*gen. nūllius, dat. nēmīni,*

acc. nēminem, abl. nūllō), *m. and*

f., no one

Neptūnus, -i, *m.*, Neptune

Nervii, -iōrum, *m. plur.*, the Nervii

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*),

neither (*of two*) (§ 502)

nihil, *n. indecl.*, nothing. *An abl.*

nihilō, *from a nom. nihilum, occurs*

as an abl. of degree of difference;

nihil posse, have no power

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless

nōbilis, -e, well known, famous, noble

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, injure, *with*

dat.

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um, of the night,

nightly, by night

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *irreg. verb.*,

be unwilling (§ 840)

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name; **nōmen dare**,

enlist

nōn, *neg. adv.*, not
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
nōn-ne, *interrog. adv.* (*suggesting an affirmative answer*), not?
nōnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, ninth
nōs, *per. pron.*, we (*see ego*)
nōscō, -ere, **nōvi**, **nōtus**, come to know; *in perf. tenses*, know
noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj. and pron.*, our, ours. *Plur.* **nostrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, our men [*famous*]
nōtus, -a, -um, known, well known,
novem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine
November, -bris, -bre, of November
novus, -a, -um, new, fresh
nox, **noctis** (-ium), *f.*, night; **primā nocte**, at nightfall; **multā nocte**, late at night
nūllus, -a, -um (*gen.* -ius, *dat.* -ī), none, no (§ 503)
num, *interrog. adv.*, *suggesting a negative answer; in indirect questions*, whether
numerus, -i, *m.*, number; **numerus impedimentōrum**, quantity of baggage, long baggage train
Numitor, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor
numquam, *adv.*, never
nunc, *adv.*, now, the present time
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, announce
nympha, -ae, *f.*, nymph

Ō, *interj.*, O! ah!

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I pray, I beseech you; *as exclamation*, in heaven's name
obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, possess, keep, gain, hold

occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, 'going down, setting; sub **occāsum sōlis**, just at sunset, just before sunset
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisus, kill
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, seize; *in opere occupārī*, be engaged or employed on the works or fortifications
octāvus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, eighth
octō, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight
Octōber, -bris, -bre, of October
Octōdūrus, -i, *m.*, Octodurus
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye
officium, **offici**, *n.*, duty, service
olim, *adv.*, once upon a time, once
omittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, let go by; **cōnsilium omittēre**, leave a plan untried
omniū, *adv.*, in all, altogether; but, just
omnis, -e, all, every
opera, -ae, *f.*, labor, work; **operam dare**, give attention
opiniō, -ōnis, *f.*, supposition, opinion
oportet, -ēre, **oportuit**, it is fitting, is necessary; *an impers. verb, often used with an infin. and subj. acc.*
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town
oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, attack, assault
optimē, *adv.* (*in superl. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē*), best; well done (§ 822)
optimus, -a, -um (*superl. of bonus, compared bonus, melior, optimus*), best, most excellent (§ 820)
optiō, **optiōnis**, *m.*, aide-de-camp
opus, **operis**, *n.*, work; fortifications, works

ōra, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast
 ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*, oracle
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration;
 ōrātiōnem habēre, make a speech
 ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, rank; class, order
 Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus
 ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, show, display
 ōstium, ōstī, *n.*, door
 ovis, -is, *f.*, sleep

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, subdue, pacify
 paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost
 pallidus, -a, -um, pale
 pār, pāris, equal
 parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus, spare,
 with dat.

pārēō, -ēre, -uī, —, obey, *with dat.*
 parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, prepare
 pars, partis (-ium), *f.*, part, share;
 side, direction; ex omnibus parti-
 bus, on all sides
 partior, partiri, partitus sum, *dep.*
 verb., share

parvus, -a, -um (*compared parvus*,
 minor, minimus), small, little (§ 820)
 passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; mille
 passūs, a thousand paces, a mile
 pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd
 pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, lie open,
 extend, stretch

pater, patris, *m.*, father
 patior, pati, passus sum, *dep. verb.*,
 suffer, allow, permit

patria, -ae, *f.*, native land
 pauci, -ae, -a, few, only a few
 paulisper, *adv.*, a little while
 paulō, *adv.*, by a little, little
 paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat
 pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace

pectus, -oris, *n.*, heart
 pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money
 pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle
 pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier; peditēs,
 infantry
 pedester, -tris, -tre, on foot; *with*
 cōpiae, infantry
 peior, peius (*gen.* -ōris), *adj.* (*in*
 comp. degree, compared malus,
 peior, pessimus), worse (§ 820)
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive,
 banish; defeat
 per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by
 perditio, -ōnis, *f.*, destruction
 perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead
 through, bring; construct
 pereō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itūrus, be
 lost, perish
 perficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, finish
 perfringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus,
 break through
 periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger
 peritus, -a, -um, skilled, experi-
 enced, *with gen.*
 permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus,
 last, endure, continue
 permovere, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move
 deeply, arouse, influence
 peropportunē, *adv.*, most oppor-
 tunely
 perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, force
 a way through, break in
 Perseus, -ī, *m.*, Perseus
 perspicio, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, ob-
 serve, learn, discover
 persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, per-
 suade, *with dat.*
 perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, terrify,
 alarm

pertineō, -ēre, -ui, —, reach, extend, pertain

pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, arrive, *with ad or in and acc.*

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot

pessimus, -a, -um, *adj. (in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus)*, worst (§ 820)

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itus, seek, ask, beg; make for, attack

pictūra, -ae, *f.*, picture

pīlus, -i, *m.*, company of veteran reserves; **prīmus pīlus**, chief centurion of a legion

plānus, -a, -um, flat, level, even

plēnus, -a, -um, full

plūrimum, *adv. (in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrimum)*, very much, most; *with posse*, be most powerful

plūrimus, -a, -um (*superl. of multus, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus*), most, very many (§ 820)

plūs (*gen. plūris*), *adj. (in comp. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus)*; *sing. n. as subst.*, more; *plur.*, more, many, several (§§ 819, 820)

Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pluto

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment; **poenam dare**, suffer punishment, pay a penalty

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet

pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place, set, build; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp; **positus**, -a, -um, *past part.*, situated

pōns, pontis (-ium), *m.*, bridge

populus, -i, *m.*, people

porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectus, extend

Porsenna, -ae, *m.*, Porsenna

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, carry

possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can; **nihil posse**, have no power (§ 839)

post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind
postea, *adv.*, thereafter, afterwards, hereafter, after this

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, demand, require

potentia, -ae, *f.*, power

potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power

praebeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, offer, present
praeceđō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, surpass

praeceptum, -i, *n.*, instruction, order

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder

praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, set over, place in command, *with acc. and dat.*

praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send ahead, send forward

praemium, **praemi**, *n.*, prize, reward

praesertim, *adv.*, especially

praesidium, **praesidi**, *n.*, garrison, guard; **praesidiō civitatī esse**, be a defense to the state

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be before, be over, be in command, *with dat.* (§ 838)

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, except

praeterea, *adv.*, furthermore, besides
praetōrium, **praetōri**, *n.*, general's tent

premō, -ere, **pressi**, **pressus**, press hard; harass

primō, *adv.*, at first (*as opposed to afterwards*); in the beginning (*referring to time*)

primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place
(referring to order)

primus, -a, -um, *adj.* (in *superl. degree*), first (§ 820)

princeps, -ipis, *m.*, chief, leader

prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, in behalf of; rarely in front of

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go forward, advance

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, proconsul, governor (of a province)

prōcōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, proconsulship, governorship

prōcurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursurus, run forward, charge

prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, go forth; betray [forward]

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead proelium, proeli, *n.*, battle; proelium

facere, engage in battle; proelium committere, join battle

prōfectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure

prōficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, *dep. verb.* set out

prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, hinder, prevent, keep away from

prōiciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectus (prō + iaciō), throw forward; sē prōicere, leap

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near; *adv.*, near; *comp.* propius, *superl.* proximē (§ 822)

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten

prophēta, -ae, *m.*, prophet

prōpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, set forth, offer; with vēxillum, hang out, display

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; near, next to, close to

Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*, Proserpina

prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus, look out for, foresee

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province

prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, fly forth; rush forth

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.* (in *superl. degree*), nearest, very near, next; last (§ 820)

pūblicus, -a, -um, public, official

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl

puer, **pueri**, *m.*, boy; **ā pueris**, from boyhood

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, pretty, beautiful

pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, knock

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think, reckon

Q., abbreviation for Quintus

quaerō, -ere, **quaesivi**, **quaesitus**, seek for, ask, inquire for

quam, *adv.*, how; *conj. after a comp.*, than; *with a superl.*, as . . . as possible

quandō, *interrog. adv.*, when?

quārtus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourth

quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four

-que, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and

quia, *conj.*, because

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron. and adj.*, who, which, what, that (§ 829)

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *adj.*, *pron.*, whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever

quidam, **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*, a certain one (§ 831)

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *indef. adj.*, a certain (§ 831)

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, in fact; *never stands first*; **nē** . . . **quidem**, not even (*the emphatic word standing between*)

quindecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen

quinque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five

Quintus, *-ī, m.*, Quintus

quintus, *-a, -um, num. adj.*, fifth

quis (**quī**), **quae**, **quid** (**quod**), *interrog. pron. and adj.*, who? what? which? (§ 830)

quis (**quī**), **qua** (**quae**), **quid** (**quod**), *indef. pron. and adj. used after sī, nisi, nē, num.*, anyone, anything, someone, something, any, some (§ 831)

quisque, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one (§ 831)

quisque, **quaque**, **quodque**, *indef. adj.*, each (§ 831)

quō, *interrog. adv. with verbs of motion*, whither

quod, *conj.*, because; that

quō modo, *adv.*, how

quotannis, *adv.*, every year, yearly

rapiō, *-ere, -uī, -tus*, seize

rāpulum, *-ī, n.*, young turnip

ratio, *-ōnis, f.*, method, arrangement, plan

recipiō, *-ere, -cēpī, -ceptus*, take back, receive; *with sē*, withdraw, retreat, betake one's self

recūsō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, refuse, reject

reddō, *-ere, reddidī, redditus*, give back, return

reducō, *-ere, -dūxī, -ductus*, lead back

referō, *-ferre, -ttulī, -lātus*, bring back, return; **pedem referre**, retreat (§ 841)

rēgina, *-ae, f.*, queen

rēgnum, *-ī, n.*, realm, kingdom; sovereignty

regō, *-ere, rēxī, rēctus*, rule, guide
relanguēscō, *-ere, -langui, —*, be weakened, be relaxed

relinquō, *-ere, -liquī, -lictus*, leave, leave behind, desert

reliquus, *-a, -um*, the rest, remaining, remainder of, the other, other

remittō, *-ere, -misi, -missus*, send back; pardon, forgive

remōtus, *-a, -um*, far away, distant

Remus, *-ī, m.*, Remus

repellō, *-ere, -ppulī, -pulsus*, repulse, repel

repentinus, *-a, -um*, sudden

rēs, *rei, f.*, thing, matter, affair; **rēs frumentāria**, grain supplies; **rēs gestae**, exploits; **rēs militāris**, art of war; **rēs pūblica**, commonwealth, republic, state; **novis rēbus studēre**, be eager for a revolution; **rēs est in periculō**, the situation is critical
resistō, *-ere, -stitī, —*, resist, *with dat.*

respondeō, *-ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus*, reply

retineō, *-ēre, -tinuī, -tentus*, hold back, retain

revertō, *-ere, -vertī, —*, or *deponent*, revertor, *-ī, -versus sum*, turn back, return

revocō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, call back, recall

rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king

Rhea, -ae, *f.*, Rhea
Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine
Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone
rideō, -ēre, **risi**, **risus**, laugh
ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank
rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ask, request
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; *as a noun in the masc. or fem.*, a Roman
Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus
rudimentum, -ī, *n.*, beginning, commencement; **prīma castrōrum rudimenta**, first principles of military service
rūrsus, *adv.*, again
rūs, **rūris**, *n.* (*plur. only nom. and acc.*, **rūra**), country; **rūrī**, in the country
rūsticus, -a, -um, of the country, rustic

Sabini, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sabines
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred
sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.*, priest or priestess
saeculum, -ī, *n.*, age; in **saecula**, forever
saepe, *adv.*, often
saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage, cruel
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety; **salūtem dicere**, send greeting
salvē, *imper.*, hail, greetings
Samnitēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the Samnites
sānctificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hallow
sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom
satis, *indecl. adj.*; also used as a *neut. n. and as an adv.*, enough, sufficient; sufficiently

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock
Scaevola, -ae, *m.*, Scaevola
sciō, **scire**, **scīvi**, **scītus**, know
scribō, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptus**, write
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield
secundus, -a, -um, following, next, second
sed, *conj.*, but
sedeō, -ēre, **sēdi**, **sessurus**, sit; be settled, be established
semper, *adv.*, ever, always
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate
sentiō, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, feel, perceive
sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, separate
septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven
September, -bris, -bre, of September
septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, seventh
Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the Seine
Sēquani, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sequani
sequor, **sequi**, **secūtus sum**, *dep. verb*, follow
servātor, -ōris, *m.*, deliverer, preserver, savior
servitūs, **servitūtis**, *f.*, slavery
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave
Sēstus, -ī, *f.*, Sestos
sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six
Sextus, -ī, *m.*, Sextus
sextus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, sixth
sī, *conj.*, if
sic, *adv.*, thus, in this way, so
Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily
sicut, just as
signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; standard, ensign
silentium, **silenti**, *n.*, silence

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest
Silvia, -ae, *f.*, Silvia
similis, -e, similar, like (§ 820)
simul, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul**
atque, conj., as soon as
simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, pretend
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
singulī, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*
adj., one at a time; **inter singulās**
legiōnēs, between every two legions
sinister, -tra, -trum, left
societās, -ātis, *f.*, partnership, alliance
socius, **soci**, *m.*, ally, companion
sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, the sun
solidus, -a, -um, solid
sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*, care, anxiety
solum, *adv.*, only; **nōn solum** . . .
sed etiam, not only . . . but also
solus, -a, -um (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*),
 alone (§ 502)
solvō, -ere, **solvī**, **solūtus**, loose;
(of navigation) set sail
somnus, -i, *m.*, sleep
sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise, sound
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister
spatiōsus, -a, -um, broad
spatium, **spati**, *n.*, space, distance,
 interval, time
speciēs, -iēi, *f.*, appearance
spectāculum, -i, *n.*, spectacle, game
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hope
spēs, **spei**, *f.*, hope; **spem inferre**,
 inspire hope, *with dat.*
statim, *adv.*, at once, instantly, im-
 mediately
statiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a post, a picket; **in**
statiōne, on guard
stō, -āre, **steti**, **statūrus**, stand

studeō, -ēre, -ui, —, be eager;
 study, *with dat.*; **novis rēlus**
studēre, to be eager for a revolution
stultus, -a, -um, foolish
sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under
 beneath, underneath
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly
subsellium, -sellī, *n.*, bench
subsidiū, -sidi, *n.*, assistance, re-
 enforcement; **subsidiū ferre**, go
 to the rescue
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus,
 come up, advance
sui, *gen.*, of (himself, herself, itself,
 themselves); **in fugam sēsē dare**,
 flee; **inter sē**, to each other *or*
 from each other
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, am (§ 838)
summus, -a, -um (*superl. of superus*,
compared superus, superior, su-
 prēmus *or* summus), highest,
 supreme, greatest, most violent;
summus mōns, the top of the
 mountain; **summus collis**, the top
 of the hill (§ 820)
sūmō, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, take
 up, assume; **sūmere supplicium**
dē, inflict punishment on
superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride
superior, -ius (*gen. -ōris*), *comp. of*
superus (§ 820)
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overcome,
 conquer; surpass; go over, ascend
superus, -a, -um, higher, upper
 (§ 820)
supplicium, **supplici**, *n.*, punish-
 ment, torture; **supplicium sūmere**
dē, inflict punishment on; **suppli-**
cium dare, suffer punishment

surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctus, rise, get up

suscipio, -ere, cēpi, -ceptus, under-take, assume

suscitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arouse, awaken

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, hold up, maintain; endure, withstand;
sē sustinēre, stand up

suus, -a, -um, reflex. poss. adj. and pron., his, her, hers, its, their, theirs

tabella, -ae, f., writing tablet

tabernāculum, -i, n., tent

tabula, -ae, f., map

taceō, -ēre, -cui, -citus, be silent

tālis, -e, such

tam, adv., so, such

tamen, conj., nevertheless

tandem, adv., pray, pray now, now

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus, touch

tantum, adv., only

tantus, -a, -um, so great

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, check

tardus, -a, -um, slow, dull, stupid;
backward, reluctant

tēlum, -i, n., weapon, missile, spear

tempestās, -ātis, f., storm; weather

templum, -i, n., temple

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, attempt

tempus, -oris, n., time, season; in
reliquum tempus, for the future

teneō, -ēre, tenui, —, hold, keep,
retain; **vestigia tenēre**, keep footing

tentātiō, -ōnis, f., temptation, trial

tergum, -i, n., back

terra, -ae, f., earth, land

terribilis, -e, dreadful, terrible

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, frighten, terrify

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third

Thēseus, -i, m., Theseus

Tiberis, -eris, m., the Tiber

timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, fear

timidus, -a, -um, fearful, cowardly

timor, -ōris, m., fear

toga, -ae, f., toga

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, endure

tot, indecl. adj., so many

tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), all,
whole, entire (§ 502)

trādō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give over,
surrender; pass along

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead
across

trānō, -āre, -āvi, —, swim across

trāns, prep. with acc., across

trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go across, cross

trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum,
dep. verb. cross

trēs, tria, num. adj., three (§ 820)

tribūnus, -i, m., tribune

trigeminus, -a, -um, triplet

tū, tuī, per. pron., thou, you

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet

tum, adv., then, at that time

tunicātus, -a, -um, dressed in a tunic

turbidus, -a, -um, stormy

turris, -is (-ium; abl. turri or turre),
f., tower

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron.,
your, yours

ubi, interrog. adv. with verbs of
rest, where (§ 502)

ūllus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), any

umquam, adv., ever

unde, adv., whence

ūndecim, indecl. num. adj., eleven

undecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
eleventh

undique, adv., on all sides

universus, -a, -um, all together, all

unus, -a, -um (gen. ius, dat. -ī),
num. adj., one; alone (§ 815)

urbs, urbis (-ium), f., city [hard

urgeo, -ēre, ursi, —, press, press

usque, adv., even, even till

ut, conj. with subjv., that, in order
that, so that, to; *with indic.,* as

uter, utra, utrum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī),
which? (*of two*) (§ 502)

utrimque, adv., on both sides, from
each side

vadium, -i, n., shallow place, ford

vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb.,
roam, wander

valē, imper., good-by

valeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, be well, be in
health, be powerful

valētūdō, -inis, f., state of health,
health [camp]

vallum, -i, n., rampart, wall (of a

vastō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste,
devastate, destroy

vātēs, -is (-ium), m. and f., bard,
inspired singer [much]

vehementer, adv., strongly, very

vehō, -ere, vexi, vectus, carry

venia, -ae, f., favor

veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus, come

Venus, -eris, f., Venus

verbum, -i, n., word

vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, dep. verb.,
fear, respect

vērō, adv., in truth, verily, but

vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn

vērus, -a, -um, true, genuine; vērum
dicere, tell the truth

vesper, -eri, m., evening

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and
pron., your, yours

vestigium, vestigi, n., step; vestigia
tenēre, keep footing

vetō, -āre, -ui, -itus, forbid

vēxillum, -i, n., flag

via, -ae, f., way, road

victōria, -ae, f., victory

videō, -ēre, vidi, visus, see

vigilia, -ae, f., watching; watch (of
the night)

viginti, indecl. num. adj., twenty

villa, -ae, farm, villa, country seat,
farmhouse

vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer

vinculum, -i, n., rope, cord, fetter

vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, claim

vīnum, -i, n., wine

vir, viri, m., man

virga, -ae, f., rod

virgō, -inis, f., maiden

virtūs, virtūtis, f., manliness; cour-
age, valor; worth, virtue (§ 813)

vis, (vis), f., strength, power, violence

vita, -ae, f., life

vix, adv., with difficulty, scarcely

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call

volō, velle, volui, —, irreg. verb.,
wish (§ 840)

volūmen, -inis, n., roll

voluntās, -ātis, f., will

vōx, vōcis, f., voice; word; magna

vōx, a loud voice

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wound

vulnus, -eris, n., wound

vultus, -ūs, m., looks, expression; face

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

a, an, *commonly not translated*
abandon, relinquō, 3
able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —
 (§ 839)
about, *prep.*, dē, *with abl.*
about to, *expressed by fut. act. part.*
absent (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus (§ 838)
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
abundant, amplus, -a, -um
accept, accipiō, 3
according to, *expressed by abl.*
across, trāns, *with acc.*
advance, prōcēdō, 3
advise, moneō, 2
after, *prep.*, post, *with acc.*
after, *conj.*, postquam; *often expressed by past part.*
afterwards, postea
against, in, *with acc.*
aid, auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*
alarm, commoveō, 2
alarmed, commōtus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 502)
ally, socius, soci, *m.*
alone, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um (§ 502)
already, iam
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
among, apud, *with acc.*
ample, amplus, -a, -um
and, et, atque (ac), -que

and so, itaque
Andromeda, Andromeda, -ae, *f.*
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō, 1
annoy, molestē ferō
another, alius, -a, -ud (§ 502)
any, ūllus, -a, -um (§ 502)
approach, appropinquō, 1, *with dat.*
approach, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
are, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as copula*, sum (§ 838)
are of, sum, *with pred. gen.* (*cf. belong to*)
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, 4
art of war, rēs militāris
ask, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
assault, oppugnō, 1
assemble, conveniō, 4
assistance, auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*
at, in, *with acc. or abl.*; *with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition* (§ 484); *time when or within which, abl.*
at once, statim
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*
attack, *v.*, oppugnō, 1
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*; **make an attack upon**, impetum faciō in, *with acc.*

attempt, temptō, 1

attentively, diligenter

authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*

away (be), absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)

bad, malus, -a, -um (§ 456)

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

battle, proelium, proeli, *n.*

be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus (§ 838)

be absent, **be far**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)

be afraid, timeō, 2; vereor, 2

be away, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)

be in command of, praesum, -essē, -fui, -futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)

be informed, certior fiō (§ 843)

be off, **be distant**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 841)

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

because, quod, *conj.*; **because** (of), *abl. of cause or propter with acc.*

become, fiō, fierī, factus sum (§ 843)

been, *expressed in verb form*

before, heretofore, *adv.*, antea

before, *prep.*, ante, *with acc.*

beg, **beg for**, petō, 3

begin, incipiō, 3

believe, crēdō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 224)

belong to, *see are of*

benefit, beneficium, benefici, *n.*

best, optimus, *superl. of bonus*

better, melior, *comp. of bonus*

between, inter, *with acc.*

boat, nāvigium, nāvi'gī, *n.*; nāvis, -is, *f.*

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

book, liber, librī, *m.*

both . . . and, et . . . et

bound, contineō, 2

boy, puer, -erī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e

bravely, fortiter

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

bring, **bring to**, adducō, 3

bring upon, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *with acc. and dat.* (§ 841)

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, *m.*

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*

build, pōnō, 3; faciō, 3

burn, incendō, 3

business, negōtium, negō'tī, *n.*

but, however, autem, sed

by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle*

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

call, vocō, 1; appellō, 1

call out, ēvocō, 1

call together, convocō, 1

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

can, could, possum, posse, potuī, — (§ 839)

capital, caput, capitis, *n.*

Capitolium, Capitōlium, Capitō'li, *n.*

captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*

capture, capiō, 3; occupō, 1

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 841); portō, 1

carry on, gerō, 3

cause, *v.*, expressed by *faciō* followed by *ut* and *subjv. clause of result*

cause, *n.*, *causa*, -ae, *f.*

cavalry, *equitātus*, -ūs, *m.*; (of) *cavalry*, *equester*, -tris, -tre

certain (a), *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quiddam*) (§ 831)

certain, *sure*, *certus*, -a, -um

certainly, *certē*

chief, *princeps*, -ipis, *m.*

children, *liberī*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

choose, *dēligō*, 3

choose, *elect*, *creō*, 1

citizen, *cīvis*, -is, *m. and f.* (§ 412. a)

city, *urbs*, *urbis*, *f.*

claim attention, *animum teneō*

climb, *ascendō*, 3

cohort, *cohors*, -rtis, *f.*

collect, *cōgō*, 3

come, *veniō*, 4

command, *imperō*, 1, *with dat.* (§ 224); *iubeō*, 2; *praesum*, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)

commander, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*; *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*

common, *commūnis*, -e

commonwealth, *rēs pūblica*, *reī pūblicae*

compel, *cōgō*, 3

concerning, *dē*, *with abl.*

condition, *condiciō*, -ōnis, *f.*

conquer, *superō*, 1; *vincō*, 3

consider, *existimō*, 1

construct (a ditch), *perducō*, 3; *dūcō*, 3

consul, *cōsul*, *cōsulis*, *m.*

consult, *cōsulō*, 3

Cornelius, *Cornēlius*, *Cornē'li*, *m.*

cottage, *casa*, -ae, *f.*

could, *see can*

country, as distinguished from the city, *rūs*, *rūris*, *n.*; as territory, *fīnēs*, -ium, *m. plur.*

country, *fatherland*, *patria*, -ae, *f.*

country house, *farm*, *villa*, -ae, *f.*

courage, *virtūs*, -ūtis, *f.*

courageous, *fortis*, -e

cowardly, *timidus*, -a, -um

Crete, *Crēta*, -ae, *f.*

cross, *trānseō*, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -itus, 4 (§ 842)

crowd, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*

crowded, *crēber*, -bra, -brum

custom, *cōnsuetūdō*, -inis, *f.*

cut off, *intercludō*, 3

danger, *perīculum*, -ī, *n.*

dare, *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*

daughter, *filia*, -ae, *f.* (§ 70. a)

day, *diēs*, -ēī, *m.*

daybreak, *daylight*, *prima lūx*

death, *mors*, *mortis*, *f.*

deed, *rēs*, *reī*, *f.*; *factum*, -ī, *n.*

deep, *altus*, -a, -um

defend, *dēfendō*, 3

defense, *praesidium*, *praesi'di*, *n.*

demand, *postulō*, 1

Dentatus, *Dentātus*, -ī, *m.*

deny, *negō*, 1

depart, *depart from*, *discēdō*, 3; *exeō*, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -itūrus (§ 842); *excēdō*, 3

desert, *relinquō*, 3

desire, *cupiō*, 3

desirous of, *cupidus*, -a, -um, *with gen.* (§ 554)

different, *dissimilis*, -e

difficult, difficilis, -e (§ 457)
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
diligently, diligenter
display, ostendō, 3
distance, spatium, spatī, *n.*
distant (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfūtūrus (§ 838)
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, agō, 3; faciō, 3; *when used as auxiliary, not translated*
do completely, cōficiō, 3
do harm to, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)
down from, dē, *with abl.*
draw up, instruō, 3
drive, agō, 3
drive out, pellō, 3; expellō, 3
due the state, pūblicus, -a, -um
dull, slow, tardus, -a, -um
duty, officium, offīcī, *n.*
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 831)
each other, inter *with acc. of a reflex. pron.*
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre
eager (be) for, studeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)
easily, facile
easy, facilis, -e
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
elapse (suffer to or let), intermittō, 3
encourage, cōfirmō, 1
enemy, hostis, -is, *m. and f.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
enough, satis, *indecl.*
enroll, cōscribō, 3

entire, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 502)
equal, aequus, -a, -um
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem
evil, malus, -a, -um (§ 456)
example, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
expect, exspectō, 1
expose, committō, 3
extend, pateō, 2; pertineō, 2

fact, rēs, rei, *f.*
faith, fidēs, fideī, *f.*
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, far away, far distant, longē
farm, villa, -ae, *f.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, *adj.*, ulterior, -ius; *adv.*, longius
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*
favor, faveō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)
favor, gratia, -ae, *f.*
favorable, idōneus, -a, -um
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, be afraid, timeō, 2; vereor, 2
few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
fight, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1; **fight a battle**, proelium facio
finally, dēnique
find, invenio, 4
finish, cōficiō, 3
fire, ignis, -is, *m.* (§ 412. a)
first, *adj.*, prīmus, -a, -um
first, *adv.*, *referring to order*, prīmum; *referring to time*, prīmō
fitting (be), oportet, 3

five, quinque
 flee, fugiō, 3
 flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
 follow, sequor, 3
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
 foot soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
 for, *prep.*, *sign of dat.*; dē, prō (*in behalf of*), *with abl.*; *to express purpose*, ad, *with gerundive*; *in expressions of time or space* per may be used, but usually it is implied in *acc. of time and of extent of space*
 for, *conj.*, enim (*postpositive*), nam
 for a long time, diū
 for the future, in reliquum tempus
 forbid, vetō, 1
 force, vīs, (vīs), *f.* (§ 813)
 forces, cōpia, -arum, *f. plur.*
 foresee, prōvideō, 2
 forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
 formerly, antea
 fort, castrum, -ī, *n.*
 fortify, mūniō, 4
 fortify (all) about, circummūniō, 4
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
 four, quattuor
 fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
 free, liber, -era, -erum
 free, liberate, liberō, 1
 frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
 fresh, integer, -gra, -grum
 friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*
 friendly, amicus, -a, -um
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*
 frighten, perterreō, 2
 from, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, *with abl.*
Often expressed by the abl. of separation without a prep.

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
 garrison, praesidium, praesi'di, *n.*
 gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
 Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
 general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
 Germans (the), Germāni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
 give, dō, dare, dedi, datus (§ 161. N.)
 give back, reddō, 3
 give a right of way, iter dō
 go, eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus (§ 842)
 go out, excēdō, 3
 god, deus, -ī, *m.*
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (§ 70. a)
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
 good, bonus, -a, -um (§ 456)
 grain, frumentum, -ī, *n.*
 grain supply, rēs frumentāria
 great, magnus, -a, -um (§ 456)
 greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
 greatly, magnopere
 greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
 grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
 guard, praesidium, praesi'di, *n.*

had, *as auxiliary, expressed in verb form*
 hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 harm, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)
 has, *as auxiliary, expressed in verb form*
 hasten, contendō, 3; properō, 1
 have, habēō, 2; *when auxiliary of perfect, not expressed*

he, is, hic, ille, *or not expressed*

head, caput, -itis, *n.*

hear, audiō, 4

heart, animus, -ī, *m.*

heavy, gravis, -e

height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*

Helvetii (the), Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m.*

plur.

hem in, contineō, 2

her, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

heretofore, antea

herself, suī. *See self*

high, altus, -a, -um

highest, summus, -a, -um

him, *see he*

himself, suī. *See self*

hinder, prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4

hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, *n.*

his, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

hold, teneō, 2; obtineō, 2

hold back, retineō, 2

home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 813); at

home, domī (§ 485)

hope, *v.*, spērō, 1

hope, *n.*, spēs, speī, *f.*

horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um

hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*

how, quam; how far, quam longē;

how long, quam diū

hurl, iaciō, 3; coniciō, 3

I, ego (§ 825), *or not expressed*

if, si; if not, nisi

immediately, statim

in, *of place*, in, *with abl.*; *of time*
or of respect, abl. *without prep.*

in command of (be), praesum, -esse,
-fui, -futurus, *with dat.* (§ 623)

in order that, ut, *with subjv.*; in
order that not, lest, nē, *with*
subjv.

in the presence of, apud, *prep. with*
acc.

in truth, vērō

in vain, frūstrā

industry, diligentia, -ae, *f.*

infantry, *plur. of pedes*, -itis, *m.*

infantry (of), pedester, -tris, -tre

inflict punishment upon, suppli-
cium sūmō dē, *with abl.*

influence, addūcō, 3

inform someone, aliquem certiōrem
faciō

injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)

injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

inquire, quaerō, 3

intend, in animō esse, *with dat.*

into, in, *with acc.*

intrust, committō, 3

is, *used as auxiliary, not trans-*
lated; as copula, sum, esse, fui,
futurus (§ 838)

island, insula, -ae, *f.*

it, is, hic, iste, *or not expressed*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

its, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

itself, suī. *See self*

join together, committō, 3

journey, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 813)

judgment, iudicium, iudici, *n.*

justice, iūs, iūris, *n.*

keep, teneō, 2
keep (in), restrain, contineō, 2
keep (out or from), prohibeō, 2
kill, interficiō, 3; necō, 1
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, cognōscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*;
 sciō, 4
known, nōtus, -a, -um

labor, *v.*, labōrō, 1
labor, *n.*, labor, -ōris, *m.*; opera, -ae, *f.*
lack, *v.*, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dē-
 futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)
lack, *n.*, inopia, -ae, *f.*
lacking (be), dēsum, deesse, dēfui,
 dēfutūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)
lamp, lūcerna, -ae, *f.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay down, lay aside, dēpōnō, 3
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3
lead across, trādūcō, 3
lead away, abdūcō, 3
lead back, redūcō, 3
lead forward, prōdūcō, 3
lead in, conduct, indūcō, 3
lead out, lead forth, ēdūcō, 3
lead through, perdūcō, 3
lead to, addūcō, 3
Leander, Lēander, -dri, *m.*
learn, know (in perf. tenses), cog-
 nōscō, 3
leave, depart from, discēdō, 3
leave behind, abandon, relinquō, 3

leave off, intermittō, 3
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
length, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*
Lesbia, Lesbia, -ae, *f.*
lest, nē, *with subjv.*
liberty, libertās, -ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, levis, -e
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
lightly, leviter
like, *adj.*, similis, -e (§ 457)
like, love, amō, 1
line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*
listen, audiō, 4
little, parvus, -a, -um (§ 456)
little, by a little, paulō
live, habitō, 1; incolō, 3
lofty, altus, -a, -um
long, longus, -a, -um
long, for a long time, diū
look at, spectō, 1
look for, quaerō, 3
look out for, prōvideō, 2
lose, āmittō, 3
love, amō, 1
loyal, firmus, -a, -um

make, faciō, 3 (§ 843)
make a speech, orātiōnem habēō
make war upon, bellum inferō, *with*
dat. (§ 623)
man, homō, -inis, *m. and f.* (§ 813);
 vir, viri, *m.*
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a
march, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 813)
march (to), iter faciō

Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*

Mark, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*

marry, in mātīmōnium dūcō

matter, negōtium, negōtū, *n.*; rēs, rei, *f.*

me, *see* I

means, by means of, *expressed by the abl.*

meanwhile, in the meantime, interim

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

method, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

midst of, medius, -a, -um

mile, mille passūs (§ 536); *plur.*, milia passuum

military, militāris, -e

mind, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*

mine, meus, -a, -um

Minerva, Minerva, -ae, *f.*

Minotaur, Minōtaurus, -ī, *m.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*

more, *adj.*, plūs, plūris (§ 458), or *expressed by a comparative; adv.*, magis

most, *adj.*, plūrimus, -a, -um, or *expressed by a superl.; adv.*, maximē, plūrimum

mother, māter, mātis, *f.*

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, 2

move deeply, commoveō, 2; per-moveō, 2

moved, commōtus, -a, -um; permōtus, -a, -um

much (by), multō

Mucius, Mūcius, Mūci, *m.*

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*

my, meus, -a, -um

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

native land, patria, -ae, *f.*

nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*

near, propinquus, -a, -um

nearest, proximus, -a, -um

necessary (be), oportet, 3

neighbor, finitimus, -ī, *m.*

neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um

neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neutrum (§ 502)

neither, neque or nec; neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)

never, numquam

nevertheless, tamen

new, novus, -a, -um

next, proximus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

nine, novem

no, minimē, or repeat verb with a negative (§ 110)

no, none, nullus, -a, -um (§ 503)

no one, nēmō, nullius

noble, nōbilis, -e

nor, neque or nec

not, nōn

not at all, minimē

not even, nē . . . quidem

nothing, nihil or nihilum, -ī, *n.*

now, nunc, iam

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O, usually expressed by a vocative, occasionally by the interj. Ō

obey, pāreō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)

observe, spectō, 1

of, sign of gen.; dē, with abl.; out of, ē or ex, with abl.

offer, prōpōnō, 3

often, saepe

on, *of place*, in, *with abl.*; *of time*,
abl. without prep.

on account of, *propter*, *with acc.*;
abl. of cause

once (upon a time), *ōlim*

one, *ūnus*, -a, -um (§ 815)

one . . . another, *of several*, *alius . . . alius*; **the one . . . the other**, *of two*, *alter . . . alter* (§ 504)

only, *solum*, *tantum*

only a few, *paucī*, -ae, -a

onto, *see on*

or, *aut*

oration, *orātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*

order, *imperō*, 1; *iubeō*, 2

other, *alius*, -a, -ud (§ 503); **the one . . . the other**, *of two*, *alter . . . alter* (§ 504)

others (the), *reliquī*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

ought, *dēbeō*, 2

our, *noster*, -tra, -trum

out from, *outside of*, *ē* or *ex* *with abl.*

overcome, *superō*, 1; *vincō*, 3

owe, *dēbeō*, 2

own (his, her, its, their), *suus*, -a, -um

pace, *passus*, -ūs, *m.*

pain, *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*

part, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, *f.*

penalty, *poena*, -ae, *f.*; *supplicium*,
supplīcī, *n.*

people, *populus*, -ī, *m.*

perceive, *sentiō*, 4

peril, *periculum*, -ī, *n.*

Perseus, *Perseus*, -ī, *m.*

persuade, *persuādeō*, 2, *with dat.*
(§ 224)

pertain, *pertineō*, 2

place, *n.*, *locus*, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, *loca*,
-ōrum, *n.*

place, *put*, *pōnō*, 3; *locō*, 1

place in command of, *praeficiō*, 3,
with acc. and dat. (§ 623)

plan (a), *cōnsilium*, *cōnsīlī*, *n.*; *ratio*,
-ōnis, *f.*

plead, *dicō*, 3

please, *placeō*, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)

pleasing, *grātus*, -a, -um

plenty, *cōpia*, -ae, *f.*

poet, *poēta*, -ae, *m.*

poor, *miser*, *misera*, *miserum*

possess, *obtimeō*, 2

power, *imperium*, *impe'rī*, *n.*; *po-*
testās, -ātis, *f.*

powerful, **be most powerful**, *plūri-*
imum possum

praise, *laudō*, 1

praise, *laus*, *laudis*, *f.*

prefer, *mālō*, *mälle*, *māluī*, —
(§ 840)

prepare, **prepare for**, *parō*, 1, *with*
acc.

preserve, *servō*, 1; *cōnservō*, 1

press hard, *premō*, 3

pretty, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum

prize, *praemium*, *praemī*, *n.*

protection, *fidēs*, *fideī*, *f.*

provide, *comparō*, 1

public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um

punishment, *poena*, -ae, *f.*; *suppli-*
cium, *supplīcī*, *n.*

purpose, **for the purpose of**, *ut* or
quī, *with subjv.*; *ad*, *with ger-*
und or gerundive; *causā*, *follow-*
ing the genitive of a gerund or
gerundive

put, pōnō, 3; locō, 1
 put down, dēpōnō, 3
 put to death, in mortem dō
 put to flight, in fugam dō

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
 quickly, celeriter
 Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, *m.*

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
 rank, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
 rather, *see wish* rather
 reach, pertineō, 2; pateō, 2
 realm, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
 reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
 receive, accipiō, 3
 remain, manēō, 2; permanēō, 2
 remainder (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m.*
plur.

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um
 remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um
 remember, memoriā teneō
 reply, respondeō, 2
 report, fāma, -ae, *f.*
 republic, rēs publica
 reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
 resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 224)
 respect, vereor, 2
 rest (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 restrain, contineō, 2
 retain, retineō, 2
 return, give back, reddō, 3
 revolution, rēs novae, *f. plur.*
 reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*
 Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
 right, *adj.*, dexter, -tra, -trum
 right, *n.*, iūs, iūris, *n.*; give a right
 of way, iter dō
 river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, via, viae, *f.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *often*
used as a noun
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
 Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
 route, iter, itineris, *n.*
 rule, regō, 3
 rumor, fāma, -ae, *f.*

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum
 safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 sail, nāvigō, 1
 sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
 same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 518)
 satisfaction (give), satis faciō, 3,
with dat.
 satisfactory, satis, *indecl.*
 savage, barbarus, -a, -um
 savages, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 save, servō, 1
 say, dicō, 3; say not, negō, 1
 scarcity, inopia, -ae, *f.*
 school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
 science of war, rēs militaris, *f.*
 scout, explorātor, -ōris, *m.*
 sea, mare, -is, *n.*
 second, secundus, -a, -um
 see, videō, 2
 seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3
 seem, videor, 2, *pass. of* videō
 seize, rapiō, 3; occupō, 1
 self, ipse, -a, -um (§ 517); suī (§ 512)
 senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
 send, mittō, 3
 send ahead or forward, praemittō, 3
 send away, dimittō, 3; āmittō, 3
 send back, remittō, 3
 serious, gravis, -e
 set fire to, incendō, 3

set forth, prōpōnō, 3
settle, sedēō, 2
seven, septem
seventh, septimus, -a, -um
several, plūres, plūra
severe, gravis, -e
severely, graviter
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*
shall, *expressed by future tense*
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre [*expressed*
she, ea, haec, ista, illa (§ 205), *or not*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.* (§ 412. a)
shore, ōra, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e
show, dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
similar, similis, -e
since, cum (§ 642)
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
sit, sedēō, 2
size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
six, sex
sixth, sextus, -a, -um
skillful, skilled, peritus, -a, -um
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
slow, tardus, -a, -um
slowly, tardē
small, parvus, -a, -um
smallest, minimus, -a, -um
so, ita, sic, tam
so great, tantus, -a, -um
so that, ut; **so that not**, ut nōn
soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*
some, *often not expressed*; aliquī,
 aliqua, aliquod (§ 831)
some . . . others, alii . . . alii (§ 504)
someone, aliquis (§ 831)

something, aliquid (§ 831)
son, filius, fili, *m.*
soon, mox
sovereignty, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
space, spatium, spatī, *n.*
speak, dicō, 3
spear, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
speech, ōratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
spur, calcar, -āris, *n.*
spy, explōrator, -ōris, *m.*
stand still, **take a stand**, cōsistō, 3
state, civitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, *f.*
stay, permanēō, 2
steadfast, firmus, -a, -um
storm, oppugnō, 1; **take by storm**,
 expugnō, 1
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
strange, nōvus, -a, -um
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vis, (vis), *f.*
strong, fortis, -e; firmus, -a, -um
stupid, tardus, -a, -um
subdue, pācō, 1
such, tālis, -e
suffer, patior, 3; **labōrō**, 1
suffer punishment, poenam *or* sup
 plicium dō
sufficient, satis, *indecl.*
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, 1
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
supreme, summus, -a, -um
sure, certus, -a, -um
suspend, intermittō, 3
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
swiftly, celeriter
swiftness, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*

take, sūmō, 3
take, capture, take up, capiō, 3
take back, recipiō, 3
take by storm, expugnō, 1
tall, altus, -a, -um
teach, doceō, 2
tell, dicō, 3; nārrō, 1
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terrified, perterritus, -a, -um
terrify, perterreō, 2
territory, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
than, quam
thank, grātiās agō, *with dat.*
that, *demon. pron.*, is (§ 203), iste, ille (§ 524); *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod
that, in order that, in purpose clauses, ut
that not, lest, in purpose clauses, nē
the, not expressed
the one, the other (of two), alter, altera, alterum
their, gen. plur. of is; *reflex.*, suus, -a, -um (§ 135)
their own, suus, -a, -um (§ 135)
them, *see they*
then, at that time, tum
then, in the next place, deinde
there, as expletive, not expressed
there, in that place, ibi
therefore, itaque
these, *see this*
Theseus, Thēseus, -ī, *m.*
they, ii, hī, istī, illī, *or not expressed* (§ 205)
thick, crēber, -bra, -brum
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, arbitror, 1; exīstimō, 1; putō, 1

third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc (§ 523); is, ea, id (§ 203)
those, *see that, dem. pron.*
though, cum
thousand, mille (§ 536)
three, trēs, tria (§ 824)
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a
through, per, *with acc.*
throw, iaciō, 3
throw down, dēiciō, 3
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
timid, timidus, -a, -um
to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, quī, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*
to each other, inter with acc. of a reflex. pron.
toil, labōrō, 1
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
true, vērus, -a, -um
try, temptō, 1
twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um
twelve, duodecim
two, duo, duae, duo (§ 824)
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a

undertake, suscipiō, 3
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um
unskilled, imperītus, -a, -um
unwilling (be), not willing, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 840)
uphold, sustineō, 2
urge, hortor, 1
us, nōs, *acc. plur. of ego* (§ 509)

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
very, *superl. degree*, maximē; *intensive*, ipse, -a, -um (§ 517)
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
villa, villa, -ae, *f.*
violence, vīs, (vīs), *f.* (§ 419)

wage, gerō, 3
wait, wait for, expectō, 1
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; vāllum, -ī, *n.*
want, inopia, -ae, *f.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, 2
was, *see be*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, manner, modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
we, nōs, *plur. of ego* (§ 509); *or not expressed*
wear, gerō, 3
well, bene
well-known, nōtus, -a, -um
were, *see be*
what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (§§ 394, 395)
when, ubi, cum (§ 641); *often expressed by a participle*
whether, *introducing an indirect question*, num
where, ubi
which, quī, quae, quod (§ 387); **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum (§ 503)
whither, quō
who, *rel.*, quī, quae (§ 387); *interrog.*, quis (§ 394)
whose, cuius *or* quōrum, quārum, quōrum, *gen. of quī, quae, quod, rel.* (§ 387), *or of quis, quid, interrog.* (§ 394)

why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wide, lātus, -a, -um
will, *expressed by future tense*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 840)
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wing, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, -emis, *f.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wish, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 840)
wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 840)
wish rather, mālō, mälle, mālui, — (§ 840)
with, cum, *with abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone*
withdraw, mē recipiō
without, sine, *with abl.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
work, labōrō, 1
worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of malus*
wound, *verb.*, vulnerō, 1
wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wretched, miser, -era, -erum
write, scribō, 3
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yes, certē, ita, vērō, *or, more usually, repeat the verb* (§ 110)
yet, tamen
you, *sing.*, tū; *plur.*, vōs (§ 509); *or not expressed*
your, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*, vester, -tra, -trum (§ 133)
yourself, tū

INDEX

The numbers, unless pages are specified, refer to sections

- ā or ab**, 79, 80, 81, 171
- abbreviations**, Latin, p. 383
- ablative case**, 65-67
 - absolute, 396-400
 - of accompaniment, 167
 - of agent, 261
 - of cause, 165
 - of description, 561, 562
 - of manner, 168
 - of means or instrument, 166
 - of measure of difference, 451, 452
 - of place from which, 295, 482
 - of place in which, 483
 - of respect, 551, 552
 - of separation, 296
 - of time, 492, 493
- accent**, 13, 14
- accompaniment**, abl. of, 167
- accusative case**, 32
 - of duration or extent, 546-548
 - object, 35
 - of place to which, 481, 484
 - predicate, 681-684
 - with prepositions, 78, 358
 - as subject of the infinitive, 368
- adjectives**, 19, 87-92
 - agreement, 90-91
 - comparison, regular, 441-444; by adverbs, 472; irregular, 456-458
 - with the dative, 129, 130
 - declension of comparatives, 450
 - of first and second declensions, 115, 116, 120, 126-128
 - position of, 92
 - possessive, 132-137
 - of third declension, 428-431, 435, 438
- adverbs**, 122
 - comparison, 466
 - formation, regular, 461-465; irregular, 470, 471
 - position of, 123
- agent**, expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 261; by the dat., 728, 729
- agreement**
 - of adjectives, 90, 91
 - of appositives, 104
 - of predicate nouns, 61
 - of relative pronouns, 389, 390
 - of verbs, 48
- aliquis**, 528
- alius**, 502-505
- alphabet**, 1-3
- alter**, 502-504
- antepenult**, 10. c; accent of, 14
- appendix**, grammatical, 804-843
- apposition**, 103, 104
- article**, not used in Latin, 27, note
- Baculus the Centurion**, story of, pp. 283-293
- base**, 71
- cardinal numerals**, 522-537, 543
- case**, 31, 32
- causal clauses** with *cum*, 640, 642, 643
- cause**, expressed by the abl., 165
- characteristic**, subjv. of, 721-723

- clauses**, 384, 385; noun or substantive clause, 600
- comparative**, declension of, 450
- comparison**
abl. of, 309
of adjectives, 441-445; irregular, 456-458; six adjectives in *-lis*, 457
of adverbs, regular, 466; irregular, 471
degrees of, 441
- complementary infinitive**, 369
- compound verbs** with the dative, 622, 623
- concessive clauses** with *cum*, 640, 642, 643
- conjugation stems**, 154, 300-303
- conjugations**, 140; the four regular, 153; irregular, 838-843
- consonants**, 2; sounds of, 7
- copula**, 26
- cum**, conjunction, 639-643
- cum**, preposition, 358. *a*; enclitic use, 513
- dative case**, 52-55
with adjectives, 129, 130
of agent, 728, 729
with compound verbs, 622, 623
of indirect object, 56-59
position of, 59
of purpose or end for which, 685, 686
with special verbs, 222-224
- dea**, declension of, 70. *a*
- declension**, 29, 30, 68, 69; general rules of, 108
- demonstrative adjectives and pronouns**, 201-205, 518, 521-524
- deponent verbs**, 557-560, 569
- derivation**, *see* **prefixes and suffixes**
- descriptive ablative and genitive**, 561, 562
- descriptive relative clause**, with the subjv., 721-723
- difference**, measure of, 450, 451
- diphthongs**, 6
- direct statements**, 652
- domi**, locative, 485
- domus**, declension of, 813
- duration** of time, expressed by the acc., 546, 547
- ē or ex**, 171
- ego**, declension of, 509
- enclitics**, 230. *a*
- English-Latin vocabulary**, pp. 23-25 (at the end)
- eo**, conjugation of, 842
- extent** of space, expressed by the acc., 546, 547
- ferō**, conjugation of, 841
- fifth declension**, 488-490
- filia**, declension of, 70. *a*
- filius**, declension of, 117
- fiō**, conjugation of, 843
- first conjugation**, 157
- first declension**, 70
- formation of words**, *see* **prefixes and suffixes**
- fourth conjugation**, 217
- fourth declension**, 475-477
- from**, how expressed, 294-296
- future infinitive**, active, 356
- future participle**, 565, 567
- future perfect**, formation of, active, 330; passive, 348
- future tense**, formation of, 183, 267
- gender**
in English and in Latin, 83-85
in the first declension, 86
in the second declension, 97
in the third declension, 496
in the fourth declension, 476
in the fifth declension, 489
of an infinitive, 370. *a*

general rules of declension, 108

genitive case

- with adjectives, 553, 554
- of description, 561, 562
- of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 117
- partitive, or of the whole, 540, 541
- position of, 41
- of the possessor, 34, 150

gerund, a verbal noun, 691-696

- with *ad* to express purpose, 696, 697
- with *causā* to express purpose, 696, 697

gerundive, a verbal adjective, 697

- with *ad* to express purpose, 697. 5
- with *causā* to express purpose, 697. 5

hic, declension and use of, 521-523, 828

i, consonant, 3

i-stems of nouns, 412, 413, 416

idem, declension of, 518, 828

ille, declension and use of, 521, 522, 524, 828

imperative, formation of, 246-250, 286; in commands, 246; irregular, p. 100, fn. 1

indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 527-529, 811

independent or main clauses, 384

indirect object, 56-59, 222-224, 622, 623

indirect questions, 667-671

indirect statements, 652-654, 656-658

infinitive

- complementary, 369
- definition of, 284
- does not express purpose, 587
- formation of, 285, 332, 354-356
- in indirect statements, 654-656
- as noun, 370
- as object, 366, 367
- used as in English, 369, 370

inflection, defined, 28, 29

intensive pronoun, *ipse*, declension and use of, 516, 517, 827

interrogative pronouns, 393-395

intransitive verbs, defined, 25; with the dative, 222-224

iō-verbs of the third conj., 241, 242, 836

ipse, declension and use of, 516, 517, 827

irregular adjectives, 502-505

irregular comparison, of adjectives, 456, 457, 820; of adverbs, 471, 822

irregular nouns, 70. a, 419, 813

irregular verbs, 838-843

is, declension and use of, 203, 205, 828

iste, declension and use of, 521, 522, 524, 828

iter, declension of, 419, 813

Latin abbreviations, p. 383

Latin-English vocabulary, pp. 1-22 (at the end)

Latin order of words, 197-199

Latin play, Perseus and Andromeda, pp. 279-282

Latin songs, pp. 294-297

locative case, 485

magis, maximē, comparison by, 472

mālō, conjugation of, 840

manner, abl. of, 168

means, abl. of, 166

measure of difference, abl. of, 451, 452

mille, declension of, 536, 824; construction with, 542

moods, defined, 142

indicative, 147

subjunctive, 577, 582

-ne, enclitic, in questions, 109

nē, conj., *that not, lest*, with negative clauses of purpose, 589, 602

nine irregular adjectives, 502-505

- nōlō**, conjugation of, 840
nominative case, 33
nōnne, in questions, 251
nōs, declension of, 509
nouns, 17
 first declension, 70
 second declension, 96-98, 102, 107, 117
 third declension, 404, 405, 408, 412, 413, 416
 fourth declension, 475-477
 fifth declension, 488-490
nūllus, declension of, 503
num, in questions, 251, 670
number, 45-47, 145
numerals, 532-537, 539, 823, 824

object, direct, 35; indirect, 56-59, 222-224, 622, 623
order of words, 197-199
ordinal numerals, 539, 823
original stories, pp. 263-271

participial stem, 302, 347
participles, defined, 344
 agreement of, 349
 declension of, 566, 817
 of deponent verbs, 560, 569
 formation of, 565
 tenses of, 565
partitive genitive, 540, 541
parts of speech, 16-20
passive voice, defined, 141; formation of, 256, 267, 348
past indicative, formation and use of, 176-178, 267
past passive participle, 565, 567
past perfect indicative, active, 325; passive, 348
past perfect subjunctive, 611
penult, 10. *c*; accent of, 13, 14
perfect indicative
 distinguished from the past, 314
 formation, in the active, 315; in the passive, 348
 meaning of, 311-314
 past absolute, 313
 present perfect, 312
perfect infinitive, active, 332; passive, 355
perfect stem, 301
perfect subjunctive, 610
periphrastic conjugation, active, 726; passive, 727
Perseus and Andromeda, Latin play, pp. 279-282
person, 146
personal endings, active, 146, 177, 248, 304; passive, 256, 286
personal pronouns, 509, 510
place, where, whither, whence, 480-485; names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*, 484, 485
plūs, declension of, 458
position
 of adjective, 91, 198. *d*, 199
 of adverb, 123, 198. *f*
 of demonstrative, 204
 of direct object, 59, 198. *b*
 of genitive, 41
 of indirect object, 59, 198. *b*
 of possessive, 137, 198. *c*
 of subject, 40, 198. *a*
 of verb, 40, 198. *a*
 of vocative, 99, 198. *c*
possessive pronouns, 132-137
possum, conjugation of, 362, 839
predicate, defined, 23
predicate accusative, 681-684
predicate adjective, defined, 93
predicate noun, 60, 61
prefixes, 238, 258, 341, 373-375, 497
prepositions, with the abl., 79, 358. *a*;
 with the acc., 78, 358. *b*
present active participle, 565, 568, 817
present indicative, 158-160, 256

- present stem**, 154, 155
present subjunctive, 579-581, 585, 586
primary tenses, 593, 594
principal parts, 299
pronouns
 classification of, 508
 defined, 18
 demonstrative, 201-205, 518, 521-524, 828
 indefinite, 527-529, 831
 intensive, 516, 517, 827
 interrogative, 393-395, 830
 personal, 509, 510
 possessive, 132-137
 reflexive, 511, 512
 relative, 386-390
pronunciation, 4-7
purpose
 dative of, 685, 686
 expressed by the gerund or gerundive with *ad* or *causā*, 696, 697
 not expressed by the infinitive, 587
 subjunctive of, 587-589, 601-603
quality, gen. or abl. of, 561, 562
quam, with a comparative, 445, 446
quantity, 11, 12, 194
-que, 230
questions, direct, 109, 110, 251, 252;
 indirect, 667-671
qui, declension and use of, 387-390, 589
quidam, 528, 831
quis, indefinite, 528; interrogative, 394, 395
quisque, 528, 831
reflexive pronouns, 511, 512
relative clauses of characteristic or description, 721-723
relative clauses of purpose, 587-589
relative pronouns, 386-390
respect, expressed by abl., 551, 552
result clauses, 615-619
reviews, 732-803
rules for spelling, 573, 630, 631
rules of syntax, pp. 321-324
rūs, constructions of, 484, 485
sē, distinguished from *ipse*, 516. *a*
second conjugation, 188, 833
second declension, 96-98, 102, 107
selections for sight reading, pp. 273-278
sentences, simple, complex, compound, 380-383
separation, abl. of, 296
sequence of tenses, 593-596
shortening of vowels, 194
songs, Latin, pp. 294-297
sounds of letters, 4-7
space, extent of, expressed by the acc., 546, 547
spelling, rules for, 573, 630, 631
stems, of nouns, 404. *a*; of verbs, 154, 300-302
subject, defined, 22; case of, 33; of the infinitive, 368; position of, 40
subjunctive, formation
 of the past, 592
 of the past perfect, 611
 of the perfect, 610
 of the present, 579, 581, 585, 586
subjunctive constructions
 characteristic or description, 722, 723
 indirect questions, 667-671
 purpose, 587-589, 601-603
 result, 615-619
 time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 639-643
subjunctive ideas, 582
subjunctive tenses, 578
subordinate clauses, 384, 385
suffixes, 425, 426, 574, 626-629
suī, declension of, 512
sum, conjugation of, 149, 170, 838

- suus**, use of, 135, 208, 209
syllables, 9; division of, 10; quantity of, 11, 12
syntax, rules of, pp. 321-324
- temporal clauses**, with *cum*, 640, 641, 643
tense, defined, 143, 144; meaning of
 past tense, 178; of perfect tense, 311-314
tense signs, 175
 future, 183, 235
 future perfect active, 330
 past, 176
 past perfect active, 325
tenses, primary and secondary, 594;
 sequence of, 593-595
third conjugation, 212, 241, 834
third declension of nouns
 classes, 404
 consonant stems, 405, 408
 gender, 496
 i-stems, 412, 413, 416
 irregular nouns, 419, 813
time, abl. of, 492, 493; acc. of, 546-548
towns, rules for names of, 484, 485
transitive verbs, 24
tū, declension of, 509
- ultima**, 10. *c*
ut, with clauses of purpose, 589; with clauses of result, 618
- ut nōn**, with clauses of result, 618, 619
- verbs**, 20
 agreement of, 48
 conjugation of, 140, 153, 832-836
 deponent, 559, 560, 569, 837
 intransitive, 25
 irregular, 838-843
 personal endings of, active, 146, 177, 248, 304; passive, 256, 286
 position of, 40
 principal parts of, 299
 transitive, 24
- vis**, declension of, 419, 813
- vocabularies**
 English-Latin, pp. 23-35 (at the end)
 Latin-English, pp. 1-22 (at the end)
 special, pp. 361-381
- vocabulary notebook**, p. 382
- vocative case**, 98, 99
 of *filius*, 118, note 1
 of *meus*, 133, note
 of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, 98
- voice**, defined, 141
- volō**, conjugation of, 840
- vōs**, declension of, 509
- vowels**, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 5; shortening of, 194
- word lists**, for the first and the second half-year, pp. 357-360

Learn verb for

Page 240 1-7

Page 51 1-5 lines

This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

38
.
.
For Wednesday Nov 1

